Resistance to Targeted Anti-Cancer Therapeutics 21
Series Editor: Benjamin Bonavida

Ana C. Xavier
Mitchell S. Cairo *Editors*

Resistance to Targeted Therapies in Lymphomas

Springer

Resistance to Targeted Anti-Cancer Therapeutics

Volume 21

Series Editor

Benjamin Bonavida
Los Angeles, CA, USA

More information about this series at http://www.springer.com/series/11727

Ana C. Xavier • Mitchell S. Cairo
Editors

Resistance to Targeted Therapies in Lymphomas

Springer

Editors
Ana C. Xavier
Division of Hematology/Oncology
Department of Pediatrics
University of Alabama at Birmingham
Children's Hospital of Alabama
Birmingham, AL, USA

Mitchell S. Cairo
Departments of Pediatrics, Medicine,
Pathology, Microbiology and Immunology,
Cell Biology and Anatomy
New York Medical College
Valhalla, NY, USA

ISSN 2196-5501 ISSN 2196-551X (electronic)
Resistance to Targeted Anti-Cancer Therapeutics
ISBN 978-3-030-24423-1 ISBN 978-3-030-24424-8 (eBook)
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-24424-8

This Springer imprint is published by the registered company Springer Nature Switzerland AG
The registered company address is: Gewerbestrasse 11, 6330 Cham, Switzerland

Preface

Lymphomas are a complex group of hematological malignancies that have distinctive etiology, epidemiology, clinical behavior, and response to therapy. For decades, multidrug chemotherapy and/or radiation therapy constituted sole backbones to treat those patients. However, the development of resistance to conventional therapy, due to a multitude of genetic, epigenetic, metabolic mechanisms among others, has contributed to hinder the therapeutic success in a significant proportion of patients.

More recently, remarkable advancements in the lymphoma field, with better understanding of lymphoma cell biology and its microenvironment, have contributed to the development of biologic or "targeted" agents and consequent rapid expansion of the therapeutic landscape. These agents are usually designed and developed based on specific target molecules present in key tumor or microenvironmental cells that once blocked or deregulated can lead to cell death, cell differentiation, or immune system recognition. Many clinical studies have focused on testing targeted agents as monotherapy or in combination with conventional chemotherapy with the goal of improving outcomes or reducing acute or long-term complications associated with therapy. Unfortunately, despite the well-thought rational behind each targeted agent development, transient or unsatisfactory responses to those new therapies are commonly described, suggesting the development of tumor-related or host-related treatment resistance as a culprit to treatment failure. In this book, we will review different classes of targeted drugs that have been developed, approved, or are under investigation in the field of lymphoma therapy. Our focus is to provide a comprehensive review of the mechanisms of action or clinical response of several targeted agents and to discuss mechanisms of tumor-related or host-related resistance and potentially how to overcome resistance. This understanding is crucial considering the dismal outcomes of patients with relapsed or refractory lymphomas. Collectively, the chapters offer a unique opportunity to review, understand, and reflect on the recent successes and pitfalls of the modern lymphoma therapy era.

Birmingham, AL, USA — Ana C. Xavier
Valhalla, NY, USA — Mitchell S. Cairo

Aims and Scope

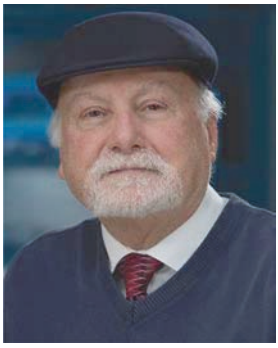
For several decades, treatment of cancer consisted of chemotherapeutic drugs, radiation, and hormonal therapies. Those were not tumor-specific and exhibited several toxicities. During the last several years, targeted cancer therapies (molecularly targeted drugs) have been developed, consisting of immunotherapies (cell-mediated and antibody) drugs or biologicals that can block the growth and spread of cancer by interfering with surface receptors and with specific dysregulated gene products that control tumor cell growth and progression. These include several FDA-approved drugs/antibodies/inhibitors that interfere with cell growth signaling or tumor blood vessel development, promote the cell death of cancer cells, stimulate the immune system to destroy specific cancer cells, and deliver toxic drugs to cancer cells. Targeted cancer therapies are being used alone or in combination with conventional drugs and other targeted therapies.

One of the major problems that arise following treatment with both conventional therapies and targeted cancer therapies is the development of resistance, preexisting in a subset of cancer cells or cancer stem cells and/or induced by the treatments. Tumor cell resistance to targeted therapies remains a major hurdle, and, therefore, several strategies are being considered in delineating the underlining molecular mechanisms of resistance and the development of novel drugs to reverse both the innate and acquired resistance to various targeted therapeutic regimens.

The new series "Resistance of Targeted Anti-cancer Therapeutics" was inaugurated and focuses on the clinical application of targeted cancer therapies (either approved by the FDA or in clinical trials) and the resistance observed by these therapies. Each book will consist of updated reviews on a specific target therapeutic and strategies to overcome resistance at the biochemical, molecular, and both genetic and epigenetic levels. This new series is timely and should be of significant interest to clinicians, scientists, trainees, students, and pharmaceutical companies.

Los Angeles, CA, USA — Benjamin Bonavida

Series Editor Biography



Dr. Benjamin Bonavida, Ph.D. (Series Editor), is currently Distinguished Research Professor at the University of California, Los Angeles (UCLA). His research career, thus far, has focused on basic immunochemistry and cancer immunobiology. His research investigations have ranged from the mechanisms of cell-mediated killing, sensitization of resistant tumor cells to chemo-/immunotherapy, characterization of resistant factors in cancer cells, cell-signaling pathways mediated by therapeutic anticancer antibodies, and characterization of a dysregulated NF-κB/Snail/YY1/RKIP/PTEN loop in many cancers that regulates cell survival, proliferation, invasion, metastasis, and resistance. He has also investigated the role of nitric oxide in cancer and its potential antitumor activity. Many of the above studies are centered on the clinical challenging features of cancer patients' failure to respond to both conventional and targeted therapies. The development and activity of various targeting agents, their modes of action, and resistance are highlighted in many refereed publications.

Acknowledgments

The Series Editor acknowledges the various assistants who have diligently worked in both the editing and formatting of the various manuscripts in each volume. They are Leah Moyal, Kevin Li, and Anne Arah Cho.

Acknowledgments

The editors would like to thank the dedication and valuable efforts of Erin Morris, RN, during the preparation of this volume and gratefully acknowledge the contributions of each author.

Contents

Contributors

Oussama Abla The Hospital for Sick Children, Department of Pediatrics, University of Toronto, Toronto, ON, Canada

Sarah Alexander Division of Haematology/Oncology, The Hospital for Sick Children, Toronto, ON, Canada

Anthony N. Audino Department of Pediatric Hematology/Oncology/BMT, Nationwide Children's Hospital, The Ohio State University, Columbus, OH, USA

Matthew J. Barth Division of Pediatric Hematology/Oncology, Jacobs School of Medicine and Biomedical Sciences, University at Buffalo, Buffalo, NY, USA

Department of Pediatrics, Roswell Park Comprehensive Cancer Center, Buffalo, NY, USA

Auke Beishuizen Erasmus MC-Sophia Children's Hospital, University Medical Center Rotterdam and Princess Maxima Center for Pediatric Oncology, Utrecht, Netherlands

Patrick A. Brown Division of Pediatric Oncology, Department of Oncology, Johns Hopkins University School of Medicine, Baltimore, MD, USA

Mitchell S. Cairo Departments of Pediatrics, Medicine, Pathology, Microbiology and Immunology, Cell Biology and Anatomy, New York Medical College, Valhalla, NY, USA

Yaya Chu Department of Pediatrics, New York Medical College, Valhalla, NY, USA

Stacy L. Cooper Division of Pediatric Oncology, Department of Oncology, Johns Hopkins University School of Medicine, Baltimore, MD, USA

Luciano J. Costa Division of Hematology/Oncology, Department of Medicine, University of Alabama at Birmingham, Birmingham, AL, USA

Allyson Flower Division of Pediatric Hematology/Oncology, New York Medical College, Valhalla, NY, USA

Paul J. Galardy Department of Pediatric and Adolescent Medicine, Mayo Clinic, Rochester, MN, USA

Department of Biochemistry and Molecular Biology, Mayo Clinic, Rochester, MN, USA

Division of Pediatric Hematology-Oncology, Mayo Clinic, Rochester, MN, USA

Stanton C. Goldman Division of Pediatric Hematology/Oncology, Medical City Children's Hospital, Dallas, TX, USA

Michelle L. Hermiston Department of Pediatrics, University of California, San Francisco, CA, USA

Jessica Hochberg Division of Hematology, Oncology & Stem Cell Transplant, Maria Fareri Children's Hospital at Westchester Medical Center, New York Medical College, Valhalla, NY, USA

Lauren K. Meyer Department of Pediatrics, University of California, San Francisco, CA, USA

Rodney R. Miles Department of Pathology, University at Utah, Salt Lake City, UT, USA

ARUP Institute for Clinical & Experimental Pathology, Salt Lake City, UT, USA

Ana C. Xavier Division of Hematology/Oncology, Department of Pediatrics, University of Alabama at Birmingham, Children's Hospital of Alabama, Birmingham, AL, USA

About the Editors

Ana C. Xavier Dr. Ana C. Xavier is an Associate Professor at the Division of Hematology/Oncology, Department of Pediatrics, University of Alabama at Birmingham (Birmingham, Alabama). She received her medical degree from the University of Sao Paulo, Brazil, and completed her pediatric residency at the Medical University of South Carolina and Pediatric Hematology/Oncology Fellowship Training at the Wayne State University. She is Board Certified in Pediatrics and Pediatric Hematology/Oncology and currently serves as Associate Program Director of the Pediatric Hematology/Oncology Fellowship Program at the University of Alabama at Birmingham. She has authored numerous peer-reviewed manuscripts in highly reputed international journals and has presented several abstracts at various national and international conferences. She holds memberships with the American Academy of Pediatrics, American Society of Hematology, American Society of Pediatric Hematology/Oncology and Children's Oncology Group. Her clinical practice includes both pediatric oncology, and her research interest focuses on the treatment of pediatric patients with lymphoma.

Mitchell S. Cairo Dr. Cairo is currently the Associate Chairman and Professor (with tenure) in the Department of Pediatrics at New York Medical College (NYMC). His additional current leadership positions include being the Chief of the Division of Pediatric Hematology, Oncology, and Stem Cell Transplantation, Program Director of the Adult and Pediatric BMT Program, Director of the Childhood and Adolescent Cancer and Blood Disease Center, Medical and Scientific Director of the GMP Cellular and Tissue Engineering Laboratory at Westchester Medical Center (WMC), Medical Director of the WMC Hematotherapy Program, and Co-chair of the WMC Cancer Committee. His additional academic appointments include being a Professor of Medicine, Pathology, Microbiology and Immunology, Cell Biology and Anatomy, and Public Health at NYMC. Briefly, his past education includes his undergraduate studies at the University of Wisconsin, Madison, WI, graduating in 1972 with a BA and election to Phi Beta Kappa. He received his medical school training at the University of California, San Francisco (USCF), graduating in 1976 with an election to Alpha Omega Alpha (AOA). He trained as a Pediatric Resident at the UCLA Harbor General from 1976 to 1978 under the mentorship of Joseph St. Geme, MD, and then a Chief Residency in Pediatrics from 1978 to 1979 at the UCSF under the mentorship of Melvin Grumbach, MD. He completed a Pediatric Hematology-Oncology Fellowship as an American Cancer Society Fellow at Indiana University from 1979 to 1981 under the mentorship of Robert Baehner, MD. He joined the Faculty of Children's Hospital of Orange County (CHOC) in 1982 and established the BMT/Stem Cell Transplant Program there in 1985 as Director of Blood and Marrow Transplantation. Also, at CHOC, he was the Principal Investigator (PI) for Children's Cancer Group and PI of the Cord Blood Collection Center and Cord Blood Transplant Center under an NHLBI award. In 1997, he was recruited to Georgetown University where he became a Professor of Pediatrics, Medicine, and Pathology, Chief of the Division of Stem Cell Transplantation and Cellular and Gene Therapy, Director of the Adult and Pediatric Bone Marrow Transplantation Program at the Lombardi Cancer Center, and Medical Director of the NHLBI Cord

Blood Collection Center and Cord Blood Bank. In 2000, he was recruited to Columbia University and was a Professor of Pediatrics, Medicine, and Pathology, Director of the Division of Blood and Marrow Transplantation, Member of the Executive Committee of the Department of Pediatrics, Medical Director of the National Marrow Donor Unrelated Transplant Program, Chief of the Division of Pediatric Blood and Marrow Transplantation, and Member of the Executive Steering Committee of the Morgan Stanley Children's Hospital of New York-Presbyterian Hospital. In 2011, he was recruited to NYMC and WMC. He has over 410 peer-reviewed publications, over 1200 national and international abstract presentations, and over 50 book chapters and edited 2 textbooks. He is on the Editorial Board of *British Journal of Hematology*, *Blood Reviews*, and *Cell Transplantation* and Past Editorial Board Member of *Bone Marrow Transplantation* and *Experimental Hematology*. He is a regular NCI Reviewer for PPG and Spore applications. He has been a Member of the CCG/COG Bone Marrow Transplantation, now Cell Therapy Committee, for the last 20 years. He was the Chair of the ISCT Immuno-Gene Therapy Committee and currently is the ISCT North America Vice President Elect and Past Co-chair of the CIBMTR Cellular Therapy Committee. He is also a long-standing Member of the PBMTC Executive and Steering Committee and is an International Leader in the Biology and Treatment of Childhood and Adolescent Lymphomas and Leukemias, Stem Cell Transplantation, Developmental Therapeutics, Experimental Hematopoiesis and Immunology, Tumor Immunology and Biology, and Stem Cell Biology and Regenerative Therapy. He was a Pioneer in the use of cord blood stem cells for treating pediatric malignant and nonmalignant disease and the use of cord blood stem cells for potential regenerative therapy and haploidentical stem cell transplantation for patients with sickle cell disease. He is a Member of a number of national and international societies related to both Pediatrics and Hematology/Oncology/Stem Cell Transplantation, including elected to the Society of Pediatric Research (SPR) and the American Pediatrics Society (APS), and Member of AAP, ESPR, and hematology and oncology and stem

cell transplantation societies such as ASH, ASCO, ASBMT, CIBMTR, AAI, ISEH, AACR, ASPHO, SIOP, PBMTC, and COG. In summary, he has been an International Leader in basic, translational, and clinical research in childhood, adolescent, and young adults with emphasis in stem cell transplantation, stem cell biology, lymphoma, tumor immunology, and developmental therapeutics.

Chapter 1
Mechanisms of Glucocorticoid Response and Resistance in Lymphoid Malignancies

Lauren K. Meyer and Michelle L. Hermiston

Abstract Glucocorticoids (GC) are an integral component of multi-agent therapy regimens for a wide variety of lymphoid malignancies due to their potential effects to induce apoptosis in cells of the lymphoid lineage. Despite their clinical utility, *de novo* and acquired resistance to GC is a significant clinical problem that contributes to inferior outcomes for many of these diseases. This review summarizes what is currently known about mechanisms of GC resistance in lymphoid malignancies, with a particular focus on novel therapeutic strategies currently in preclinical or clinical development that are rationally-designed to overcome GC resistance and improve clinical outcomes.

Keywords Apoptosis · Glucocorticoid · Leukemia · Lymphoma · Metabolism MicroRNA · Drug resistance · Signal transduction

Abbreviations

2-DG	2-Deoxy-D-Glucose
3'UTR	3' Untranslated Region
B-CLL	B-Cell Chronic Lymphocytic Leukemia
BFM	Berlin-Frankfurt-Munster
cAMP	Cyclic Adenosine Monophosphate
CDK	Cyclin Dependent Kinase
ChIP-Seq	Chromatin Immunoprecipitation with Sequencing
CHOP	Cyclophosphamide, Adriamycin, Vincristine, and Prednisone
DBD	DNA Binding Domain
DEX	Dexamethasone

L. K. Meyer · M. L. Hermiston (✉)
Department of Pediatrics, University of California, San Francisco, CA, USA
e-mail: Lauren.Meyer@ucsf.edu; Michelle.Hermiston@ucsf.edu

A. C. Xavier, M. S. Cairo (eds.), *Resistance to Targeted Therapies in Lymphomas*, Resistance to Targeted Anti-Cancer Therapeutics 21,
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-24424-8_1

DLBCL	Diffuse Large B-Cell Lymphoma
EFS	Event-Free Survival
GC	Glucocorticoid(s)
GR	Glucocorticoid Receptor
GRE	Glucocorticoid Response Element
GST	Glutathione *S*-Transferase
HDAC	Histone Deacetylase
HSD	Hydroxysteroid Dehydrogenase
LBD	Ligand Binding Domain
LOH	Loss of Heterozygosity
MAPK	Mitogen Activated Protein Kinase
miR	MicroRNA
MRD	Minimal Residual Disease
NCoR	Nuclear Co-Receptor
NHL	Non-Hodgkin Lymphoma
NTD	N-Terminal Transactivation Domain
PDE	Phosphodiesterase
PDX	Patient-Derived Xenograft
PGR	Prednisone Good Responder
PKA	Protein Kinase A
PPR	Prednisone Poor Responder
RT-PCR	Real-Time Polymerase Chain Reaction
T-ALL	T-Cell Acute Lymphoblastic Leukemia
TCR	T-Cell Receptor
WBC	White Blood Cell

Introduction

For decades, glucocorticoids (GCs) have been a key component of therapy for the treatment of lymphoid malignancies and are widely used in both frontline and salvage therapy regimens [1, 2]. In many of these cancers, the response to GC therapy is a strong prognostic indicator that is related to both overall and event-free survival (EFS) rates [1, 3, 4]. In particular, patients with acute lymphoblastic leukemia (ALL) treated on Berlin-Frankfurt-Munster (BFM) protocols can be classified as having a prednisone good response (PGR) or a prednisone poor response (PPR), defined based on the response to an upfront 1 week window of monotherapy consisting of the GC prednisone. In early ALL-BFM protocols, patients with a PPR had significantly inferior outcomes relative to patients with a PGR [1]. These data indicate that therapeutic strategies to overcome GC resistance may significantly improve patient outcomes. The objective of this review is to highlight key concepts regarding GC resistance in lymphoid malignancies, with a specific focus on therapeutic strategies designed to overcome GC resistance.

Mechanism of Glucocorticoid Action

GCs are a class of steroid hormones that bind to the GC receptor (GR). In the absence of endogenous or exogenous GC ligand, GR is largely retained in the cytoplasm through its association with a variety of molecular chaperone proteins, including HSP70 and HSP90 [5]. Upon ligand binding, GR undergoes a conformational change that promotes translocation of the GC-GR complex to the nucleus, where it associates with DNA sequences known as GC response elements (GREs). These GREs function as enhancer elements to modulate the activity of associated gene promoters, which in turn mediate the activation or repression of target gene expression (Fig. 1.1) [6]. These effects of GCs are highly tissue-specific due to differences in GRE binding patterns and transcriptional activities in different cell types. Importantly, while GCs exert pro-survival effects in many tissues, they potently induce cell death in cells of the lymphoid lineage [7], underlying their importance in the treatment of lymphoid malignancies.

While there is little overall consensus regarding the specific components of the GR-associated transcriptome that mediate the effects of GCs on lymphoid cells, many groups have demonstrated that activation of the intrinsic apoptotic pathway is required for GC-induced cell death [7]. Consistent with this idea, the concept of a "BCL2 rheostat" has been proposed whereby modulation of both the pro-and anti-apoptotic components of the intrinsic apoptotic pathway results in an altered

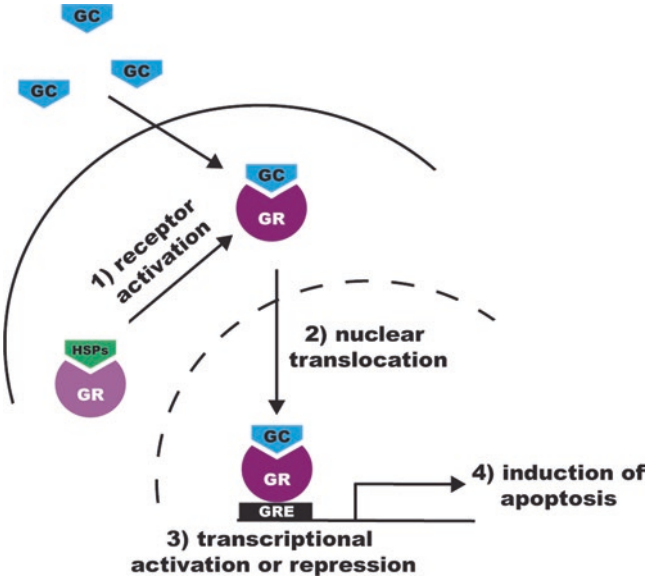


Fig. 1.1 Mechanisms of GC Action. GCs bind to a cytoplasmic GR (1), which induces translocation of the GC/GR complex to the nucleus (2). This complex binds to GREs to induce or repress transcription (3). In cells of the lymphoid lineage, this transcriptional activity alters the expression of components of the intrinsic apoptotic pathway, resulting in apoptosis (4)

apoptotic threshold that leads to cell death. Through an analysis of both basal and GC-induced expression of components of the intrinsic apoptotic pathway in primary ALL cells, Ploner et al. identified key expression patters that are associated with GC-induced apoptosis. Specifically, they noted potent induction of the pro-apoptotic family members *BIM* and *BMF*, and demonstrated that loss of expression of either of these proteins is sufficient to decrease GC sensitivity. Conversely, they demonstrated that overexpression of anti-apoptotic family members, including *BCL2*, *BCL-XL*, and *MCL1*, impairs GC-induced apoptosis, an effect that is reversed upon experimental silencing of these genes [8]. Taken together, these data suggest that coordinate modulation of both pro-and anti-apoptotic family members contribute to GC-induced apoptosis. Jing et al. further elucidated the importance of such a BCL2 rheostat through an analysis of ALL patient derived xenograft (PDXs). Using chromatin immunoprecipitation with sequencing (ChIP-seq), this group identified a novel GR binding site within an intronic region of the *BIM* gene. When this region was mutated to abolish GR binding, GC-induced upregulation of *BIM* expression was lost and GC sensitivity was significantly decreased, providing further evidence that GR-mediated upregulation of *BIM* is required for GC sensitivity. Furthermore, this study elucidated a series of GR-mediated transcriptional events that lead to downregulation of *BCL2* expression, and found that these events were also required for effective GC-induced apoptosis [9]. Given the importance of the intrinsic apoptotic pathway in mediating GC sensitivity in lymphoid cells, it is not surprising that while diverse mechanisms of GC resistance have been elucidated in lymphoid malignancies, these mechanisms largely converge on a failure to appropriately modulate the intrinsic apoptotic pathway.

Mechanisms of Glucocorticoid Resistance

GR Intrinsic Mechanisms of GC Resistance

NR3C1 Mutations

The GR protein, which is encoded by the *NR3C1* gene, is comprised of three major functional domains: the ligand binding domain (LBD), the DNA biding domain (DBD), and the N-terminal transactivation domain (NTD), which interacts with the transcriptional machinery and the transcriptional coregulators to mediate the effects of GR on gene expression [5]. Mutations in each of these domains have been identified in the context of familial and sporadic generalized GC resistance, where they lead to complete or partial insensitivity to target tissues to both endogenous and exogenous GCs [10]. In addition to generalized GC resistance, localized GC resistance that is attributable to *NR3C1* mutations has been reported in a number of disease contexts, including asthma and autoimmune diseases [11]. Given the precedent for GC resistance mediated by GR mutations, many groups have hypothesized that pre-existing mutations in the GR gene, or mutations acquired over the course of GC

therapy, may contribute to *de novo* or acquired GC resistance in lymphoid malignancies. Much of this work has focused on CCRF-CEM cells, a cell line model of human T-cell ALL (T-ALL) that has been studied extensively in the context of GC sensitivity and resistance. Early studies involving CCRF-CEM identified considerable heterogeneity in the clonal composition of the cell line, leading to the subsequent isolation and characterization of a number of subclonal cell lines with varying degrees of GC sensitivity [12]. In an analysis of the parental CCRF-CEM cell line, a heterozygous mutation has since been identified in the LBD, and functional studies demonstrated impaired functionality of this mutant allele [13–16]. However, this same heterozygous mutation has since been identified in both GC sensitive and GC resistant subclones derived from the parental CCRF-CEM cell line, suggesting that additional events are required to confer GC resistance. Consistent with this idea, it has been shown that the GC resistant subclones derived form the GC sensitive parental cell line express this mutant allele in the absence of a wild-type allele, resulting in complete impairment of GR activity [13]. Interestingly, this LBD point mutation was identified in biopsy tissue taken after the initiation of treatment from the patient from whom CCRF-CEM cells were derived, suggesting that it was acquired *in vivo* and was likely selected for over the course of GC treatment [17].

Similar to CCRF-CEM cells, Jurkat cells, another human T-ALL cell line, are heterozygous for a mutation that impairs GR transcriptional activity. Unlike CCRF-CEM cells however, Jurkat cells also express low basal levels of GR and fail to induce expression of GR upon GC exposure, resulting in profound GC resistance [18].

Based on this evidence supporting a role for *NR3C1* mutations as a cause of GC resistance in cultured cell lines, multiple groups have conducted studies to determine whether such mutations cause clinically relevant GC resistance in patients receiving GC therapy for the treatment of lymphoid malignancies. In an analysis of a panel of cell lines derived from paired diagnostic and relapsed samples taken from pediatric patients with ALL, Beesley et al. identified significant variability in GC sensitivity. Upon sequencing the *NR3C1* gene in these cell lines, this group identified a number of polymorphisms, all of which had previously been shown to have a negligible effect on GC sensitivity [11], but no deleterious mutations. This finding led them to conclude that *NR3C1* mutations are not a common mechanism of naturally-acquired GC resistance [19]. Consistent with these findings, sequencing of *NR3C1* in a larger cohort of diagnostic pediatric ALL samples revealed a similar distribution of polymorphisms, but these polymorphisms failed to correlate with the clinical response to prednisone therapy and did not occur at a significantly higher rate than previously reported in the general population [20], supporting the conclusion that *NR3C1* mutations are not a common cause of *de novo* GC resistance. However, there have been a number of reports demonstrating the presence of deleterious *NR3C1* mutations that are undetectable at diagnosis but are significantly enriched at the time of disease relapse, suggesting that the acquisition of such mutations may confer acquired GC resistance [21–23]. Taken together, the existing data suggest that *NR3C1* mutations are a relatively minor cause of GC resistance in human lymphoid malignancies, particularly at the time of diagnosis, but may be more important in the context of relapsed disease following the selective pressure of exposure to GC therapy.

Modulation of GR Expression and Function

In addition to GR mutations, expression levels of GR have been evaluated as a potential biomarker for GC sensitivity and resistance. Using large cohorts of diagnostic ALL samples, early clinical data suggested that the absolute number of GRs in lymphoblasts is positively correlated with the clinical response to GC monotherapy [24], the likelihood of disease remission [25], and with 5-year EFS rates [26]. More recently, GR expression has been shown to carry prognostic significance specifically in the context of pediatric B-cell ALL (B-ALL) harboring the *ETV6*/*RUNX1* fusion oncogene. In these patients, deletions of *NR3C1* resulting in loss of GR protein expression are associated with increased minimal residual disease (MRD) and with risk of relapse [27]. Despite these findings, other studies have failed to identify a clinically meaningful relationship between basal GR expression at diagnosis and the clinical response to GC therapy. In an analysis of GR protein expression in diagnostic samples taken from patients treated on ALL-BFM protocols, there was no significant difference in GR expression between PPR and PGR patient groups [28], suggesting that basal GR expression may be an unsuitable biomarker for predicting GC sensitivity. However, it has been shown that in lymphoid cells, exposure to GCs results in autoinduction of GR expression mediated by a direct transcriptional effect of GR [29], and multiple studies have demonstrated that expression levels of GR after autoinduction, rather than basal expression levels, are required for a GC response and may be a better predictor of GC sensitivity. Using a titratable expression system in human T-ALL cell line, Ramdas et al. demonstrated that basal levels of GR may be insufficient to confer GC sensitivity, but that levels comparable to those achieved following GC exposure and subsequent autoinduction of GR expression are sufficient to mediate GC-induced apoptosis [30]. Consistent with these data, a failure to autoinduce GR expression upon GC exposure has been implicated in GC resistance in Jurkat T-ALL cells [18] and in multiple myeloma cell lines [31].

Several studies have also identified other genetic and epigenetic events that lead to altered GR expression levels, and may therefore contribute to GC resistance. For example, loss-of-function mutations in the E3 ubiquitin ligase *FBXW7* have been associated with a favorable prognosis and an early response to GC therapy in ALL [32, 33]. A later study demonstrated that *FBXW7* mediates the ubiquitination and subsequent proteasomal degradation of GR, leading to insufficient GR levels to mediate GC-induced apoptosis. This same study found that inactivation of *FBXW7* in an *in vitro* system was sufficient to restore GR expression and consequently, GC sensitivity [34]. The NALP3 inflammasome has also been implicated as a modulator of cellular GR levels. In an analysis of GC resistant primary ALL samples, it was found that decreased promoter methylation of *CASP1* and *NLRP3* resulted in increased expression of the NALP3 inflammasome, and that the associated increase in caspase 1 activity caused increased cleavage of GR protein, leading to an attenuated GC response mediated by a loss of GR protein expression [35]. Therefore, while basal GR expression has not proven to be a tractable biomarker with clinical utility for predicting GC sensitivity, altered levels of GR expression may nonetheless contribute to a poor GC response.

In addition to GR expression levels, post-transcriptional processing of the GR mRNA results in multiple GR isoforms, which may also play a role in dictating GC sensitivity. GRα is the most abundant GR isoform and has been shown to mediate the pro-apoptotic effects of GCs in lymphocytes. Exon 9 of NR3C1 encodes a portion of the LBD, and alternating splicing of this exon distinguishes the GRα isoform from the GRβ isoform [5]. The GRβ isoform does not bind GCs and does not have transcriptional activity, thereby impeding its pro-apoptotic activity [36]. Additionally, alternative splicing involving the intron between exons 3 and 4 gives rise to the GRγ isoform, which has an altered DBD. Therefore, GRγ retains ligand binding capacity but has limited transcriptional activity [5]. Finally, alternative splicing involving the LBD results in the production of the GR-A and GR-P isoforms, both of which fail to bind ligand [5]. As a result of the impaired activity of multiple GR isoforms, many groups have studied the relationship between GC sensitivity and the relative expression and distribution of these isoforms in a variety of lymphoid malignancies. One of the earliest such studies focused on a patient with chronic lymphocytic leukemia (CLL) who was found to have generalized GC resistance. An analysis of the expression pattern of GR isoforms in cells taken from this patient demonstrated decreased GRα expression and increased GRβ expression, resulting in an altered ratio between the two isoforms [37]. Given the dominant negative effect of GRβ on GRα, this group concluded that the altered ratio may contribute to the generalized GC resistance observed in this patient. Consistent with these findings, an analysis of 23 diagnostic ALL samples revealed an inverse correlation between the GRβ/GRα ratio and the number of apoptotic cells following *in vitro* exposure to prednisolone, further indicating that high expression of GRβ impairs GC sensitivity [38]. Relative to diagnostic samples, relapsed ALL samples have also been shown to have a decreased mRNA to protein ratio of GRα [39]. Similarly, GRγ expression has been shown to be increased in PPR patients relative to PGR patients, which is consistent with the idea that GRγ expression might impair the transcriptional activity of GRα, leading to an inferior GC response [40].

Further regulation of GR activity is mediated by the chaperone protein systems that interact with GR, the two most important of which are the HSP70 and HSP90 systems. These chaperones assist with maintaining GR in a conformation in which it is competent for ligand binding and they facilitate the subsequent nuclear translocation of ligand-bound GR [41]. Given the central role of chaperone proteins in modifying GR activity, several groups have hypothesized that aberrant expression or activity of these chaperone systems could contribute to GC resistance in lymphoid malignancies. However, in an analysis of PPR and PGHR patients treated on ALL–BFM trials, there was no correlation between *in vivo* GC sensitivity and HSP90 expression [42]. In a more in-depth analysis looking at mRNA expression of key chaperone proteins in GC sensitive versus GC resistant ALL cells, there were also no meaningful differences in transcript expression [43]. While this finding does not exclude the possibility that differences in protein expression of these chaperones may underlie differences in GC sensitivity, these studies suggest that chaperone proteins likely do not play a significant role in clinical GC resistance in lymphoid malignancies.

GR Extrinsic Mechanisms of GC Resistance

Epigenetic Regulation of GR Activity

Changes in GR target gene expression require the association of ligand-bound GR with a GRE [6]. Some of the cell-and tissue-specificity of GCs may be mediated by differences in chromatin accessibility, as GR binding has been shown to occur predominantly at accessible chromatin sites [44]. Given the requirement for pre-existing chromatin accessibility, a number of groups have assessed the role for an altered epigenetic landscape as a mediator of GC resistance. Chromatin accessibility is maintained in part through the activity of the SWI/SNF [44], and decreased expression of core components of this complex correlate with the occurrence of GC resistance in ALL cells [45]. In an analysis of gene expression and DNA methylation patterns in matched pairs of pediatric B-ALL samples obtained at the time of diagnosis and at relapse, Hogan et al. identified a distinct pattern of gene expression associated with relapse and found that this gene expression pattern co-occurred with increased promoter methylation [46]. With the addition of the DNA methyltransferase inhibitor decitabine, this relapse-specific gene expression pattern could be reverted, allowing for re-expression of hypermethylated genes. Exposure to decitabine, along with the histone deacetylase (HDAC) inhibitor vorinostat, resulted in significant potentiation of GC-induced apoptosis [47], suggesting that modification of the epigenetic landscape may facilitate GR-mediated changes in gene expression that lead to apoptosis. Similarly, it was shown that elevated expression of a number of HDAC genes is common in patients who have a PPR [48]. Consistent with these findings, Jones et al. reported a high frequency of deletions of *TBL1XR1,* a component of the nuclear receptor corepressor (NCoR) complex, in patients with B-ALL. These deletions stabilize NCoR, which represses GR activity by decreasing its recruitment to target gene loci and by recruiting HDAC3 to further promote inhibition of target gene expression. Treating these cells with an HDAC inhibitor was sufficient to restore GC sensitivity [49] Collectively, these data suggest that GC sensitivity is mediated in part by a permissive epigenetic landscape, and that the use of epigenetic modulators may represent a therapeutic strategy to enhance GC sensitivity in lymphoid malignancies that are associated with an altered epigenetic landscape.

Signal Transduction

Dysregulated signal transduction is a hallmark feature of many lymphoid malignancies including T-ALL [50], B-ALL [51], and non-Hodgkin lymphoma (NHL) [52]. Importantly, the downstream effectors of these signal transduction pathways exhibit known cross-talk with GR signaling and transcriptional activity [53]. As a result of these interactions, aberrant regulation of these signal transduction pathways is an important cause of GC resistance in lymphoid malignancies and significant

attention has been devoted to the use of targeted signal transduction inhibitors as a strategy to overcome GC resistance.

Cyclic Adenosine Monophosphate (cAMP) Signaling

cAMP is a second messenger molecule that initiates signaling cascades responsible for mediating a variety of immune cell functions. cAMP is generated through the catalytic activity of adenylate cyclases and is degraded by a family of enzymes called phosphodiesterases (PDEs) [54]. It has long been known that in addition to GCs, activation of cAMP decreases lymphoid cell proliferation and induces apoptosis [55]. Furthermore, it has been shown in T-cell lines that stimulation of cAMP signaling has a synergistic effect to induce cell death when combined with the GC dexamethasone (DEX) [56], and that cAMP and GCs likely converge to promote the upregulation of BIM expression [57, 58], thereby facilitating the induction of apoptosis. Given the pro-apoptotic effects of cAMP and the effects of PDEs to decrease the cellular pool of cAMP, significant attention has been devoted to the development of PDE inhibitors [59], and a number of groups have evaluated the efficacy of PDE inhibitors as a means of overcoming GC resistance in lymphoid malignancies. In the CCRF-CEM cell line, both a non-specific PDE inhibitor and rolipram, a PDE4-specific inhibitor, significantly potentiated DEX-induced apoptosis [60]. In primary CLL cells, rolipram synergized with GCs to induce apoptosis, and this effect was associated with increased GR-mediated transcriptional activity [61]. Furthermore, in these same cells, it was found that rolipram exposure resulted in an increase in both transcript and protein expression of GRα [62]. In patients, PDE4 overexpression has been observed in a cohort of primary diffuse large B-cell lymphoma (DLBCL) samples. Consistent with the data in leukemia cell lines, inhibition of PDE4 in DLBCL cells was sufficient to restore GC sensitivity [63]. Finally, in a large-scale gene expression analysis of primary DLBCL samples obtained from patients who received treatment with cyclophosphamide, adriamycin, vincristine, and prednisone (CHOP), elevation of PDE4 expression was enriched in patients with fatal or refractory disease relative to patients who were cured with CHOP therapy [64]. Taken together, these data suggest that alterations in cAMP pathway signaling may contribute to GC resistance in lymphoid malignancies and that therapeutic targeting of this pathway may have clinical utility.

Mitogen Activated Protein Kinase (MAPK) Signaling

The three best studied MAPKs are p38, ERK, and JNK, all of which become activated downstream of a signaling cascade induced by cellular exposure to mitogenic stimuli [65]. Each of these MAPKs has been shown to modulate GC sensitivity, resulting in a considerable number of studies devoted to investigating the therapeutic potential of MAPK pathway signaling modulators as a means of enhancing GC sensitivity. In GC resistant clones derived from the parental CCRF-CEM cells, inhibition of p38 MAPK decreased DEX sensitivity, while inhibition of ERK activity increased sensitivity. These data implicate p38 as a positive regulator of GC activity and ERK as a negative regulator of GC activity [66], suggesting that distinct arms of the MAPK signaling cascade interact differently with the GR pathway. Consistent with these findings, it has been shown that exposing

CCRF-CEM cells to DEX results in increased phosphorylation and activation of p38, one substrate of which is GR itself. Specifically, this study demonstrated that p38 mediates Ser-211 phosphorylation of GR [67], which has been shown to increase the transcriptional activity of GR [5], thereby providing a mechanistic explanation for the positive effect of p38 activity on GC sensitivity. Another study demonstrated that inhibition of p38 in CCRF-CEM cells resulted in decreased induction of BIM expression upon DEX exposure, leading to an attenuated apoptotic response and suggesting that p38 might further contribute to GC sensitivity by enabling the upregulation of BIM expression [68].

Other studies have focused on elucidating the molecular basis for the inhibitory effect of ERK signaling on GC sensitivity. Importantly, ERK has been shown to phosphorylate BIM, preventing it from interacting with other members of the intrinsic apoptotic pathway to induce apoptosis [69]. To determine whether this mechanism contributes to ERK-mediated GC resistance, Rambal et al. demonstrated in ALL cell lines and primary patient samples a synergistic interaction between a MEK inhibitor and DEX, with simultaneous exposure to both agents resulting in increased BIM expression due to a reduction in ERK-mediated BIM phosphorylation [70]. In addition to ERK, JNK activation has previously been implicated as a negative regulator of GC sensitivity. In contrast to p38, JNK is known to catalyze an inhibitory phosphorylation of GR, resulting in decreased transcriptional activity [71]. Jones et al. further established the role of ERK and JNK as negative regulators of GC sensitivity through an shRNA screen designed to identify genes that modify prednisolone sensitivity in B-ALL cell lines. Interestingly, this screen identified *MEK2*, which activates ERK, and *MEK4*, which activates JNK, as important candidate GC resistance genes. Through a variety of functional studies, the authors demonstrated that loss of MEK2 expression induced generalized chemosensitivity, including to GCs, through a p53-dependent mechanism and that loss of MEK4 increased expression of GR, leading to improved GC sensitivity. Furthermore, they demonstrated the clinical relevance of these findings by assessing ERK activity in paired diagnostic and relapse samples from patients with B-ALL and found increased levels of phosphorylated ERK in the relapsed samples [72], consistent with the idea that aberrant activation of ERK signaling may contribute to GC resistance. Given the large number of past and current clinical trials conducted in a wide variety of malignancies [73], the addition of small molecules that modulate MAPK pathway activity may be a feasible strategy for overcoming GC resistance in some lymphoid malignancies.

PI3K/AKT/mTOR Signaling

The PI3K/AKT/mTOR pathway is another signal transduction pathway that is commonly dysregulated in lymphoid malignancies and represents a potential therapeutic target for strategies aimed at overcoming GC resistance. In a recent study involving a large cohort of pediatric T-ALL samples, *AKT1* and *PTEN* mutations were two of only a handful of genetic lesions that had a univariable association with relapse [50], suggesting that mutational activation of this pathway may play a role in therapy resistance, including to GCs. In another analysis of primary B-ALL

samples, patients with increased phosphorylated AKT at diagnosis had a significantly inferior response to steroid-containing induction therapy and had decreased overall and relapse-free survival [74]. These studies provide correlative evidence for the role of aberrant PI3K/AKT/mTOR pathway activity in GC resistance. To more directly assess a mechanistic basis for this relationship, Piovan et al. demonstrated using co-immunoprecipitation that AKT1 binds to and phosphorylates GR on Ser-134, a phosphorylation event that impairs nuclear translocation of ligand-activated GR. Using the *PTEN*-null CCRF-CEM cell line, the authors demonstrated through both *in vitro* and *in vivo* studies that combined treatment with GCs and the AKT inhibitor MK2206 is sufficient to reverse GC resistance [75]. One class of proteins that has been found to cooperate with AKT to modulate GC activity is the 14–3–3 class of phospho-serine/threonine binding proteins, which regulate the subcellular localization of proteins with phosphorylated serine or threonine residues, including phosphorylated GR [76]. Consistent with this function, the 14–3–3σ protein interacts with GR upon AKT1-mediated Ser-134 phosphorylation, resulting in impaired nuclear translocation of ligand-bound GR and leading to reduced transcriptional activity in the presence of GCs [76, 77]. Similarly, it has been shown that more proximal inhibition of this pathway with a PI3K inhibitor results in synergy when combined with GCs, both *in vitro* and in an *in vivo* xenograft model [78]. In B-ALL cell lines and primary diagnostic patient samples, PI3K inhibition augmented nuclear translocation of ligand-activated GR through a reduction in Ser-134 phosphorylation [79], further confirming the effect of aberrant PI3K/AKT pathway inhibition to promote cytoplasmic retention of GR and prevent transcriptional activation.

One important downstream effector of PI3K/AKT pathway activation is mTOR [80], and many groups have studied the role of aberrant mTOR activation as a mediator of GC resistance in lymphoid malignancies. Using a chemical genomics approach, Wei et al. compared a large number of drug-associated gene expression profiles with the gene expression signature of GC sensitive and resistant ALL cells. Through this analysis, they determined that the changes in gene expression associated with exposure to the mTOR inhibitor rapamycin matched that associated with GC sensitive cells, suggesting that rapamycin may show efficacy by altering the gene expression pattern in GC resistant cells to better mimic that of GC sensitive cells. They further demonstrated that exposure to rapamycin sensitized cells to GCs through a mechanism involving downregulation of expression of the anti-apoptotic protein MCL1 [81]. Similarly, Gu et al. demonstrated a synergistic relationship between rapamycin and DEX in a panel of T-ALL cells, and further elucidated the mechanistic basis for this interaction by identifying a synergistic induction of expression of the pro-apoptotic BAX and BIM proteins in conjunction with downregulation of MCL1 [82]. In addition, it has been shown that simultaneous exposure to an mTOR inhibitor and GCs results in a synergistic induction of the cyclin-dependent kinase (CDK) inhibitor proteins p21 and p27 [82, 83], suggesting that mTOR inhibitors and GCs converge both to induce cell cycle arrest and activation of the intrinsic apoptotic pathway. This effect was further demonstrated *in vivo* using PDXs derived from primary patient T- and B-ALL samples, and the

combinatorial effect of mTOR inhibition and GCs was found to be particularly effective in T-ALL samples with loss of *PTEN* expression [84], providing further evidence that aberrant regulation of upstream PI3K/AKT pathway activity results in altered mTOR activity that can be targeted therapeutically to augment the GC response. Finally, given the direct effects of both AKT and mTOR on GC sensitivity, several groups have investigated the efficacy of the dual PI3K and mTOR inhibitor BEZ235, reasoning that dual inhibition at two critical points in this pathway may have a more profound effect to induce GC sensitivity. Indeed, in ALL cell lines and primary patient samples both *in vitro* and *in vivo*, synergy has been demonstrated between BEZ235 and DEX [85, 86], suggesting that multiple nodes within this pathway are viable therapeutic targets for augmenting GC sensitivity.

JAK/STAT Signaling

The JAK/STAT signaling pathway is the critical effector pathway of cytokine receptor signaling, which plays a crucial role in mediating survival, proliferation, and differentiation of lymphoid cells [87]. Not surprisingly, aberrant activation of this pathway is common in lymphoid malignancies [50, 88], and significant attention has been devoted to assessing the role of JAK/STAT pathway inhibition as a novel treatment modality. Activation of cytokine receptors recruits JAK proteins to intracellular domains of cytokine receptors, and these activated JAK proteins recruit and phosphorylate STAT proteins, which translocate to the nucleus and function as transcription factors [87]. Interestingly, GR and one of these STAT proteins, STAT5, have been shown to physically interact at certain genomic loci. Specifically, STAT5 is known to inhibit the action of GR on GR target genes [89]. Consistent with this inhibitory role of JAK/STAT signaling on GR activity, inhibition of this pathway has been shown to overcome GC resistance in a number of lymphoid malignancies. In Philadelphia chromosome-like B-ALL, which is associated with aberrant JAK/STAT pathway activation, the combination of a JAK2 specific inhibitor and DEX demonstrated *in vitro* synergy and showed improved survival in an *in vivo* xenograft model [90]. Similarly, in primary diagnostic T-ALL samples, exposure to the cytokine interleukin-7 resulted in increased JAK/STAT pathway activity that induced GC resistance and could be overcome with the addition of the JAK1/2 inhibitor ruxolitinib [91]. Finally, in CLL cells, GC resistance was found to be associated with autocrine activation of another STAT protein, STAT3, and inhibition of STAT3 activation with ruxolitinib resulted in increased sensitivity to DEX *in vitro* [92].

NOTCH Signaling

NOTCH receptors are transmembrane receptors that, upon ligand binding, undergo a series of cleavage events to release the activated intracellular component of NOTCH from the membrane, allowing it to translocate to the nucleus and function as a transcription factor. The γ-secretase complex mediates the final step in this processing [93]. Due to the important role of NOTCH signaling in the pathogenesis of T-cell malignancies, inhibitors of this γ-secretase complex have been evaluated as potential therapeutic agents for the treatment of these diseases in combination with GCs. Specifically, in T-ALL cell lines, γ-secretase inhibitors have been shown to sensitize cells to the cytotoxic effects of DEX [94]. Several groups have

demonstrated that the combination of γ-secretase inhibitors and GCs facilitates autoinduction of GR and potentiates the induction of BIM expression, leading to increased cell death in both *in vitro* and *in vivo* model systems [95, 96]. Despite these promising preclinical findings, the clinical utility of γ-secretase inhibitors has been limited by severe gastrointestinal toxicity [97]. However, in an elegant study conducted in a T-ALL xenograft model, it was shown that simultaneous exposure to a γ-secretase inhibitor and DEX not only overcame GC resistance, but also attenuated the toxicities associated with the γ-secretase inhibitor [95], suggesting that the combination of γ-secretase inhibitors and GCs may be a viable therapeutic strategy to enhance GC sensitivity. Finally, at least one study has evaluated the efficacy of an anti-NOTCH1 monoclonal antibody in a T-ALL PDX model and demonstrated potentiation of GC activity when given in combination [98].

Src Family Kinase Signaling

In T-cells, the Src family kinases Lck and Fyn mediate critical signal transduction events downstream of the T-cell receptor (TCR) [99]. Through the use of reverse-phase protein arrays applied to PPR and PGR T-ALL samples, Lck was found to be aberrantly activated in PPR patients relative to PGR patients [100]. Consistent with these findings, inhibition of Lck with the Src family kinase inhibitor dasatinib has demonstrated *in vitro* efficacy to enhance GC sensitivity [101] and has been shown to impair the engraftment of T-ALL cells *in vivo* relative to treatment with either agent alone [100].

Metabolism

In addition to studies demonstrating the importance of GR expression levels as a mediator of GC sensitivity, many groups have demonstrated that metabolic processes that limit the availability of GC ligand can similarly contribute to GC resistance. In normal physiology, the 11β-hydroxysteroid dehydrogenase (HSD) class of enzymes mediates the conversion between cortisol, the active endogenous hormone, and cortisone, the inert form of the hormone. Specifically, 11β-HSD1 regenerates cortisol from cortisone while 11β-HSD2 inactivates cortisol [102]. In an analysis of primary patient ALL samples, basal 11β-HSD1 expression was found to be higher in GC sensitive samples relative to GC resistant samples. Furthermore, 11β-HSD1 expression was upregulated in response to DEX exposure specifically in the GC sensitive samples but not in the GC resistant samples, suggesting that 11β-HSD1 may participate in a GC-regulated feedback loop to maintain the availability of ligand for GR binding [103]. The same group similarly analyzed 11β-HSD2 expression in the GC resistant T-ALL cell line MOLT4F and the GC sensitive CCRF-CEM cell line and demonstrated that 11β-HSD2 expression was higher in the setting of GC resistance. They further demonstrated that pharmacologic inhibition of 11β-HSD2 was sufficient to potentiate GC-induced apoptosis [104]. Consistent with these findings, 11β-HSD2 expression was compared between GC resistant T-ALL cell lines, GC sensitive NHL cell lines, and normal peripheral T-cells. In the GC

resistant cell lines, 11β-HSD2 expression was found to be significantly elevated relative to the GC sensitive cell lines or normal T-cells [105]. To determine how 11β-HSD2 is dynamically regulated in the presence of GCs, transcript and protein expression as well as enzymatic activity were assessed in the GC sensitive CEM-C7 cell line after exposure to DEX. This analysis demonstrated a reduction in expression and enzymatic activity upon DEX exposure, suggesting that, in contrast to 11β-HSD1, GC-induced downregulation of 11β-HSD2 may be important for maintaining GC sensitivity [106].

In addition to HSDs, glutathione *S*-transferases (GSTs) are a class of enzymes involved in the metabolism of a wide variety of drugs, including steroids [107]. In an analysis of PGR and PPR patient samples from children treated on an ALL-BFM protocol, deletion of the GST family member *GSTT1* was enriched in the PPR patient group and was associated with an increased risk of relapse [108]. These data suggest that genetic lesions involving GST genes might contribute to differences in clinical GC response, though further studies are needed to determine whether aberrant GST activity plays a significant role in altering the availability of GC ligand and whether this contributes to GC resistance.

While metabolism of GCs themselves may play a role in modulating GC sensitivity, GC resistance has also been attributed to the aberrant activity of key bioenergetic metabolic pathways. Specifically, it has been shown in both ALL cell lines and in primary patient ALL samples that GC resistance is associated with increased rates of glycolysis, oxidative phosphorylation, and cholesterol biosynthesis. In a gene expression profiling study using ALL cell lines, pathways involved in these metabolic processes emerged as the top biological pathways associated with GC resistance. Furthermore, when these gene sets were studied in the context of primary patient samples, enrichment for these gene sets was a strong predictor of relapse [109], suggesting that activation of these bioenergetic pathways may promote chemoresistance. The same group went on to demonstrate that inhibition of glycolysis, oxidative phosphorylation, or cholesterol biosynthesis was sufficient to sensitize GC resistant T-ALL cells to GCs [110], further supporting the idea that aberrant activation of cellular metabolic processes may confer GC resistance.

Based on these findings, significant attention has been devoted to studying the role of glucose metabolism as a modulator of GC sensitivity. In an analysis of a large cohort of primary B-ALL samples with varying degrees of *in vitro* prednisolone sensitivity, genes associated with carbohydrate metabolism were found to be differentially expressed between GC sensitive and GC resistant samples [111]. Furthermore, in ALL cell lines and primary patient samples, prednisolone resistance was found to correlate with increased glucose consumption, and inhibition of glycolysis with the metabolite 2-deoxy-D-glucose (2-DG) sensitized cells to GCs, supporting the idea that excessive metabolic activity may impair GC-induced apoptosis [112]. To further assess the relationship between glucose consumption and GC sensitivity, GC sensitive ALL cell lines and primary patient samples were exposed to DEX, which was found to inhibit glycolysis, leading to decreased glucose consumption that was mediated by a reduction in the expression of the glucose transporter GLUT1. This group went on to demonstrate that culturing cells in low glucose

conditions resulted in increased DEX-induced apoptosis [113]. Taken together, these data suggest that a reduction in glucose metabolism may be required for optimal GC-induced apoptosis. Consistent with this idea, it was shown that in prednisolone sensitive primary B-ALL samples, MCL1 expression decreased upon exposure to prednisolone, while it did not decrease in prednisolone resistant samples. Genetic silencing of MCL1 was found to be associated with an increase in glucose consumption, and simultaneous inhibition of glycolysis and silencing of MCL1 resulted in further sensitization to prednisolone [114]. The importance of excessive glucose metabolism as a mediator of GC resistance has also been studied in the context of NHL cell lines and primary patient samples. In these cells, inhibition of glycolysis was found to synergize with methylprednisolone to induce cell cycle arrest and apoptosis [115]. Providing a genetic explanation for the relationship between altered glucose metabolism and GC sensitivity, Chan et al. recently performed ChIP-seq to assess the binding pattern of transcription factors that are commonly inactivated in B-ALL, including PAX5 and IKZF1. They demonstrated that in B-ALL, these transcription factors are recruited to genetic loci that encode positive and negative regulators of glucose uptake. Re-expression of PAX5 and IKZF1 in B-ALL cells resulted in decreased glucose uptake and was sufficient to overcome prednisolone resistance [116]. The authors speculated that the hypermetabolic state associated with the deletion of these transcription factors facilitates leukemogenesis and simultaneously facilitates resistance to GC therapy.

In addition to glucose metabolism, aberrant lipid metabolism has also been shown to contribute to GC resistance. Specifically, lymphoid cells have been shown to have a unique dependency on exogenously synthesized cholesterol, and similar to glycolysis, GCs may exert their pro-apoptotic effects in part through inhibiting this cholesterol synthesis pathway. Indeed, in GC sensitive CEM-C7 cells, DEX was found to inhibit cholesterol synthesis, while this did not occur effectively in GC resistant CEM-C1 cells. Furthermore, exposure of CEM-C7 cells to exogenous cholesterol decreased DEX sensitivity, suggesting that DEX resistance may be mediated in part by increased cholesterol metabolism [117]. Further supporting these data, T-ALL PDXs treated with a GC-containing four-drug induction regimen that acquired *in vivo* drug resistance were found to have altered cholesterol metabolism. In these samples, exposure to DEX and simvastatin, an inhibitor of cholesterol biosynthesis, demonstrated *ex vivo* synergy [118]. These data suggest that additional preclinical studies may be warranted to evaluate the use of drugs that modulate bioenergetic pathways as a means of overcoming GC resistance.

MicroRNAs

MicroRNAs (miRNAs) are short non-coding RNAs that are most commonly contained within introns. Once transcribed, they bind to complementary sequences within the 3' untranslated region (3'UTR) of target gene mRNAs. Through this activity, miRNAs function primarily as negative regulators of translation, though

they may have other repressive and activating roles [119]. Dysfunctional expression of miRNAs is a common feature of many cancers, including hematologic malignancies. In ALL samples, a miRNA microarray analysis of paired diagnostic and relapse samples identified a distinct miRNA profile in the relapse samples relative to the diagnostic samples [120]. Similarly, in a study involving miRNA sequencing of samples from patients with Burkitt lymphoma, DLBCL, and follicular lymphoma, many miRNAs were found to be aberrantly expressed in lymphoma cells relative to normal lymphoid cells. Functionally, these miRNAs were found to be associated with altered regulation of key signal transduction pathways, including the Ras/MAPK and PI3K/AKT signaling pathways, suggesting that these miRNAs may play a role both in lymphomagenesis and in chemoresistance, including GC resistance [121].

MiR-17

In B-ALL cell lines, DEX exposure downregulated expression of miR-17 in GC sensitive but not in GC resistant cells. ChIP-seq analysis demonstrated that this is mediated by direct GR binding to the miR-17 locus specifically in GC sensitive cells. Functionally, miR-17 was found to target the BIM transcript for silencing, and pharmacologic inhibition of miR-17 increased DEX sensitivity with an associated increase in BIM expression [122].

MiR-100/99a

The miRNA species miR-100/99a has also been implicated in GC resistance and is known to be downregulated in samples from ALL patients with clinically high risk features. Specifically, low expression has been associated with inferior leukemia-free and overall survival [123]. In cell lines, ectopic expression of miR-100/99a promoted DEX-induced apoptosis through a reduction in expression of the miR-100/99a target FKBP51. The reduction in FKBP51 expression was associated with increased nuclear localization of ligand-bound GR and decreased expression of mTOR, subsequently leading to a reduction in MCL1 expression which further potentiated apoptosis [123].

MiR-124

The role of MiR-124 as a mediator of GC resistance was first appreciated in the context of sepsis, where it was found that miR-24 represses the GRα transcript [124], suggesting that its overexpression might mediate GC resistance by decreasing the availability of GR protein for ligand binding. Indeed, miR-124 expression was found to be increased in prednisolone resistant ALL cell lines and in PPR patient samples and overexpression of miR-124 in ALL cells was associated with a reduction in GR protein expression [125]. However, at least one study has suggested the opposite effect of miR-124 in GC sensitivity. In DLBCL cells, miR-124 expression was found to decrease expression of PDE4B, thereby relieving the inhibitory

effect on cAMP signaling and increasing GC sensitivity [126]. Further studies are therefore needed to elucidate the role of miR-124 in modulating GC sensitivity in distinct lymphoid malignancies.

MiR-128b and miR-221

In MLL-AF4 ALL, miR-128b and miR-221 were found to be downregulated relative to other types of ALL. Overexpression of these miRNAs in MLL-AF4 ALL cell lines resulted in increased sensitivity to GCs, which was accompanied by downregulation of MLL, AF4, and their associated fusion genes [127]. Further implicating low miR-128b as a mediator of GC resistance in MLL-AF4 ALL, miR-128b mutations found in both cell lines and primary patient samples were shown to impair the appropriate processing of miR-128b. This resulted in GC resistance mediated by a failure to downregulate the expression of fusion oncogenes involving MLL and AF4, though the mechanisms by which MLL and AF4 themselves contribute to GC resistance are currently unknown [128].

MiR-142-3p

MiR-142-3p was initially shown in T-regulatory cells to target adenylyl cyclase 9 mRNA for silencing, resulting in a reduction in the cellular pool of cAMP due to the loss of adenylyl cyclase enzymatic activity [129]. Elevated expression of miR-142-3p in primary T-ALL samples was found to be associated with an increased risk of relapse and decreased leukemia-free survival relative to patients with lower miR-142-3p expression. Consistent with its known effects on the adenylyl cyclase 9 transcript, high miR-142-3p expression was associated with increased cAMP pathway activity. Furthermore, miR-142-3p was found to target the GRα transcript for repression via direct binding to the 3'UTR. In this context, inhibition of miR-142-3p overcame GC resistance both by facilitating an increase in cAMP pathway activity and an increase in GRα expression [130].

MiR-182

In an analysis of a variety of murine and human malignant lymphoid cell lines, miR-182 expression was higher in GC resistant cells relative to GC sensitive cells, and high expression was associated with decreased FOXO3A expression. One important downstream target of FOXO3A is BIM, and high expression of miR-182 was also associated with a reduction in BIM expression. Consistent with this activity, overexpression of miR-182 restored BIM expression, thereby overcoming GC resistance [131].

MiR-185-5p

Finally, miR-185-5p was found to be overexpressed in GC sensitive ALL cell lines. One target of miR-185-5p is the mTORC2 mRNA. Forced overexpression of miR-185-5p in GC resistant ALL cells restored GC sensitivity with a concomitant reduction in mTORC2 activity [132].

Conclusion

Given the pleiotropic effects of GCs and the innumerable interactions between GR and a wide variety of cellular processes, it is not surprising that the mechanisms of GC resistance are complex and that our understanding of these mechanisms is constantly evolving (Fig. 1.2). However, despite a well-justified concern for GC resistance and its associated clinical implications, GCs are profoundly efficacious in the treatment of lymphoid malignancies and will undoubtedly remain an integral component of therapy. Therefore, there is an urgent need to translate the findings from the numerous preclinical and clinical studies highlighted in this review into standard clinical practice for the treatment of these diseases. With the application of large-scale sequencing and epigenetic profiling technologies, the development of small molecule and biologic therapeutics, and increasing access to patient-derived tissue samples, there is significant potential for the elucidation of additional causes of GC resistance and the identification and implementation of novel therapeutic strategies to overcome them.

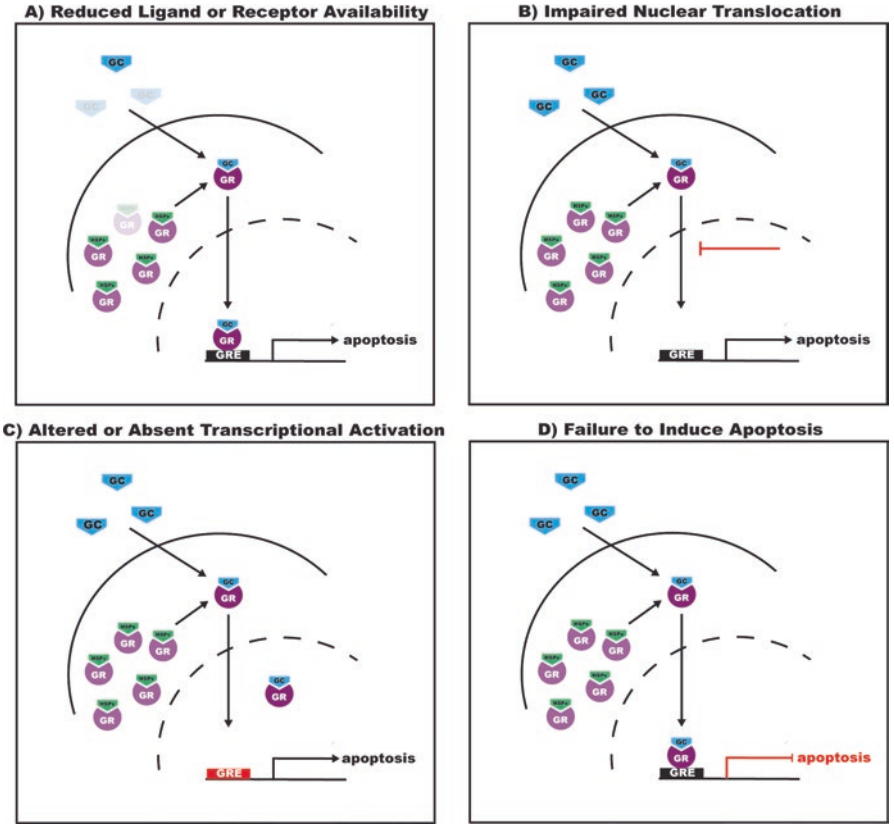


Fig. 1.2 Mechanisms of GC Resistance. GC resistance may arise due to processes that impact any component of normal GR signaling, including the availability of GC ligand or GR (**A**), nuclear translocation of the activated GC/GR complex (**B**), transcriptional activity of ligand-bound (**C**), or the induction of apoptosis (**D**)

Acknowledgements L.K.M. is supported by the UCSF Medical Scientist Training Program Grant T32 GM007618 and by a Genentech Foundation Award. M.L.H is supported by the National Cancer Institute Grant R01 CA193776, The Campini Foundation, The Buster Posey Family Foundation, and The Pepp Family Foundation. The authors thank Kevin Shannon and Anica Wandler for their critical reading of the manuscript.

Disclosure of Conflict of Interest No potential conflicts of interest were disclosed.

References

1. Schrappe M, Reiter A, Zimmermann M, Harbott J, Ludwig WD, Henze G, et al. Long-term results of four consecutive trials in childhood ALL performed by the ALL-BFM study group from 1981 to 1995. Berlin-Frankfurt-Munster. Leukemia. 2000;14(12):2205–22.
2. Fisher RI, Gaynor ER, Dahlberg S, Oken MM, Grogan TM, Mize EM, et al. Comparison of a standard regimen (CHOP) with three intensive chemotherapy regimens for advanced non-Hodgkin's lymphoma. N Engl J Med. 1993;328(14):1002–6.
3. Dordelmann M, Reiter A, Borkhardt A, Ludwig WD, Gotz N, Viehmann S, et al. Prednisone response is the strongest predictor of treatment outcome in infant acute lymphoblastic leukemia. Blood. 1999;94(4):1209–17.
4. Mathew BS, Carson KA, Grossman SA. Initial response to glucocorticoids. Cancer. 2006;106(2):383–7.
5. Oakley RH, Cidlowski JA. The biology of the glucocorticoid receptor: new signaling mechanisms in health and disease. J Allergy Clin Immunol. 2013;132(5):1033–44.
6. Yamamoto KR. Steroid receptor regulated transcription of specific genes and gene networks. Annu Rev Genet. 1985;19:209–52.
7. Schmidt S, Rainer J, Ploner C, Presul E, Riml S, Kofler R. Glucocorticoid-induced apoptosis and glucocorticoid resistance: molecular mechanisms and clinical relevance. Cell Death Differ. 2004;11(Suppl 1):S45–55.
8. Ploner C, Rainer J, Niederegger H, Eduardoff M, Villunger A, Geley S, et al. The BCL2 rheostat in glucocorticoid-induced apoptosis of acute lymphoblastic leukemia. Leukemia. 2008;22(2):370–7.
9. Jing D, Bhadri VA, Beck D, Thoms JA, Yakob NA, Wong JW, et al. Opposing regulation of BIM and BCL2 controls glucocorticoid-induced apoptosis of pediatric acute lymphoblastic leukemia cells. Blood. 2015;125(2):273–83.
10. Charmandari E, Kino T, Chrousos GP. Primary generalized familial and sporadic glucocorticoid resistance (Chrousos syndrome) and hypersensitivity. Endocr Dev. 2013;24:67–85.
11. Bray PJ, Cotton RG. Variations of the human glucocorticoid receptor gene (NR3C1): pathological and in vitro mutations and polymorphisms. Hum Mutat. 2003;21(6):557–68.
12. Harmon JM, Thompson EB. Isolation and characterization of dexamethasone-resistant mutants from human lymphoid cell line CEM-C7. Mol Cell Biol. 1981;1(6):512–21.
13. Ashraf J, Thompson EB. Identification of the activation-labile gene: a single point mutation in the human glucocorticoid receptor presents as two distinct receptor phenotypes. Mol Endocrinol. 1993;7(5):631–42.
14. Powers JH, Hillmann AG, Tang DC, Harmon JM. Cloning and expression of mutant glucocorticoid receptors from glucocorticoid-sensitive and -resistant human leukemic cells. Cancer Res. 1993;53(17):4059–65.
15. Hala M, Hartmann BL, Bock G, Geley S, Kofler R. Glucocorticoid-receptor-gene defects and resistance to glucocorticoid-induced apoptosis in human leukemic cell lines. Int J Cancer. 1996;68(5):663–8.

16. Strasser-Wozak EM, Hattmannstorfer R, Hala M, Hartmann BL, Fiegl M, Geley S, et al. Splice site mutation in the glucocorticoid receptor gene causes resistance to glucocorticoid-induced apoptosis in a human acute leukemic cell line. Cancer Res. 1995;55(2):348–53.
17. Hillmann AG, Ramdas J, Multanen K, Norman MR, Harmon JM. Glucocorticoid receptor gene mutations in leukemic cells acquired in vitro and in vivo. Cancer Res. 2000;60(7):2056–62.
18. Riml S, Schmidt S, Ausserlechner MJ, Geley S, Kofler R. Glucocorticoid receptor heterozygosity combined with lack of receptor auto-induction causes glucocorticoid resistance in Jurkat acute lymphoblastic leukemia cells. Cell Death Differ. 2004;11(Suppl 1):S65–72.
19. Beesley AH, Weller RE, Senanayake S, Welch M, Kees UR. Receptor mutation is not a common mechanism of naturally occurring glucocorticoid resistance in leukaemia cell lines. Leuk Res. 2009;33(2):321–5.
20. Tissing WJ, Meijerink JP, den Boer ML, Brinkhof B, van Rossum EF, van Wering ER, et al. Genetic variations in the glucocorticoid receptor gene are not related to glucocorticoid resistance in childhood acute lymphoblastic leukemia. Clin Cancer Res. 2005;11(16):6050–6.
21. Irving JA, Minto L, Bailey S, Hall AG. Loss of heterozygosity and somatic mutations of the glucocorticoid receptor gene are rarely found at relapse in pediatric acute lymphoblastic leukemia but may occur in a subpopulation early in the disease course. Cancer Res. 2005;65(21):9712–8.
22. Mullighan CG, Phillips LA, Su X, Ma J, Miller CB, Shurtleff SA, et al. Genomic analysis of the clonal origins of relapsed acute lymphoblastic leukemia. Science. 2008;322(5906):1377–80.
23. Oshima K, Khiabanian H, da Silva-Almeida AC, Tzoneva G, Abate F, Ambesi-Impiombato A, et al. Mutational landscape, clonal evolution patterns, and role of RAS mutations in relapsed acute lymphoblastic leukemia. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA. 2016;113(40):11306–11.
24. Pui CH, Dahl GV, Rivera G, Murphy SB, Costlow ME. The relationship of blast cell glucocorticoid receptor levels to response to single-agent steroid trial and remission response in children with acute lymphoblastic leukemia. Leuk Res. 1984;8(4):579–85.
25. Quddus FF, Leventhal BG, Boyett JM, Pullen DJ, Crist WM, Borowitz MJ. Glucocorticoid receptors in immunological subtypes of childhood acute lymphocytic leukemia cells: a pediatric oncology group study. Cancer Res. 1985;45(12 Pt 1):6482–6.
26. Kato GJ, Quddus FF, Shuster JJ, Boyett J, Pullen JD, Borowitz MJ, et al. High glucocorticoid receptor content of leukemic blasts is a favorable prognostic factor in childhood acute lymphoblastic leukemia. Blood. 1993;82(8):2304–9.
27. Grausenburger R, Bastelberger S, Eckert C, Kauer M, Stanulla M, Frech C, et al. Genetic alterations in glucocorticoid signaling pathway components are associated with adverse prognosis in children with relapsed ETV6/RUNX1-positive acute lymphoblastic leukemia. Leuk Lymphoma. 2016;57(5):1163–73.
28. Lauten M, Cario G, Asgedom G, Welte K, Schrappe M. Protein expression of the glucocorticoid receptor in childhood acute lymphoblastic leukemia. Haematologica. 2003;88(11):1253–8.
29. Denton RR, Eisen LP, Elsasser MS, Harmon JM. Differential autoregulation of glucocorticoid receptor expression in human T- and B-cell lines. Endocrinology. 1993;133(1):248–56.
30. Ramdas J, Liu W, Harmon JM. Glucocorticoid-induced cell death requires autoinduction of glucocorticoid receptor expression in human leukemic T cells. Cancer Res. 1999;59(6):1378–85.
31. Gomi M, Moriwaki K, Katagiri S, Kurata Y, Thompson EB. Glucocorticoid effects on myeloma cells in culture: correlation of growth inhibition with induction of glucocorticoid receptor messenger RNA. Cancer Res. 1990;50(6):1873–8.
32. Asnafi V, Buzyn A, Le Noir S, Baleydier F, Simon A, Beldjord K, et al. NOTCH1/FBXW7 mutation identifies a large subgroup with favorable outcome in adult T-cell acute lymphoblastic leukemia (T-ALL): a Group for Research on Adult Acute Lymphoblastic Leukemia (GRAALL) study. Blood. 2009;113(17):3918–24.
33. Clappier E, Collette S, Grardel N, Girard S, Suarez L, Brunie G, et al. NOTCH1 and FBXW7 mutations have a favorable impact on early response to treatment, but not on outcome, in children with T-cell acute lymphoblastic leukemia (T-ALL) treated on EORTC trials 58881 and 58951. Leukemia. 2010;24(12):2023–31.

34. Malyukova A, Brown S, Papa R, O'Brien R, Giles J, Trahair TN, et al. FBXW7 regulates glucocorticoid response in T-cell acute lymphoblastic leukaemia by targeting the glucocorticoid receptor for degradation. Leukemia. 2013;27(5):1053–62.
35. Paugh SW, Bonten EJ, Savic D, Ramsey LB, Thierfelder WE, Gurung P, et al. NALP3 inflammasome upregulation and CASP1 cleavage of the glucocorticoid receptor cause glucocorticoid resistance in leukemia cells. Nat Genet. 2015;47(6):607–14.
36. Oakley RH, Sar M, Cidlowski JA. The human glucocorticoid receptor beta isoform. Expression, biochemical properties, and putative function. J Biol Chem. 1996;271(16):9550–9.
37. Shahidi H, Vottero A, Stratakis CA, Taymans SE, Karl M, Longui CA, et al. Imbalanced expression of the glucocorticoid receptor isoforms in cultured lymphocytes from a patient with systemic glucocorticoid resistance and chronic lymphocytic leukemia. Biochem Biophys Res Commun. 1999;254(3):559–65.
38. Koga Y, Matsuzaki A, Suminoe A, Hattori H, Kanemitsu S, Hara T. Differential mRNA expression of glucocorticoid receptor alpha and beta is associated with glucocorticoid sensitivity of acute lymphoblastic leukemia in children. Pediatr Blood Cancer. 2005;45(2):121–7.
39. Haarman EG, Kaspers GJ, Pieters R, Rottier MM, Veerman AJ. Glucocorticoid receptor alpha, beta and gamma expression vs in vitro glucocorticod resistance in childhood leukemia. Leukemia. 2004;18(3):530–7.
40. Beger C, Gerdes K, Lauten M, Tissing WJ, Fernandez-Munoz I, Schrappe M, et al. Expression and structural analysis of glucocorticoid receptor isoform gamma in human leukaemia cells using an isoform-specific real-time polymerase chain reaction approach. Br J Haematol. 2003;122(2):245–52.
41. Grad I, Picard D. The glucocorticoid responses are shaped by molecular chaperones. Mol Cell Endocrinol. 2007;275(1–2):2–12.
42. Lauten M, Beger C, Gerdes K, Asgedom G, Kardinal C, Welte K, et al. Expression of heat-shock protein 90 in glucocorticoid-sensitive and -resistant childhood acute lymphoblastic leukaemia. Leukemia. 2003;17(8):1551–6.
43. Tissing WJ, Meijerink JP, den Boer ML, Brinkhof B, Pieters R. mRNA expression levels of (co)chaperone molecules of the glucocorticoid receptor are not involved in glucocorticoid resistance in pediatric ALL. Leukemia. 2005;19(5):727–33.
44. John S, Sabo PJ, Johnson TA, Sung MH, Biddie SC, Lightman SL, et al. Interaction of the glucocorticoid receptor with the chromatin landscape. Mol Cell. 2008;29(5):611–24.
45. Pottier N, Yang W, Assem M, Panetta JC, Pei D, Paugh SW, et al. The SWI/SNF chromatin-remodeling complex and glucocorticoid resistance in acute lymphoblastic leukemia. J Natl Cancer Inst. 2008;100(24):1792–803.
46. Hogan LE, Meyer JA, Yang J, Wang J, Wong N, Yang W, et al. Integrated genomic analysis of relapsed childhood acute lymphoblastic leukemia reveals therapeutic strategies. Blood. 2011;118(19):5218–26.
47. Bhatla T, Wang J, Morrison DJ, Raetz EA, Burke MJ, Brown P, et al. Epigenetic reprogramming reverses the relapse-specific gene expression signature and restores chemosensitivity in childhood B-lymphoblastic leukemia. Blood. 2012;119(22):5201–10.
48. Gruhn B, Naumann T, Gruner D, Walther M, Wittig S, Becker S, et al. The expression of histone deacetylase 4 is associated with prednisone poor-response in childhood acute lymphoblastic leukemia. Leuk Res. 2013;37(10):1200–7.
49. Jones CL, Bhatla T, Blum R, Wang J, Paugh SW, Wen X, et al. Loss of TBL1XR1 disrupts glucocorticoid receptor recruitment to chromatin and results in glucocorticoid resistance in a B-lymphoblastic leukemia model. J Biol Chem. 2014;289(30):20502–15.
50. Liu Y, Easton J, Shao Y, Maciaszek J, Wang Z, Wilkinson MR, et al. The genomic landscape of pediatric and young adult T-lineage acute lymphoblastic leukemia. Nat Genet. 2017;49(8):1211–8.
51. Zhang J, Mullighan CG, Harvey RC, Wu G, Chen X, Edmonson M, et al. Key pathways are frequently mutated in high-risk childhood acute lymphoblastic leukemia: a report from the Children's Oncology Group. Blood. 2011;118(11):3080–7.

52. Moffitt AB, Dave SS. Clinical applications of the genomic landscape of aggressive non-hodgkin lymphoma. J Clin Oncol. 2017;35(9):955–62.
53. Revollo JR, Cidlowski JA. Mechanisms generating diversity in glucocorticoid receptor signaling. Ann NY Acad Sci. 2009;1179:167–78.
54. Raker VK, Becker C, Steinbrink K. The cAMP pathway as therapeutic target in autoimmune and inflammatory diseases. Front Immunol. 2016;7:123.
55. Gruol DJ, Campbell NF, Bourgeois S. Cyclic AMP-dependent protein kinase promotes glucocorticoid receptor function. J Biol Chem. 1986;261(11):4909–14.
56. Medh RD, Saeed MF, Johnson BH, Thompson EB. Resistance of human leukemic CEM-C1 cells is overcome by synergism between glucocorticoid and protein kinase A pathways: correlation with c-Myc suppression. Cancer Res. 1998;58(16):3684–93.
57. Zhang L, Insel PA. The pro-apoptotic protein Bim is a convergence point for cAMP/protein kinase A- and glucocorticoid-promoted apoptosis of lymphoid cells. J Biol Chem. 2004;279(20):20858–65.
58. Dong H, Carlton ME, Lerner A, Epstein PM. Effect of cAMP signaling on expression of glucocorticoid receptor, Bim and Bad in glucocorticoid-sensitive and resistant leukemic and multiple myeloma cells. Front Pharmacol. 2015;6:230.
59. Lerner A, Epstein PM. Cyclic nucleotide phosphodiesterases as targets for treatment of haematological malignancies. Biochem J. 2006;393(Pt 1):21–41.
60. Ogawa R, Streiff MB, Bugayenko A, Kato GJ. Inhibition of PDE4 phosphodiesterase activity induces growth suppression, apoptosis, glucocorticoid sensitivity, p53, and p21(WAF1/CIP1) proteins in human acute lymphoblastic leukemia cells. Blood. 2002;99(9):3390–7.
61. Tiwari S, Dong H, Kim EJ, Weintraub L, Epstein PM, Lerner A. Type 4 cAMP phosphodiesterase (PDE4) inhibitors augment glucocorticoid-mediated apoptosis in B cell chronic lymphocytic leukemia (B-CLL) in the absence of exogenous adenylyl cyclase stimulation. Biochem Pharmacol. 2005;69(3):473–83.
62. Meyers JA, Taverna J, Chaves J, Makkinje A, Lerner A. Phosphodiesterase 4 inhibitors augment levels of glucocorticoid receptor in B cell chronic lymphocytic leukemia but not in normal circulating hematopoietic cells. Clin Cancer Res. 2007;13(16):4920–7.
63. Kim SW, Rai D, Aguiar RC. Gene set enrichment analysis unveils the mechanism for the phosphodiesterase 4B control of glucocorticoid response in B-cell lymphoma. Clin Cancer Res. 2011;17(21):6723–32.
64. Shipp MA, Ross KN, Tamayo P, Weng AP, Kutok JL, Aguiar RC, et al. Diffuse large B-cell lymphoma outcome prediction by gene-expression profiling and supervised machine learning. Nat Med. 2002;8(1):68–74.
65. Pearson G, Robinson F, Beers Gibson T, Xu BE, Karandikar M, Berman K, et al. Mitogen-activated protein (MAP) kinase pathways: regulation and physiological functions. Endocr Rev. 2001;22(2):153–83.
66. Tanaka T, Okabe T, Gondo S, Fukuda M, Yamamoto M, Umemura T, et al. Modification of glucocorticoid sensitivity by MAP kinase signaling pathways in glucocorticoid-induced T-cell apoptosis. Exp Hematol. 2006;34(11):1542–52.
67. Miller AL, Webb MS, Copik AJ, Wang Y, Johnson BH, Kumar R, et al. p38 Mitogen-activated protein kinase (MAPK) is a key mediator in glucocorticoid-induced apoptosis of lymphoid cells: correlation between p38 MAPK activation and site-specific phosphorylation of the human glucocorticoid receptor at serine 211. Mol Endocrinol. 2005;19(6):1569–83.
68. Lu J, Quearry B, Harada H. p38-MAP kinase activation followed by BIM induction is essential for glucocorticoid-induced apoptosis in lymphoblastic leukemia cells. FEBS Lett. 2006;580(14):3539–44.
69. Harada H, Quearry B, Ruiz-Vela A, Korsmeyer SJ. Survival factor-induced extracellular signal-regulated kinase phosphorylates BIM, inhibiting its association with BAX and pro-apoptotic activity. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA. 2004;101(43):15313–7.
70. Rambal AA, Panaguiton ZL, Kramer L, Grant S, Harada H. MEK inhibitors potentiate dexamethasone lethality in acute lymphoblastic leukemia cells through the pro-apoptotic molecule BIM. Leukemia. 2009;23(10):1744–54.

71. Rogatsky I, Logan SK, Garabedian MJ. Antagonism of glucocorticoid receptor transcriptional activation by the c-Jun N-terminal kinase. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA. 1998;95(5):2050–5.
72. Jones CL, Gearheart CM, Fosmire S, Delgado-Martin C, Evensen NA, Bride K, et al. MAPK signaling cascades mediate distinct glucocorticoid resistance mechanisms in pediatric leukemia. Blood. 2015;126(19):2202–12.
73. Burotto M, Chiou VL, Lee JM, Kohn EC. The MAPK pathway across different malignancies: a new perspective. Cancer. 2014;120(22):3446–56.
74. Morishita N, Tsukahara H, Chayama K, Ishida T, Washio K, Miyamura T, et al. Activation of Akt is associated with poor prognosis and chemotherapeutic resistance in pediatric B-precursor acute lymphoblastic leukemia. Pediatr Blood Cancer. 2012;59(1):83–9.
75. Piovan E, Yu J, Tosello V, Herranz D, Ambesi-Impiombato A, Da Silva AC, et al. Direct reversal of glucocorticoid resistance by AKT inhibition in acute lymphoblastic leukemia. Cancer Cell. 2013;24(6):766–76.
76. Kino T, Souvatzoglou E, De Martino MU, Tsopanomihalu M, Wan Y, Chrousos GP. Protein 14-3-3sigma interacts with and favors cytoplasmic subcellular localization of the glucocorticoid receptor, acting as a negative regulator of the glucocorticoid signaling pathway. J Biol Chem. 2003;278(28):25651–6.
77. Habib T, Sadoun A, Nader N, Suzuki S, Liu W, Jithesh PV, et al. AKT1 has dual actions on the glucocorticoid receptor by cooperating with 14-3-3. Mol Cell Endocrinol. 2017;439:431–43.
78. Silveira AB, Laranjeira AB, Rodrigues GO, Leal PC, Cardoso BA, Barata JT, et al. PI3K inhibition synergizes with glucocorticoids but antagonizes with methotrexate in T-cell acute lymphoblastic leukemia. Oncotarget. 2015;6(15):13105–18.
79. Evangelisti C, Cappellini A, Oliveira M, Fragoso R, Barata JT, Bertaina A, et al. Phosphatidylinositol 3-kinase inhibition potentiates glucocorticoid response in B-cell acute lymphoblastic leukemia. J Cell Physiol. 2018;233(3):1796–811.
80. Hay N, Sonenberg N. Upstream and downstream of mTOR. Genes Dev. 2004;18(16):1926–45.
81. Wei G, Twomey D, Lamb J, Schlis K, Agarwal J, Stam RW, et al. Gene expression-based chemical genomics identifies rapamycin as a modulator of MCL1 and glucocorticoid resistance. Cancer Cell. 2006;10(4):331–42.
82. Gu L, Zhou C, Liu H, Gao J, Li Q, Mu D, et al. Rapamycin sensitizes T-ALL cells to dexamethasone-induced apoptosis. J Exp Clin Cancer Res. 2010;29:150.
83. Batista A, Barata JT, Raderschall E, Sallan SE, Carlesso N, Nadler LM, et al. Targeting of active mTOR inhibits primary leukemia T cells and synergizes with cytotoxic drugs and signaling inhibitors. Exp Hematol. 2011;39(4):457–72.. e3
84. Zhang C, Ryu YK, Chen TZ, Hall CP, Webster DR, Kang MH. Synergistic activity of rapamycin and dexamethasone in vitro and in vivo in acute lymphoblastic leukemia via cell-cycle arrest and apoptosis. Leuk Res. 2012;36(3):342–9.
85. Schult C, Dahlhaus M, Glass A, Fischer K, Lange S, Freund M, et al. The dual kinase inhibitor NVP-BEZ235 in combination with cytotoxic drugs exerts anti-proliferative activity towards acute lymphoblastic leukemia cells. Anticancer Res. 2012;32(2):463–74.
86. Hall CP, Reynolds CP, Kang MH. Modulation of glucocorticoid resistance in pediatric T-cell acute lymphoblastic leukemia by increasing BIM expression with the PI3K/mTOR inhibitor BEZ235. Clin Cancer Res. 2016;22(3):621–32.
87. Murray PJ. The JAK-STAT signaling pathway: input and output integration. J Immunol. 2007;178(5):2623–9.
88. Roberts KG, Morin RD, Zhang J, Hirst M, Zhao Y, Su X, et al. Genetic alterations activating kinase and cytokine receptor signaling in high-risk acute lymphoblastic leukemia. Cancer Cell. 2012;22(2):153–66.
89. Stocklin E, Wissler M, Gouilleux F, Groner B. Functional interactions between Stat5 and the glucocorticoid receptor. Nature. 1996;383(6602):726–8.
90. Wu SC, Li LS, Kopp N, Montero J, Chapuy B, Yoda A, et al. Activity of the type II JAK2 inhibitor CHZ868 in B cell acute lymphoblastic leukemia. Cancer Cell. 2015;28(1):29–41.

91. Delgado-Martin C, Meyer LK, Huang BJ, Shimano KA, Zinter MS, Nguyen JV, et al. JAK/STAT pathway inhibition overcomes IL7-induced glucocorticoid resistance in a subset of human T-cell acute lymphoblastic leukemias. Leukemia. 2017;31(12):2568–76.
92. Oppermann S, Lam AJ, Tung S, Shi Y, McCaw L, Wang G, et al. Janus and PI3-kinases mediate glucocorticoid resistance in activated chronic leukemia cells. Oncotarget. 2016;7(45):72608–21.
93. Tzoneva G, Ferrando AA. Recent advances on NOTCH signaling in T-ALL. Curr Top Microbiol Immunol. 2012;360:163–82.
94. De Keersmaecker K, Lahortiga I, Mentens N, Folens C, Van Neste L, Bekaert S, et al. In vitro validation of gamma-secretase inhibitors alone or in combination with other anti-cancer drugs for the treatment of T-cell acute lymphoblastic leukemia. Haematologica. 2008;93(4):533–42.
95. Real PJ, Tosello V, Palomero T, Castillo M, Hernando E, de Stanchina E, et al. Gamma-secretase inhibitors reverse glucocorticoid resistance in T cell acute lymphoblastic leukemia. Nat Med. 2009;15(1):50–8.
96. Samon JB, Castillo-Martin M, Hadler M, Ambesi-Impiobato A, Paietta E, Racevskis J, et al. Preclinical analysis of the gamma-secretase inhibitor PF-03084014 in combination with glucocorticoids in T-cell acute lymphoblastic leukemia. Mol Cancer Ther. 2012;11(7):1565–75.
97. Milano J, McKay J, Dagenais C, Foster-Brown L, Pognan F, Gadient R, et al. Modulation of notch processing by gamma-secretase inhibitors causes intestinal goblet cell metaplasia and induction of genes known to specify gut secretory lineage differentiation. Toxicol Sci. 2004;82(1):341–58.
98. Agnusdei V, Minuzzo S, Frasson C, Grassi A, Axelrod F, Satyal S, et al. Therapeutic antibody targeting of Notch1 in T-acute lymphoblastic leukemia xenografts. Leukemia. 2014;28(2):278–88.
99. Palacios EH, Weiss A. Function of the Src-family kinases, Lck and Fyn, in T-cell development and activation. Oncogene. 2004;23(48):7990–8000.
100. Serafin V, Capuzzo G, Milani G, Minuzzo SA, Pinazza M, Bortolozzi R, et al. Glucocorticoid resistance is reverted by LCK inhibition in pediatric T-cell acute lymphoblastic leukemia. Blood. 2017;130(25):2750–61.
101. Harr MW, Caimi PF, McColl KS, Zhong F, Patel SN, Barr PM, et al. Inhibition of Lck enhances glucocorticoid sensitivity and apoptosis in lymphoid cell lines and in chronic lymphocytic leukemia. Cell Death Differ. 2010;17(9):1381–91.
102. Seckl JR. 11beta-hydroxysteroid dehydrogenases: changing glucocorticoid action. Curr Opin Pharmacol. 2004;4(6):597–602.
103. Sai S, Nakagawa Y, Sakaguchi K, Okada S, Takahashi H, Hongo T, et al. Differential regulation of 11beta-hydroxysteroid dehydrogenase-1 by dexamethasone in glucocorticoid-sensitive and -resistant childhood lymphoblastic leukemia. Leuk Res. 2009;33(12):1696–8.
104. Sai S, Nakagawa Y, Yamaguchi R, Suzuki M, Sakaguchi K, Okada S, et al. Expression of 11beta-hydroxysteroid dehydrogenase 2 contributes to glucocorticoid resistance in lymphoblastic leukemia cells. Leuk Res. 2011;35(12):1644–8.
105. Tao Y, Gao L, Wu X, Wang H, Yang G, Zhan F, et al. Down-regulation of 11beta-hydroxysteroid dehydrogenase type 2 by bortezomib sensitizes Jurkat leukemia T cells against glucocorticoid-induced apoptosis. PLoS One. 2013;8(6):e67067.
106. Garbrecht MR, Schmidt TJ. Expression and regulation of 11- beta hydroxysteroid dehydrogenase type 2 enzyme activity in the glucocorticoid-sensitive CEM-C7 human leukemic cell line. ISRN Oncol. 2013;2013:245246.
107. Homma H, Maruyama H, Niitsu Y, Listowsky I. A subclass of glutathione S-transferases as intracellular high-capacity and high-affinity steroid-binding proteins. Biochem J. 1986;235(3):763–8.
108. Anderer G, Schrappe M, Brechlin AM, Lauten M, Muti P, Welte K, et al. Polymorphisms within glutathione S-transferase genes and initial response to glucocorticoids in childhood acute lymphoblastic leukaemia. Pharmacogenetics. 2000;10(8):715–26.

109. Beesley AH, Firth MJ, Ford J, Weller RE, Freitas JR, Perera KU, et al. Glucocorticoid resistance in T-lineage acute lymphoblastic leukaemia is associated with a proliferative metabolism. Br J Cancer. 2009;100(12):1926–36.
110. Samuels AL, Heng JY, Beesley AH, Kees UR. Bioenergetic modulation overcomes glucocorticoid resistance in T-lineage acute lymphoblastic leukaemia. Br J Haematol. 2014;165(1):57–66.
111. Holleman A, Cheok MH, den Boer ML, Yang W, Veerman AJ, Kazemier KM, et al. Gene-expression patterns in drug-resistant acute lymphoblastic leukemia cells and response to treatment. N Engl J Med. 2004;351(6):533–42.
112. Hulleman E, Kazemier KM, Holleman A, Vander Weele DJ, Rudin CM, Broekhuis MJ, et al. Inhibition of glycolysis modulates prednisolone resistance in acute lymphoblastic leukemia cells. Blood. 2009;113(9):2014–21.
113. Buentke E, Nordstrom A, Lin H, Bjorklund AC, Laane E, Harada M, et al. Glucocorticoid-induced cell death is mediated through reduced glucose metabolism in lymphoid leukemia cells. Blood Cancer J. 2011;1(7):e31.
114. Aries IM, Hansen BR, Koch T, van den Dungen R, Evans WE, Pieters R, et al. The synergism of MCL1 and glycolysis on pediatric acute lymphoblastic leukemia cell survival and prednisolone resistance. Haematologica. 2013;98(12):1905–11.
115. Pang YY, Wang T, Chen FY, Wu YL, Shao X, Xiao F, et al. Glycolytic inhibitor 2-deoxy-d-glucose suppresses cell proliferation and enhances methylprednisolone sensitivity in non-Hodgkin lymphoma cells through down-regulation of HIF-1alpha and c-MYC. Leuk Lymphoma. 2015;56(6):1821–30.
116. Chan LN, Chen Z, Braas D, Lee JW, Xiao G, Geng H, et al. Metabolic gatekeeper function of B-lymphoid transcription factors. Nature. 2017;542(7642):479–83.
117. Madden EA, Bishop EJ, Fiskin AM, Melnykovych G. Possible role of cholesterol in the susceptibility of a human acute lymphoblastic leukemia cell line to dexamethasone. Cancer Res. 1986;46(2):617–22.
118. Samuels AL, Beesley AH, Yadav BD, Papa RA, Sutton R, Anderson D, et al. A pre-clinical model of resistance to induction therapy in pediatric acute lymphoblastic leukemia. Blood Cancer J. 2014;4:e232.
119. Lawrie CH. MicroRNAs in hematological malignancies. Blood Rev. 2013;27(3):143–54.
120. Han BW, Feng DD, Li ZG, Luo XQ, Zhang H, Li XJ, et al. A set of miRNAs that involve in the pathways of drug resistance and leukemic stem-cell differentiation is associated with the risk of relapse and glucocorticoid response in childhood ALL. Hum Mol Genet. 2011;20(24):4903–15.
121. Hezaveh K, Kloetgen A, Bernhart SH, Mahapatra KD, Lenze D, Richter J, et al. Alterations of microRNA and microRNA-regulated messenger RNA expression in germinal center B-cell lymphomas determined by integrative sequencing analysis. Haematologica. 2016;101(11):1380–9.
122. Harada M, Pokrovskaja-Tamm K, Soderhall S, Heyman M, Grander D, Corcoran M. Involvement of miR17 pathway in glucocorticoid-induced cell death in pediatric acute lymphoblastic leukemia. Leuk Lymphoma. 2012;53(10):2041–50.
123. Li XJ, Luo XQ, Han BW, Duan FT, Wei PP, Chen YQ. MicroRNA-100/99a, deregulated in acute lymphoblastic leukaemia, suppress proliferation and promote apoptosis by regulating the FKBP51 and IGF1R/mTOR signalling pathways. Br J Cancer. 2013;109(8):2189–98.
124. Ledderose C, Mohnle P, Limbeck E, Schutz S, Weis F, Rink J, et al. Corticosteroid resistance in sepsis is influenced by microRNA-124—induced downregulation of glucocorticoid receptor-alpha. Crit Care Med. 2012;40(10):2745–53.
125. Liang YN, Tang YL, Ke ZY, Chen YQ, Luo XQ, Zhang H, et al. MiR-124 contributes to glucocorticoid resistance in acute lymphoblastic leukemia by promoting proliferation, inhibiting apoptosis and targeting the glucocorticoid receptor. J Steroid Biochem Mol Biol. 2017;172:62–8.

126. Kim J, Jeong D, Nam J, Aung TN, Gim JA, Park KU, et al. MicroRNA-124 regulates glucocorticoid sensitivity by targeting phosphodiesterase 4B in diffuse large B cell lymphoma. Gene. 2015;558(1):173–80.
127. Kotani A, Ha D, Hsieh J, Rao PK, Schotte D, den Boer ML, et al. miR-128b is a potent glucocorticoid sensitizer in MLL-AF4 acute lymphocytic leukemia cells and exerts cooperative effects with miR-221. Blood. 2009;114(19):4169–78.
128. Kotani A, Ha D, Schotte D, den Boer ML, Armstrong SA, Lodish HF. A novel mutation in the miR-128b gene reduces miRNA processing and leads to glucocorticoid resistance of MLL-AF4 acute lymphocytic leukemia cells. Cell Cycle. 2010;9(6):1037–42.
129. Huang B, Zhao J, Lei Z, Shen S, Li D, Shen GX, et al. miR-142-3p restricts cAMP production in CD4+CD25- T cells and CD4+CD25+ TREG cells by targeting AC9 mRNA. EMBO Rep. 2009;10(2):180–5.
130. Lv M, Zhang X, Jia H, Li D, Zhang B, Zhang H, et al. An oncogenic role of miR-142-3p in human T-cell acute lymphoblastic leukemia (T-ALL) by targeting glucocorticoid receptor-alpha and cAMP/PKA pathways. Leukemia. 2012;26(4):769–77.
131. Yang A, Ma J, Wu M, Qin W, Zhao B, Shi Y, et al. Aberrant microRNA-182 expression is associated with glucocorticoid resistance in lymphoblastic malignancies. Leuk Lymphoma. 2012;53(12):2465–73.
132. Chen P, Shen T, Wang H, Ke Z, Liang Y, Ouyang J, et al. MicroRNA-185-5p restores glucocorticoid sensitivity by suppressing the mammalian target of rapamycin complex (mTORC) signaling pathway to enhance glucocorticoid receptor autoregulation. Leuk Lymphoma. 2017:1–11.

Chapter 2
Resistance to Monoclonal Antibody Therapeutics in Lymphoma

Matthew J. Barth and Stanton C. Goldman

Abstract With the long history of rituximab use in CD20 positive lymphomas and the recent approval of brentuximab vedotin for the treatment of Hodgkin lymphoma and anaplastic large cell lymphoma, monoclonal antibody-based therapies are commonly utilized for the treatment of many lymphomas. Following decades of experience with rituximab, much has been learned about the mechanisms of action and potential mechanisms of resistance to monoclonal antibody therapies, but a thorough understanding of which mechanisms of action are most relevant to rituximab's efficacy and which resistance mechanisms are most clinically relevant is still elusive. Nonetheless, many approaches have been identified and continue to be investigated both pre-clinically and clinically to attempt to overcome or circumvent resistance to monoclonal antibody therapies in order to enhance treatment responses or improve survival at the time of relapse following monoclonal antibody based therapy.

Keywords Monoclonal antibody · Antibody drug conjugate · Non-Hodgkin lymphoma · Hodgkin lymphoma · Resistance

M. J. Barth (✉)
Division of Pediatric Hematology/Oncology, Jacobs School of Medicine and Biomedical Sciences, University at Buffalo, Buffalo, NY, USA

Department of Pediatrics, Roswell Park Comprehensive Cancer Center, Buffalo, NY, USA
e-mail: Matthew.Barth@RoswellPark.org

S. C. Goldman
Division of Pediatric Hematology/Oncology, Medical City Children's Hospital, Dallas, TX, USA
e-mail: Stan.Goldman@usoncology.com

A. C. Xavier, M. S. Cairo (eds.), *Resistance to Targeted Therapies in Lymphomas*, Resistance to Targeted Anti-Cancer Therapeutics 21,
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-24424-8_2

Abbreviations

ADCC	Antibody-Dependent Cellular Cytotoxicity
ADPC	Antibody-Dependent Phagocytic Cytotoxicity
AKT	Protein Kinase B
ALCL	Anaplastic Large Cell Lymphoma
ALL	Acute Lymphoblastic Leukemia
B-NHL	B-cell Non-Hodgkin Lymphoma
BiTE	Bispecific T-cell Engaging
CDC	Complement Dependent Cytotoxicity
CLL	Chronic Lymphocytic Leukemia
DLBCL	Diffuse Large B-Cell Lymphoma
EFS	Event-Free Survival
ERK1/2	Extracellular signal Related Kinase 1 and 2
GM-CSF	Granulocyte-Macrophage Colony Stimulating Factor
HACA	Human Anti-Chimera Antibodies
IFN-γ	Interferon Gamma
IL-2	Interleukin 2
IL-4	Interleukin 4
MAPK	Mitogen Activated Protein Kinase
MMAE	Monomethyl Aurostatin E
MS4A1	Membrane Spanning 4-Domain A1
NADPH	Nicotinamide Adenine Dinucleotide Phosphate
NK-κB	Nuclear Factor Kappa B
NK-cell	Natural Killer Cells
PCD	Programmed Cell Death
PLCγ2	Phospholipase C Gamma 2
RIC	Radioimmunoconjugate
ROS	Reactive Oxygen Species
STAT3	Signal Transducer and Activator of Transcription 3
SYK	Spleen Associated Tyrosine Kinase
TNF-α	Tumor Necrosis Factor alpha

Introduction

The addition of monoclonal antibody therapy to the treatment of lymphoma has revolutionized its therapy over the past 2 decades. The proof of principle of monoclonal antibody therapies has been the addition of the anti-CD20 monoclonal antibody, rituximab, to therapy regimens for CD20 expressing mature B-cell lymphomas. The introduction of rituximab to the best backbone chemotherapy regimens for B-cell non-Hodgkin lymphoma (B-NHL) has improved event free survival (EFS) in high grade B-NHL. Well conducted randomized phase 3 studies have shown an approximately 15–20% absolute improvement in EFS (*vs*. chemotherapy alone) in

favor of rituximab in elderly patients with diffuse large B-cell lymphoma (DLBCL), younger patients with DLBCL and more recently adults with Burkitt lymphoma [1–3]. Until recently it was unknown whether the same would be true for pediatric mature B-NHL where the multiagent chemotherapy results alone were already greater than 80% survival. A recent international study in advanced pediatric Burkitt and DLBCL was halted early after the rituximab arm demonstrated a superior 1-year EFS (94%) compared to identical chemotherapy backbone alone (81%) [4]. Thus, rituximab (+ disease specific chemotherapy) is now considered standard of care in pediatric and adult patients with aggressive mature B-NHL.

While the success of rituximab is well documented, resistance to monoclonal antibody therapy has also been well described with multiple possible mechanisms of resistance reported. Numerous next generation monoclonal antibodies have been developed in an attempt to improve upon rituximab and circumvent mechanisms of resistance with varying degrees of success. Additionally, monoclonal antibodies modified to enhance interaction with host immune cells or conjugated to toxins or radiotherapeutic agents have been developed as an alternative approach to the use of naked monoclonal antibody therapies in the treatment of lymphoma. In this chapter, we will highlight resistance to monoclonal antibody therapies, focusing primarily on rituximab as the predominant monoclonal antibody utilized in the treatment of lymphoma, and the development of alternative approaches to overcome described mechanisms of resistance.

Resistance to Monoclonal Antibody Therapy in the Clinic

The efficacy of rituximab in treating B-NHL was first established in the setting of relapsed low-grade B-NHL where 4 weekly doses of rituximab single agent therapy led to responses in approximately 50% of patients in initial trials [5–8]. In patients with relapsed or refractory aggressive B-NHL variants, 8 weekly doses of rituximab led to responses in about 30% of patients [9]. In the setting of aggressive disease, patients with primary refractory disease, non-large cell variants and more bulky disease tended to be less likely to respond to single agent rituximab [9]. In low grade lymphoma patients having previously responded to rituximab, responses were noted in 40% of patients upon retreatment with single agent rituximab [10, 11]. These initial trials highlighted a failure to respond in more than half of relapsed patients treated with rituximab upon initial single agent treatment with more than half of initial responders developing resistance upon re-treatment. As an initial therapy for low grade B-NHL, rituximab induced a slightly higher response rate of greater than 60% as a single agent [12]. Rituximab also demonstrated the ability to sensitize lymphoma cells to the effects of cytotoxic chemotherapy and thus was subsequently combined with chemotherapy for treating both newly diagnosed and relapsed/refractory lymphoma patients. The combination of chemotherapy and immunotherapy with rituximab was initially investigated in the R-CHOP regimen (rituximab, cyclophosphamide, doxorubicin, vincristine and prednisone) with 95% of patients

with low grade B-NHL achieving a response [13, 14]. In the setting of aggressive B-NHL, similar response rates were noted [15]. Rituximab has subsequently been combined with a variety of chemotherapy regimens in both indolent and aggressive B-NHL and has become standard of care in the treatment of CD20-positive B-NHL. However, with the introduction of rituximab to front-line therapy for B-NHL, a new phenomenon of resistance has been noted in the relapse setting. A large Phase 3 study of relapsed DLBCL, the CORAL study, highlighted the development of resistance following treatment with rituximab containing regimens with patients having previously been treated with rituximab exhibiting an inferior survival upon treatment with rituximab containing salvage therapy compared to patients not having previously received a rituximab containing regimen [16]. The degree of contribution of rituximab to resistance is difficult to assess since current treatment essentially universally combines rituximab with chemotherapy. However, resistance has been noted both upon initial exposure and upon re-exposure to rituximab heightening interest in the mechanisms of resistance to monoclonal antibody therapies and the development of new immunotherapeutic agents able to overcome resistance.

Antibodies to Rituximab are Unlikely to Play a Role in Resistance

Monoclonal antibodies are large antigenic proteins and can theoretically be ineffective because of the formation of anti-antibodies, especially with repeated exposure. In addition, the less fully humanized antibodies are at higher risk of inducing an antibody response from the host. On the other hand, rituximab is a powerful humoral immunosuppressant with prolonged reduction of mature non-malignant B-cells and serum immunoglobulins. During our studies of the first trial of rituximab plus aggressive multi-agent chemotherapy in children and adolescents with *de novo* mature B-NHL, we could not demonstrate any formation of human anti-rituximab (HACA) antibodies [17]. In addition, by using a dose dense approach, we were able to demonstrate very high serum rituximab levels with t ½ of 26–29 days. Thus, reduced serum levels of antibody, through anti-antibody formation (or other mechanisms), is unlikely to play a role in resistance.

Mechanisms of Monoclonal Antibody Activity

To understand the mechanisms of resistance to monoclonal antibody therapy, one needs to initially understand the varying potential mechanisms of activity of monoclonal antibodies. Monoclonal antibodies can function to kill tumor cells through a variety of mechanisms. These primarily include antibody-dependent cellular

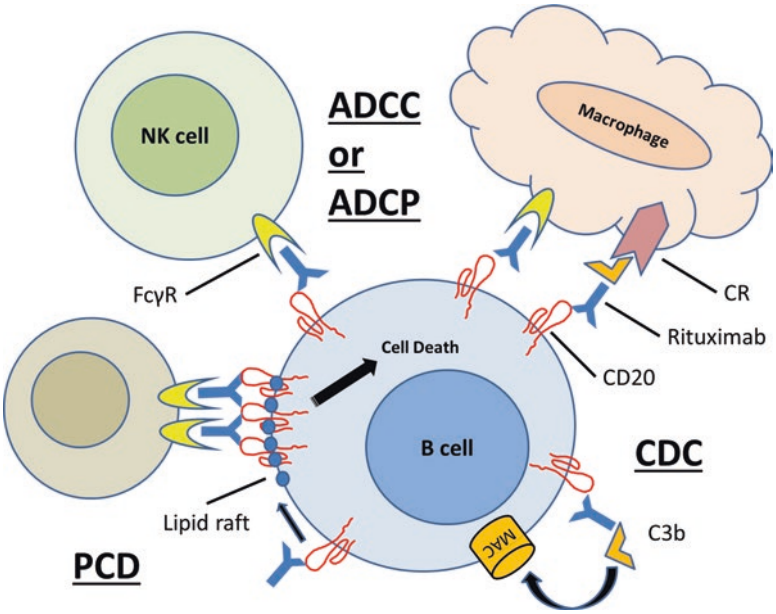


Fig. 2.1 Mechanisms of rituximab activity. Rituximab binding to surface CD20 leads to lymphoma cell death through several reported mechanisms. (1) Binding of rituximab leads to the activation of complement leading to the formation of the membrane attack complex (MAC) resulting in cell lysis. (2) Binding of the Fc portion of rituximab by Fcγ receptors (FcγR) or rituximab bound complement C3b by complement receptors (CR) on effector cells leads to cell killing by antibody dependent cellular cytotoxicity (ADCC) or phagocytosis (ADCP). (3) Binding of rituximab to CD20 leads to mobilization to lipid raft domains where crosslinking of CD20 bound rituximab leads to intracellular signaling and induction of apoptosis

cytotoxicity (ADCC) or phagocytic cytotoxicity (ADCP), complement dependent cytotoxicity (CDC) and direct induction of programmed cell death (PCD) (Fig. 2.1) [18–20]. Additionally, monoclonal antibodies can function to sensitize tumor cells to the effect of cytotoxic chemotherapy exhibiting synergistic activity in combination immunochemotherapy regimens [21]. The most relevant mechanism of action of an individual anti-CD20 antibody can largely be defined by whether the antibody is a type I antibody (e.g. rituximab) or a type II antibody (e.g. tositumomab, obinutuzumab). Type I anti-CD20 antibodies can localize CD20 into membrane lipid raft domains effectively activating complement and altering signal transduction through co-localization of receptors and effectors; while type II antibodies do not induce lipid raft localization and generally induce limited CDC, but more robust induction of PCD [22, 23].

ADCC/ADCP relies on the binding of the Fc fragment of the monoclonal antibody to receptors on surrounding immune effector cells [natural killer (NK) cells, monocyte/macrophages and neutrophils] inducing tumor cell death through triggering the immune effector cells to bind and kill the tumor. The role of ADCC on rituximab *in vivo* activity has been demonstrated by impaired activity in NK-cell

and neutrophil depleted mice and Fc receptor dependent activity [24, 25]. CDC relies on activation of the complement cascade through binding of the protein C1q to the Fc portion of the antibody leading to development of a membrane attack complex leading to cell lysis. The dependence on complement for activity has been demonstrated by a lack of rituximab activity in mice deficient in C1q or with complement depleted by exposure to cobra venom factor, though others have also demonstrated that deficiency of complement proteins had little impact on rituximab activity suggesting that Fc-receptor dependent ADCC activity was more critical to rituximab activity *in vivo* [25, 26]. Additionally, some have suggested that complement activation may impair other antibody mediated mechanisms of cell killing like ADCC [27]. This detrimental effect of complement activation has also been suggested in relation to an increase in progression free survival noted in follicular lymphoma and DLBCL patients with mutations in the gene encoding C1q that are known to cause lower C1q expression [28, 29].

While the direct induction of PCD by monoclonal antibodies has been demonstrated *in vitro*, the mechanism of such an effect *in vivo* has been difficult to demonstrate so that less is understood about the exact mechanism of antibody induction of cell death. The mechanism of induction of cell death also likely varies between antibody types with type I and type II anti-CD20 monoclonal antibodies demonstrating varying mechanisms. Rituximab binding to CD20 on the surface of malignant B-cells has been shown to induce a caspase-dependent apoptosis through activation of caspases 3 and 9 leading to PARP cleavage with these effects being inhibited by exposure to caspase inhibitors and enhanced by cross linking of CD20 bound rituximab molecules [30–32]. While this suggests a caspase-dependent mechanism of cell death induction, others have reported cell death associated with rituximab binding that is independent of caspase activation and resistant to caspase inhibition [33]. Apoptosis induction may also be dependent on altered calcium transport leading to increased intracellular calcium following rituximab exposure with calcium chelators inhibiting the apoptosis induced by rituximab [31, 32]. The cellular function of membrane bound CD20 is likely to be a calcium channel critical to B-cell signaling. This shift in intracellular calcium after rituximab binding to CD20 has been shown to be secondary to activation of Src-family protein tyrosine kinases leading to phosphorylation of phospholipase C gamma 2 (PLCγ2) [34]. Additional intracellular signaling effects reported following rituximab binding have been noted on the mitogen activated protein kinase (MAPK), extracellular signal related kinase 1 and 2 (ERK1/2), signal transducer and activator of transcription 3 (STAT3) and nuclear factor kappa B (NF-κB) signaling pathways [35–38]. Rituximab binding has also been shown to alter expression of Bcl-2 family member proteins and other inhibitors of apoptosis proteins. Chemosensitization observed following rituximab exposure may in large part be due to the documented ability of rituximab to overcome Bcl-2 associated resistance following chemotherapy exposure [30, 39]. Some have also theorized that debris from apoptotic cells can have a "vaccination effect" leading to expansion of lymphoma specific cytotoxic T lymphocytes [40]. This effect has been demonstrated in mice where tumor re-challenge in mice previously treated with an anti-CD20 antibody led to impaired engraftment

Table 2.1 Mechanisms of resistance to monoclonal antibody therapy and approaches to overcoming resistance

Mechanisms of activity	Mechanisms of resistance	Approaches to circumventing resistance
CDC	Complement depletion [49, 71, 72]	Next generation mAbs with enhanced CDC activity [82–84]
	Complement variants [26]	Enhanced hexamer foundation [99]
	Complement inhibitory proteins [73–79]	Complement replacement [71, 72]
ADCC	FcγR polymorphisms [102, 103, 105, 108, 110, 111, 113, 118]	Next generation mAbs with enhanced FcR affinity [121–129]
	Inhibitory FcγR expression [100, 119, 120]	
PCD/ Apoptosis	Altered Bcl-2 protein expression/ intracellular signaling [146, 147]	Type II antibodies with enhanced cell death induction [21, 124, 128, 150, 151]
Antigen binding	Antigen variants [46, 52, 53]	Increase CD20 expression using epigenetic modulating agents or cytokines [19, 59–64, 67, 68]
	Antigen shedding [48, 49]	Type II monoclonal antibodies [51]
	Antigen internalization [50]	Dose dense dosing [17, 143–145]
	Circulating antigen [138–142]	
ADC	Drug transporter mediated efflux [158]	Alternative anti-neoplastic conjugates [160]

CDC, complement dependent cytotoxicity; ADCC, antibody dependent cellular cytotoxicity; PCD, programmed cell death; ADC, antibody-drug conjugate; mAB, monoclonal antibody

and the identification of macrophage-associated ADCC leading to dendritic cell uptake of immune complexes inducing anti-tumor adaptive responses [41–43].

The exact role and contribution of each mechanism of activity to the efficacy of monoclonal antibody therapies is still not clearly understood and is likely disease- and antibody-dependent. Each of these mechanisms of activity has also been associated with proposed mechanisms of resistance (Table 2.1).

Mechanisms of Monoclonal Antibody Resistance

Antigenic Alterations Leading to Resistance

For a monoclonal antibody to exert its effect, it needs to first bind to its target antigen. The level of expression or mutations in the surface antigen to which an antibody is targeted can impact the activity of the monoclonal antibody. One of the characteristics of CD20 that was believed to make it an ideal antigen for antibody targeting was a reported lack of internalization or shedding of the protein [18]. Despite this, early in the investigation of rituximab, reports began emerging

describing the loss of CD20 expression in patients with relapsed B-NHL following exposure to anti-CD20 monoclonal antibody therapy [44–47]. Though the relative incidence of CD20 loss after rituximab exposure in the clinic has generally been believed to be low, investigation of alterations of CD20 expression levels in rituximab resistant cells has indicated a possible role of this phenomenon in rituximab resistance.

In rituximab-resistant B-NHL cell lines developed by serial exposure of cell lines in culture to rituximab, decreased CD20 expression has been described in the resultant resistant cells reported to be due to transcriptional and post-transcriptional mechanisms [48]. Alternative splicing of CD20 mRNA may also impact rituximab response with an alternatively spliced, truncated version of the CD20 protein reported in B-lymphocytes that were either malignant or EBV transformed, but not present in non-transformed B-cells [49]. The variant CD20 was noted to increase in expression in rituximab-resistant cell lines developed by exposure to rituximab in vitro and also in primary patient cells following exposure to rituximab suggesting a role in development of rituximab resistance.

CD20 expression may also be altered after rituximab exposure secondary to antigenic modulation or "shaving". Beum *et al*. described a so called "shaving effect" leading to loss of CD20 expression on malignant B-cells [50]. The described effect was reported both clinically, with reported rapid loss of CD20 and rituximab from B-cells without internalization, and in an experimental system where rituximab-CD20 complexes were noted to be removed from B-cells and taken up by monocytes in co-culture [51, 50]. Some reports have also suggested that, contrary to earlier data, CD20 may be internalized following rituximab binding. Beers *et al*. demonstrated using fluorescently labeled rituximab that internalization of the rituximab-CD20 complex occurred following rituximab exposure with trafficking of rituximab-CD20 complexes noted to endosomes and lysosomes in B-cells [52]. Variability in the internalization of CD20 was noted with different types of monoclonal antibodies with the Type I rituximab antibody leading to internalization while a Type II tositumumab-like antibody did not, highlighting potential differences in the mechanism of action and resistance to different antibody constructs [52]. Utilization of a Type II antibody, like the humanized, glycoengineered Type II anti-CD20 monoclonal antibody obinutuzumab may thus allow for activity without significant modulation from internalization, though recent studies have also reported on the "shaving phenomenon" occurring with obinutuzumab as an alternate mechanism for resistance in the absence of antigenic modulation [53].

In addition to antibody associated effects leading to altered expression of the CD20 antigen on the B-cell surface, others have reported on mutations in the gene encoding CD20 that may impair response to rituximab [54, 55]. For example, Turui *et al*. performed a mutation analysis of CD20 in 50 patients treated for a variety of NHL types including 9 patients with progressive disease [55]. They found that 11 patients (22%) had a mutation in CD20 and that those with a C-terminal deletion mutation had a significantly lower expression of CD20 compared to patients without a mutation or those with mutations defined as early termination or extracellular domain. Notably 4 of the 5 C-terminal deletions occurred in samples from patients

with progressive disease. Cells transfected with the C-terminal deletion mutated CD20 expressed similar CD20 RNA, but did not express CD20 on the cell surface with only weak cytoplasmic staining noted. These C-terminal mutations were subsequently reported to affect the extracellular large loop of the CD20 antigen also impacting the rituximab binding site [56]. Another relapse case was noted to have a homozygous deletion of the membrane spanning 4-domains A1 (MS4A1) gene, the gene encoding CD20, at relapse leading to loss of CD20 [57]. While these mutations have been reported, a larger analysis of DLBCL patients identified that such mutations occur at very low rates (0.4% of 264 newly diagnosed and 6% of 15 relapsed DLBCL patients analyzed) and may not significantly contribute to resistance except in a small percentage of cases [58].

Epigenetic regulation of the gene encoding CD20 has also been implicated in changes in CD20 surface antigen expression and thus possibly also related to rituximab resistance [59, 60]. Tomia *et al.* reported on a case of CD20 negative relapsed DLBCL after rituximab exposure with increased CD20 expression following exposure to the epigenetic modifier Trichostatin A [59]. A further analysis of mechanisms of epigenetic regulation of decreased CD20 expression identified the role of the Sin3A-HDAC1 co-repressor complex in downregulating transcription of MS4A1 with expression of CD20 increased following exposure to the histone deacetylase inhibitor Trichostatin A [60]. Similarly, numerous epigenetic modifying agents have been identified that can alter CD20 protein expression and augment the activity of rituximab through their effects on DNA methylation, DNA acetylation or the recruitment of transcription factors leading to altered CD20 expression [61–66]. The potential clinical impact of epigenetic modifiers has also been investigated in combination with rituximab containing regimens with some promising early findings [67, 68]. Alternative mechanisms of increasing CD20 expression have been reported using a variety of cytokines including granulocyte-macrophage colony stimulating factor (GM-CSF), tumor necrosis factor alpha (TNF-α), interferon gamma (IFN-γ), IL-4 and IL-2 suggesting possible roles of combination therapies involving cytokine based therapies to increase CD20 expression prior to rituximab therapy [69, 70, 21]. An additional approach to enhance targeting of tumor cells using monoclonal antibodies is the use of multivalent antibodies targeting multiple antigens on a tumor cell or having multiple binding sites for a single antigen. Examples include an antiCD20/CD22 bivalent antibody which has demonstrated enhanced in vitro and in vivo cell killing compared to the individual antibodies or a combination of the two single antibodies [71]. A combination of a type 1 and a type 2 CD20 antibody into one bivalent antibody also exhibited enhanced CDC and direct killing [72]. In addition to approaches intended to enhance expression of CD20 to improve response to rituximab, antibodies targeting alternative lymphoma associated cell surface antigen targets continue to be developed for use in the setting of rituximab resistance or CD20 negative relapsed disease including, for example, monoclonal antibodies targeting CD19, CD22, CD79b, CD80 and CD40 with varying degrees of activity [73–78].

Complement Mediated Resistance

Binding of monoclonal antibodies to surface proteins can induce CDC via interactions of the Fc portion of the antibody with complement proteins. In chronic lymphocytic leukemia (CLL), a rapid depletion of complement proteins has been observed which may represent a limitation of rituximab activity [51]. This possible source of resistance was further supported by evidence that infusing rituximab with complement containing fresh frozen plasma may enhance rituximab activity [79, 80]. Polymorphisms in genes encoding C1q have also been reported to impact rituximab activity in patients with follicular lymphoma also highlighting the potential important role of CDC in rituximab activity, especially when given without chemotherapy [28].

Tumor cells can also inhibit CDC killing through the expression of complement inhibitory proteins CD46, CD55 and CD59 with altered expression of complement inhibitory proteins identified as a possible mechanism of resistance to monoclonal antibody therapies [81]. B-NHL cells resistant to rituximab, including tumor cell lines and primary patient cells, have been shown to exhibit increased expression of CD55 and CD59 leading to impaired CDC activity of anti-CD20 monoclonal antibodies [82–85]. The effect of complement inhibitory proteins on the CDC activity of rituximab has been demonstrated through increased rituximab associated CDC following inhibition of CD55 or CD59 [84, 81, 86, 87]. Despite this in vitro evidence of the detrimental effect of high complement inhibitory protein expression on rituximab activity, clinical investigation of the effect of high complement inhibitory protein expression on treatment response to rituximab has been conflicting with some analysis suggesting higher levels of CD55 and CD59 in non-responders while others suggest no impact of varying levels of CD46, CD55 or CD59 on likelihood of response to rituximab [88, 89].

Novel monoclonal antibodies have been developed which exhibit enhanced CDC activity in comparison to rituximab [90]. CDC activity has been linked to the proximity of antibody binding to the cell membrane and is dependent on redistribution of the antigen target into lipid soluble rafts within the cell membrane, an effect predominantly observed with Type I antibodies [91, 90]. The fully human type I anti-CD20 monoclonal antibody ofatumumab binds to a unique, more membrane-proximal epitope of the CD20 antigen compared to rituximab and has a slower off-rate while effectively inducing CD20 redistribution to lipid rafts [90, 92]. Likely secondary to these characteristics, ofatumumab has demonstrated enhanced CDC activity in comparison to rituximab including in the setting of rituximab resistance and high levels of CD55 and CD59 expression [90, 83, 93–95]. Clinically, ofatumumab has induced a high rate of responses, particularly in CLL alone or in combination with chemotherapy, and has received FDA approval for first line and refractory CLL alone and with various alkylator combinations. [96–100]. Ofatumumab demonstrated limited efficacy in aggressive B-NHL, where no significant benefit was observed over rituximab, though some responses have been noted

in rituximab resistant disease. This highlights that CDC may play a larger role in certain B-cell malignancies (like CLL) compared to others [101–105].

An alternative approach to enhancing monoclonal antibody associated CDC relates to the formation of antibody hexamers in order to activate complement effectively. This recently described hexamer formation of anti-CD20 antibodies increases C1q binding and enhances CDC activity [106]. Polymorphisms in the Fc portion of an antibody have been identified that enhance hexamer formation and thus increase CDC activity of the antibody. Introducing such polymorphisms into rituximab was shown to increase CDC in CLL samples and was also even shown to increase CDC induced by type II anti-CD20 monoclonal antibodies [107]. This represents another potential approach to overcoming resistance to CDC activity.

Fcγ Receptor Associated Resistance

Much of the function of rituximab and other monoclonal antibodies is dependent on the interaction of the Fc portion of the antibody with Fcγ receptors (FcγR), in particular FcγRIIIa and FcγRIIa receptors on myeloid effector cells [108, 25, 109]. FcγR deficiency in mice abrogates the activity of monoclonal antibody therapies providing evidence for their crucial role in monoclonal antibody activity [108]. Polymorphisms in FcγR leading to altered affinity for Fc binding have been noted to impact the efficacy of rituximab in vitro and in vivo. In particular, the 158F variant of FcγRIIIa has been noted to impair responsiveness to rituximab compared to the 158V variant which has a higher affinity for binding IgG1 antibodies [110]. In patients with previously untreated follicular lymphoma treated with rituximab, response rates were significantly higher in patients homozygous for the FcγRIIIa 158V variant compared to 158F carriers [111]. However, subsequent analysis in a variety of tumor types have provided conflicting results in particular in patients treated with rituximab in combination with chemotherapy [112–122]. There may also be an effect on toxicity associated with rituximab exposure as the high affinity FcγRIIIa 158V polymorphism has recently been associated with increased rates of late onset neutropenia following rituximab therapy [123–125]. Polymorphisms in FcγRIIa have also been implicated in response to rituximab, in particular the FcγRIIa H131R polymorphism which has been associated with improved response in tumors with a higher affinity H/H genotype, though similar to the FcγRIIIa polymorphisms, the impact on clinical outcome has been mixed with no impact noted in most recent studies of rituximab in combination with chemotherapy [121, 119, 118, 126, 116, 113].

Additionally, the expression of other inhibitory FcγR, such as FcγRIIb, may impair response upon binding of effector macrophages [108]. This has been demonstrated in transgenic mice lacking the FcγRII inhibitory receptor, in which tumors tend to be more responsive to monoclonal antibody therapies [108]. FcγRIIb has also been reported to interact with rituximab bound to CD20 to form a complex that promotes internalization of the rituximab-CD20 complex impairing Fc-dependent

functions and overall antibody efficacy [127, 52]. The clinical effect of high FcγRIIb has also been described in follicular lymphoma patients receiving rituximab monotherapy where patients with high FcγRIIb expression exhibited lower EFS [128].

With variability in FcγR binding affinity playing a potential role in response to rituximab, novel monoclonal antibodies have been developed with alterations aimed at enhancing Fc receptor affinity. Alterations to the Fc portion of monoclonal antibodies have improved affinity for lower affinity FcγRs leading to improved ADCC activity. Afucosylation (manipulation of the oligosaccharides to remove fucose) of the Fc portion of antibodies was shown to decrease steric hindrance that likely inhibited FcγR binding leading to enhanced receptor affinity and increased ADCC [129–131].

Obinutuzumab is the prime example of a third generation type II, humanized, glycoengineered anti-CD20 monoclonal antibody. Obinutuzumab has been shown to exhibit enhanced pre-clinical activity compared to rituximab both from enhanced ADCC and from enhanced direct cell killing typical of type II antibodies [132–137]. Despite this promise related to pre-clinical activity, the clinical development of obinutuzumab has led to variable results. In CLL, as a single agent, obinutuzumab induced a rapid decrease in circulating CD20 positive cells associated with a significant rate of infusion related reactions secondary to cytokine release [138]. In combination with chlorambucil in newly diagnosed CLL patients with coexisting conditions, obinutuzumab demonstrated high response rates and progression free survival compared to chlorambucil monotherapy or the combination with rituximab [139]. In patients with relapsed/refractory indolent NHL, obinutuzumab monotherapy induced responses in 62% of patients during a phase 1 dose escalation and 30% in the phase 2 portion of the trial including responses in patients having previously received rituximab [140]. The best overall response rate of all patients also seemed to be higher than that reported with ofatumumab as monotherapy in a similar population. A subsequent randomized study of obinutuzumab in comparison with rituximab reported a similar response rate of 44.6% in obinutuzumab treated patients compared to 26.7% with rituximab, as determined by a blinded review panel [138]. However, despite the apparent benefit in response, obinutuzumab did not lead to an improvement in progression free survival [138]. Due to an observed dose response effect with obinutuzumab, a randomized trial of 1000mg vs 2000mg was performed which seemed to confirm a higher response rate with increased dosing (67% vs 49%) in previously untreated CLL patients [141]. In patients with relapsed indolent NHL following prior rituximab containing therapy, obinutuzumab was randomly studied in combination with bendamustine compared to bendamustine alone with obinutuzumab maintenance given in patients responding to the combination. While the end of induction response rate was no different between the two arms, the obinutuzumab/bendamustine group experienced less events and had a prolonged progression free survival compared to bendamustine alone [142]. In DLBCL, obinutuzumab monotherapy resulted in responses in 32% of patients, a rate that is similar to responses to rituximab in rituximab naïve relapsed DLBCL patients, with 20% of 25 rituximab-refractory patients achieving a response and a suggestion of increased

responses in a higher dose group [143]. In newly diagnosed DLBCL patients, obinutuzumab/CHOP was compared to rituximab/CHOP with no difference in EFS noted [144]. Obinutuzumab has gained regulatory approval in the United States for treatment of newly diagnosed CLL in combination with chlorambucil and in combination with bendamustine followed by obinutuzumab monotherapy in patients with follicular lymphoma relapsed after a rituximab containing regimen. However, the results in aggressive NHL variants have been inconsistent and continue to be evaluated with no current indication for aggressive B-NHL to date.

Circulating Antigen

Many cell surface antigens can also be identified in circulation. These circulating CD20 (cCD20) antigens have been identified in patients with CLL, Hodgkin lymphoma and NHL in addition to healthy controls [145–147]. Patients with B-NHL had significantly higher levels of cCD20 compared to normal controls [146]. In CLL, high levels of cCD20 have been correlated with disease stage and inversely correlated with overall survival [148]. It has been suggested that high levels of cCD20 may complex with therapeutic monoclonal antibodies leading to enhanced clearance, a mechanism suggested to contribute to the impaired efficacy of rituximab in CLL [149]. A more recent report also suggested a role of cCD20 in clinical outcomes in B-NHL with patients with high cCD20 levels prior to receiving therapy and those with higher cCD20 after therapy having a significantly lower probability of survival [146]. Serum rituximab concentration has been correlated to response in some studies with patients achieving higher concentrations being more likely to respond and patients with higher disease burden generally attaining less ideal rituximab levels [150–152, 17]. Binding of rituximab to cCD20 may hinder it's binding to B-cell associated CD20 and possibly increase clearance leading to decreased rituximab concentrations which may be able to be overcome by increased rituximab dose intensity.

Resistance to Apoptosis

As previously discussed, binding of monoclonal antibodies to surface antigens can induce intracellular signals leading to induction of apoptosis without the need of third party effector cells or complement activation. Alterations in the signaling pathways leading to apoptosis can thus lead to impaired ability of antibody to induce this effect. Multiple groups have generated NHL cell lines resistant to rituximab following serial exposure to the antibody and have demonstrated that alterations in pro- and anti-apoptotic regulators of apoptosis likely contribute to the development of resistance [153, 154]. While rituximab has demonstrated the ability to induce apoptosis, the importance of this effect on lymphoma cell death is unclear.

Type II anti-CD20 monoclonal antibodies on the other hand have demonstrated a more significant induction of cell death when compared to rituximab. In experiments assessing the cell killing effect of Type I *vs.* Type II antibodies, $F(ab')_2$ fragments of Type II antibodies were able to induce significant cell death independent of Fc dependent mechanisms as opposed to the Type I antibody which required the Fc fragment to induce cell death primarily through complement activation [23]. Type II antibodies have been developed in order to improve on the cell death induction observed with rituximab. Obinutuzumab has also demonstrated significantly more induction of cell death than rituximab *in vitro* [132]. While as previously discussed, obinutuzumab has enhanced ADCC activity secondary to a glycoengineered Fc segment increasing FcR binding affinity, the same antibody without the glycoengineering still maintained superior cell killing compared to rituximab highlighting the increased induction of PCD by this type II antibody [155]. Obinutuzumab, similar to a previously developed Type II antibody tositumomab, induces a caspase independent cell death that correlates with high levels of homotypic adhesion not observed with rituximab, possibly indicating enhanced signaling effect [22, 133]. This caspase-independent cell death has also been identified to occur through the generation of reactive oxygen species (ROS) mediated by nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide phosphate (NADPH) oxidase independent of mitochondria and can be blocked by exposure to an ROS scavenger [156]. Though additional signaling effects of obinutuzumab compared to rituximab that may be related to an increased induction of cell death and possible chemosensitization continue to be investigated, there do appear to be differences in signaling effects compared to rituximab in cells that are either rituximab-sensitive or rituximab-resistant with more significant effects noted on activation of protein kinase B (AKT), spleen-associated tyrosine kinase (SYK) and PLCγ2 following obinutuzumab exposure *in vitro* [157, 158].

Alternative Antibody Mediated Therapeutics

In addition to the use of naked monoclonal antibodies, other immunotherapy approaches utilize antibody-based approaches to direct therapy. Antibody drug conjugates (ADCs) or radioimmunoconjugates (RIC) utilize an antigen targeting antibody to deliver a drug or radioactive molecule that is covalently bound to the antibody to tumor cells in a targeted fashion. RICs have been thoroughly investigated in B-NHL and have earned regulatory approval for some limited treatment indications including indolent lymphomas relapsed after rituximab therapy (I^{131}-tositumomab and ibritumomab tiuxetan) or newly diagnosed follicular lymphoma following a response to initial therapy (ibritumomab tiuxetan).

In addition to these radioimmunoconjugates, other antibody drug conjugates have been evaluated in lymphoma. The most established is Brentuximab vedotin, an ADC targeting CD30 conjugated with monomethyl auristatin E (MMAE), a potent microtubule stabilizing agent. Brentuximab vedotin demonstrated significant

responses in relapsed refractory Hodgkin lymphoma and anaplastic large cell lymphoma, two lymphoma types with high CD30 expression; and it is approved for use in adult classical Hodgkin lymphoma patients who have relapsed after stem cell transplant or 2 chemotherapy regimens, as consolidation after transplant or with newly diagnosed stage 3 or 4 disease and in relapsed systemic or anaplastic large cell lymphoma or mucosis fungoides [159, 160]. Despite low levels of CD30 expression, brentuximab vedotin has also exhibited activity in treatment of some B-NHLs, in particular DLBCL and primary mediastinal large cell lymphoma [161].

Since these agents rely on the antibody primarily for targeting purposes, resistance mechanisms relating to Fc associated mechanisms of activity previously discussed are generally less relevant. However, changes in antigen expression can have a role in resistance to ADCs which continue to rely on antigen expression for appropriate delivery of their cargo. A single case of CD20 negative relapse following treatment with I^{131}-tositumomab has been reported though this was a very early progression raising the question of monoclonal antibody blocking binding of anti-CD20 antibody used for immunohistochemistry analysis [162]. Additionally, CD30 negative relapse of ALCL has been reported following treatment with brentuximab vedotin [163, 164].

Similarly, since the efficacy of ADCs is dependent on the anti-neoplastic agent conjugated to the antibody, additional mechanisms of resistance common to other chemotherapeutic agents can contribute to resistance. Chen *et al.* described mechanisms of resistance to brentuximab vedotin in ALCL and Hodgkin lymphoma cell lines generated to be resistant following serial exposure [165]. In addition to down-regulation of CD30 expression affecting ADC targeting, resistance to MMAE was observed. MMAE intracellular accumulation was lower in resistant cells following exposure to the ADC or to free MMAE suggesting possible impaired delivery related to decreased antigen expression, but also resistance to MMAE itself. Investigation of mechanisms of resistance to the MMAE identified an increased expression of the multi-drug resistance gene MDR1, with resistance to MMAE partially reversed following inhibition of p-glycoproteins. Similar increase in positivity for drug transporters was observed in patient samples from relapses following brentuximab vedotin therapy.

Additionally, altered induction of target cell apoptosis may contribute to resistance to the conjugated molecule. For example, in pre-clinical investigation of a novel ADC targeting CD79b and conjugated with MMAE, increased expression of the anti-apoptotic Bcl-2 family protein Bcl-xL was demonstrated to be associated with resistance to this investigational ADC with enhanced responses noted following inhibition of Bcl-2 family proteins using ABT-263 [166]. Alternative antibodies with enhanced antigen targeting or targeting alternative surface antigens, conjugates with more efficient conjugation of anti-neoplastic compounds and alternative anti-neoplastic agents not known to be substrates for drug transporter mediated efflux represent potential options for alternative ADCs to circumvent these identified mechanisms of resistance.

Another use of monoclonal antibody therapy is the ability to target tumor cells to cytotoxic effector cells using bi-specific antibodies that can bind the target cell and an effector cell. The prime example is the bispecific T-cell engaging (BiTE) antibody blinatumomab. Blinatumomab is a bivalent antibody targeting CD19 present on B-cells and CD3 on T-cells leading to enhanced immune-mediated clearance of tumor cells. It has been approved for use in acute lymphoblastic leukemia (ALL) and is under investigation in B-NHL with responses in 69% of 76 relapsed/refractory B-NHL patients including 55% of patients with DLBCL [75]. With data primarily in ALL, resistance to blinatumomab has been noted with CD19-negative relapses and primary resistance possibly due to high expression of the checkpoint inhibitor ligand PD-L1 on tumor cells [167–169]. Alternative bispecific antibodies constructed to enhance immune surveillance of malignant cells continue to be developed and evaluated in B-NHL including a CD20-CD3 bispecific antibody [170].

Summary

Monoclonal antibodies have been a cornerstone of therapy for lymphomas for decades following the first ever approval of a monoclonal antibody therapy, rituximab, for the treatment of cancer. Despite the overwhelming success of rituximab in treating NHLs, resistance exists both in primary refractory cases and on relapse following treatment with rituximab. Mechanisms of resistance have been identified that target all described mechanisms of monoclonal antibody activity including altered antigen expression or binding, impaired CDC or ADCC, altered intracellular signaling effects and inhibition of direct induction of cell death. Multiple next generation anti-CD20 monoclonal antibody therapies developed to overcome described resistance mechanisms continue to be investigated with two, ofatumumab and obinutuzumab, already approved for the treatment of B-cell malignancies albeit with narrow indications. Alternative monoclonal antibody based immunotherapeutic approaches more recently developed include the use of ADCs and bispecific or multivalent antibody constructs. The ADC brentuximab vedotin has approvals for indications in Hodgkin lymphoma and relapsed ALCL, while the BiTE antibody blinatumomab is approved for use in B-ALL. Understanding of these newer monoclonal antibody based therapeutic approaches and mechanisms of resistance to them continue to be studied, with alternative agents from each class already in development to try to improve on the significant activity already observed with each agent.

Acknowledgements S.C.G. is supported by Hyundai Hope on Wheels.

Disclosure of Conflict of Interest No potential conflicts of interest were disclosed.

References

1. Coiffier B, Lepage E, Briere J, Herbrecht R, Tilly H, Bouabdallah R, Morel P, Van Den Neste E, Salles G, Gaulard P, Reyes F, Lederlin P, Gisselbrecht C. CHOP chemotherapy plus rituximab compared with CHOP alone in elderly patients with diffuse large-B-cell lymphoma. N Engl J Med. 2002;346(4):235–42. https://doi.org/10.1056/NEJMoa011795.
2. Pfreundschuh M, Trümper L, Österborg A, Pettengell R, Trneny M, Imrie K, Ma D, Gill D, Walewski J, Zinzani P-L, Stahel R, Kvaloy S, Shpilberg O, Jaeger U, Hansen M, Lehtinen T, López-Guillermo A, Corrado C, Scheliga A, Milpied N, Mendila M, Rashford M, Kuhnt E, Loeffler M. CHOP-like chemotherapy plus rituximab versus CHOP-like chemotherapy alone in young patients with good-prognosis diffuse large-B-cell lymphoma: a randomised controlled trial by the MabThera International Trial (MInT) Group. Lancet Oncol. 2006;7(5):379–91. https://doi.org/10.1016/S1470-2045(06)70664-7.
3. Ribrag V, Koscielny S, Bosq J, Leguay T, Casasnovas O, Fornecker L-M, Recher C, Ghesquieres H, Morschhauser F, Girault S, Gouill SL, Ojeda-Uribe M, Mariette C, Cornillon J, Cartron G, Verge V, Chassagne-Clément C, Dombret H, Coiffier B, Lamy T, Tilly H, Salles G. Rituximab and dose-dense chemotherapy for adults with Burkitt's lymphoma: a randomised, controlled, open-label, phase 3 trial. Lancet. 2016;387(10036):2402–11. https://doi.org/10.1016/S0140-6736(15)01317-3.
4. Minard-Colin V, Auperin A, Pillon M, Burke A, Anderson JR, Barkauskas DA, Wheatley K, Delgado R, Alexander S, Uyttebroeck A, Bollard C, Zsiros J, Csoka M, Goma G, Tulard A, Patte C, Gross TG. Results of the randomized Intergroup trial Inter-B-NHL Ritux 2010 for children and adolescents with high-risk B-cell non-Hodgkin lymphoma (B-NHL) and mature acute leukemia (B-AL): Evaluation of rituximab (R) efficacy in addition to standard LMB chemotherapy (CT) regimen. J Clin Oncol. 2016;34(15_suppl):10507. https://doi.org/10.1200/JCO.2016.34.15_suppl.10507.
5. Maloney DG, Grillo-Lopez AJ, White CA, Bodkin D, Schilder RJ, Neidhart JA, Janakiraman N, Foon KA, Liles TM, Dallaire BK, Wey K, Royston I, Davis T, Levy R. IDEC-C2B8 (Rituximab) anti-CD20 monoclonal antibody therapy in patients with relapsed low-grade non-Hodgkin's lymphoma. Blood. 1997;90(6):2188–95.
6. Maloney DG, Grillo-Lopez AJ, Bodkin DJ, White CA, Liles TM, Royston I, Varns C, Rosenberg J, Levy R. IDEC-C2B8: results of a phase I multiple-dose trial in patients with relapsed non-Hodgkin's lymphoma. J Clin Oncol. 1997;15(10):3266–74. https://doi.org/10.1200/jco.1997.15.10.3266.
7. McLaughlin P, Grillo-Lopez AJ, Link BK, Levy R, Czuczman MS, Williams ME, Heyman MR, Bence-Bruckler I, White CA, Cabanillas F, Jain V, Ho AD, Lister J, Wey K, Shen D, Dallaire BK. Rituximab chimeric anti-CD20 monoclonal antibody therapy for relapsed indolent lymphoma: half of patients respond to a four-dose treatment program. J Clin Oncol. 1998;16(8):2825–33. https://doi.org/10.1200/jco.1998.16.8.2825.
8. Feuring-Buske M, Kneba M, Unterhalt M, Engert A, Gramatzki M, Hiller E, Trumper L, Brugger W, Ostermann H, Atzpodien J, Hallek M, Aulitzky E, Hiddemann W. IDEC-C2B8 (Rituximab) anti-CD20 antibody treatment in relapsed advanced-stage follicular lymphomas: results of a phase-II study of the German low-grade lymphoma study group. Ann Hematol. 2000;79(9):493–500.
9. Coiffier B, Haioun C, Ketterer N, Engert A, Tilly H, Ma D, Johnson P, Lister A, Feuring-Buske M, Radford JA, Capdeville R, Diehl V, Reyes F. Rituximab (anti-CD20 monoclonal antibody) for the treatment of patients with relapsing or refractory aggressive lymphoma: a multicenter phase II study. Blood. 1998;92(6):1927–32.
10. Davis TA, Grillo-Lopez AJ, White CA, McLaughlin P, Czuczman MS, Link BK, Maloney DG, Weaver RL, Rosenberg J, Levy R. Rituximab anti-CD20 monoclonal antibody therapy in non-Hodgkin's lymphoma: safety and efficacy of re-treatment. J Clin Oncol. 2000;18(17):3135–43. https://doi.org/10.1200/jco.2000.18.17.3135.

11. Igarashi T, Ohtsu T, Fujii H, Sasaki Y, Morishima Y, Ogura M, Kagami Y, Kinoshita T, Kasai M, Kiyama Y, Kobayashi Y, Tobinai K. Re-treatment of relapsed indolent B-cell lymphoma with rituximab. Int J Hematol. 2001;73(2):213–21.
12. Hainsworth JD, Burris HA 3rd, Morrissey LH, Litchy S, Scullin DC Jr, Bearden JD 3rd, et al. Rituximab monoclonal antibody as initial systemic therapy for patients with low-grade non-Hodgkin lymphoma. Blood. 2000;95(10):3052–6.
13. Czuczman MS. CHOP plus rituximab chemoimmunotherapy of indolent B-cell lymphoma. Semin Oncol. 1999;26(5 Suppl 14):88–96.
14. Czuczman MS, Grillo-Lopez AJ, White CA, Saleh M, Gordon L, LoBuglio AF, Jonas C, Klippenstein D, Dallaire B, Varns C. Treatment of patients with low-grade B-cell lymphoma with the combination of chimeric anti-CD20 monoclonal antibody and CHOP chemotherapy. J Clin Oncol. 1999;17(1):268–76. https://doi.org/10.1200/jco.1999.17.1.268.
15. Vose JM, Link BK, Grossbard ML, Czuczman M, Grillo-Lopez A, Gilman P, Lowe A, Kunkel LA, Fisher RI. Phase II study of rituximab in combination with chop chemotherapy in patients with previously untreated, aggressive non-Hodgkin's lymphoma. J Clin Oncol. 2001;19(2):389–97. https://doi.org/10.1200/jco.2001.19.2.389.
16. Hagberg H, Gisselbrecht C. Randomised phase III study of R-ICE versus R-DHAP in relapsed patients with CD20 diffuse large B-cell lymphoma (DLBCL) followed by high-dose therapy and a second randomisation to maintenance treatment with rituximab or not: an update of the CORAL study. Ann Oncol. 2006;17(Suppl 4):iv 31–2. https://doi.org/10.1093/annonc/mdj996.
17. Barth MJ, Goldman S, Smith L, Perkins S, Shiramizu B, Gross TG, Harrison L, Sanger W, Geyer MB, Giulino-Roth L, Cairo MS. Rituximab pharmacokinetics in children and adolescents with de novo intermediate and advanced mature B-cell lymphoma/leukaemia: a Children's oncology group report. Br J Haematol. 2013;162(5):678–83. https://doi.org/10.1111/bjh.12434.
18. Johnson P, Glennie M. The mechanisms of action of rituximab in the elimination of tumor cells. Semin Oncol. 2003;30(1 Suppl 2):3–8. https://doi.org/10.1053/sonc.2003.50025.
19. Gül N, van Egmond M. Antibody-dependent phagocytosis of tumor cells by macrophages: a potent effector mechanism of monoclonal antibody therapy of cancer. Cancer Res. 2015;75(23):5008–13. https://doi.org/10.1158/0008-5472.Can-15-1330.
20. Manches O, Lui G, Chaperot L, Gressin R, Molens J-P, Jacob M-C, Sotto J-J, Leroux D, Bensa J-C, Plumas J. In vitro mechanisms of action of rituximab on primary non-Hodgkin lymphomas. Blood. 2003;101(3):949–54. https://doi.org/10.1182/blood-2002-02-0469.
21. Jazirehi AR, Bonavida B. Cellular and molecular signal transduction pathways modulated by rituximab (rituxan, anti-CD20 mAb) in non-Hodgkin's lymphoma: implications in chemosensitization and therapeutic intervention. Oncogene. 2005;24:2121. https://doi.org/10.1038/sj.onc.1208349.
22. Chan HT, Hughes D, French RR, Tutt AL, Walshe CA, Teeling JL, Glennie MJ, Cragg MS. CD20-induced lymphoma cell death is independent of both caspases and its redistribution into triton X-100 insoluble membrane rafts. Cancer Res. 2003;63(17):5480–9.
23. Cragg MS, Glennie MJ. Antibody specificity controls in vivo effector mechanisms of anti-CD20 reagents. Blood. 2004;103(7):2738–43. https://doi.org/10.1182/blood-2003-06-2031.
24. Hernandez-Ilizaliturri FJ, Jupudy V, Ostberg J, Oflazoglu E, Huberman A, Repasky E, Czuczman MS. Neutrophils contribute to the biological antitumor activity of rituximab in a non-Hodgkin's lymphoma severe combined immunodeficiency mouse model. Clin Cancer Res. 2003;9(16 Pt 1):5866–73.
25. Uchida J, Hamaguchi Y, Oliver JA, Ravetch JV, Poe JC, Haas KM, et al. The innate mononuclear phagocyte network depletes B lymphocytes through Fc receptor-dependent mechanisms during anti-CD20 antibody immunotherapy. J Exp Med. 2004;199(12):1659–69. https://doi.org/10.1084/jem.20040119.
26. Di Gaetano N, Cittera E, Nota R, Vecchi A, Grieco V, Scanziani E, Botto M, Introna M, Golay J. Complement activation determines the therapeutic activity of rituximab in vivo. J Immunol. 2003;171(3):1581–7.

27. Wang S-Y, Racila E, Taylor RP, Weiner GJ. NK-cell activation and antibody-dependent cellular cytotoxicity induced by rituximab-coated target cells is inhibited by the C3b component of complement. Blood. 2008;111(3):1456–63. https://doi.org/10.1182/blood-2007-02-074716.
28. Racila E, Link BK, Weng WK, Witzig TE, Ansell S, Maurer MJ, Huang J, Dahle C, Halwani A, Levy R, Weiner GJ. A polymorphism in the complement component C1qA correlates with prolonged response following rituximab therapy of follicular lymphoma. Clin Cancer Res. 2008;14(20):6697–703. https://doi.org/10.1158/1078-0432.Ccr-08-0745.
29. Jin X, Ding H, Ding N, Fu Z, Song Y, Zhu J. Homozygous A polymorphism of the complement C1qA276 correlates with prolonged overall survival in patients with diffuse large B cell lymphoma treated with R-CHOP. J Hematol Oncol. 2012;5:51. https://doi.org/10.1186/1756-8722-5-51.
30. Byrd JC, Kitada S, Flinn IW, Aron JL, Pearson M, Lucas D, Reed JC. The mechanism of tumor cell clearance by rituximab in vivo in patients with B-cell chronic lymphocytic leukemia: evidence of caspase activation and apoptosis induction. Blood. 2002;99(3):1038–43.
31. Shan D, Ledbetter JA, Press OW. Signaling events involved in anti-CD20-induced apoptosis of malignant human B cells. Cancer Immunol Immunother. 2000;48(12):673–83.
32. Shan D, Ledbetter JA, Press OW. Apoptosis of malignant human B cells by ligation of CD20 with monoclonal antibodies. Blood. 1998;91(5):1644–52.
33. van der Kolk LE, Evers LM, Omene C, Lens SM, Lederman S, van Lier RA, van Oers MH, Eldering E. CD20-induced B cell death can bypass mitochondria and caspase activation. Leukemia. 2002;16(9):1735–44. https://doi.org/10.1038/sj.leu.2402559.
34. Hofmeister JK, Cooney D, Coggeshall KM. Clustered CD20 induced apoptosis: src-family kinase, the proximal regulator of tyrosine phosphorylation, calcium influx, and caspase 3-dependent apoptosis. Blood Cells Mol Dis. 2000;26(2):133–43. https://doi.org/10.1006/bcmd.2000.0287.
35. Pedersen IM, Buhl AM, Klausen P, Geisler CH, Jurlander J. The chimeric anti-CD20 antibody rituximab induces apoptosis in B-cell chronic lymphocytic leukemia cells through a p38 mitogen activated protein-kinase-dependent mechanism. Blood. 2002;99(4):1314–9.
36. Mathas S, Rickers A, Bommert K, Dorken B, Mapara MY. Anti-CD20- and B-cell receptor-mediated apoptosis: evidence for shared intracellular signaling pathways. Cancer Res. 2000;60(24):7170–6.
37. Jazirehi AR, Huerta-Yepez S, Cheng G, Bonavida B. Rituximab (Chimeric Anti-CD20 Monoclonal Antibody) inhibits the constitutive nuclear factor-κB signaling pathway in non-Hodgkin's lymphoma B-cell lines: role in sensitization to chemotherapeutic drug-induced apoptosis. Cancer Res. 2005;65(1):264–76.
38. Vega MI, Jazirehi AR, Huerta-Yepez S, Bonavida B. Rituximab-induced inhibition of YY1 and Bcl-xL expression in ramos non-Hodgkin's lymphoma cell line via inhibition of NF-κB activity: role of YY1 and Bcl-xL in fas resistance and chemoresistance, respectively. J Immunol. 2005;175(4):2174–83. https://doi.org/10.4049/jimmunol.175.4.2174.
39. Mounier N, Briere J, Gisselbrecht C, Emile JF, Lederlin P, Sebban C, Berger F, Bosly A, Morel P, Tilly H, Bouabdallah R, Reyes F, Gaulard P, Coiffier B. Rituximab plus CHOP (R-CHOP) overcomes bcl-2—associated resistance to chemotherapy in elderly patients with diffuse large B-cell lymphoma (DLBCL). Blood. 2003;101(11):4279–84. https://doi.org/10.1182/blood-2002-11-3442.
40. Selenko N, Maidic O, Draxier S, Berer A, Jager U, Knapp W, Stockl J. CD20 antibody (C2B8)-induced apoptosis of lymphoma cells promotes phagocytosis by dendritic cells and cross-priming of CD8+ cytotoxic T cells. Leukemia. 2001;15(10):1619–26.
41. Abes R, Gelize E, Fridman WH, Teillaud JL. Long-lasting antitumor protection by anti-CD20 antibody through cellular immune response. Blood. 2010;116(6):926–34. https://doi.org/10.1182/blood-2009-10-248609.
42. DiLillo DJ, Ravetch JV. Differential Fc-receptor engagement drives an anti-tumor vaccinal effect. Cell. 2015;161(5):1035–45. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.cell.2015.04.016.
43. Marshall MJE, Stopforth RJ, Cragg MS. Therapeutic antibodies: what have we learnt from targeting CD20 and where are we going? Front Immunol. 2017;8:1245. https://doi.org/10.3389/fimmu.2017.01245.

44. Davis TA, Czerwinski DK, Levy R. Therapy of B-cell lymphoma with anti-CD20 antibodies can result in the loss of CD20 antigen expression. Clin Cancer Res. 1999;5(3):611–5.
45. Kinoshita T, Nagai H, Murate T, Saito H. CD20-negative relapse in B-cell lymphoma after treatment with Rituximab. J Clin Oncol. 1998;16(12):3916.
46. Venugopal P, Leslie WT, O'Brien T, Gregory SA. CD20-negative relapse after (131) I-anti-CD20 therapy. J Clin Oncol. 1999;17(11):3692–3. https://doi.org/10.1200/jco.1999.17.11.3692.
47. Schmitz K, Brugger W, Weiss B, Kaiserling E, Kanz L. Clonal selection of CD20-negative non-Hodgkin's lymphoma cells after treatment with anti-CD20 antibody rituximab. Br J Haematol. 1999;106(2):571–2.
48. Czuczman MS, Olejniczak S, Gowda A, Kotowski A, Binder A, Kaur H, Knight J, Starostik P, Deans J, Hernandez-Ilizaliturri FJ. Acquirement of rituximab resistance in lymphoma cell lines is associated with both global CD20 gene and protein down-regulation regulated at the pretranscriptional and posttranscriptional levels. Clin Cancer Res. 2008;14(5):1561–70. https://doi.org/10.1158/1078-0432.Ccr-07-1254.
49. Henry C, Deschamps M, Rohrlich PS, Pallandre JR, Remy-Martin JP, Callanan M, Traverse-Glehen A, GrandClement C, Garnache-Ottou F, Gressin R, Deconinck E, Salles G, Robinet E, Tiberghien P, Borg C, Ferrand C. Identification of an alternative CD20 transcript variant in B-cell malignancies coding for a novel protein associated to rituximab resistance. Blood. 2010;115(12):2420–9. https://doi.org/10.1182/blood-2009-06-229112.
50. Beum PV, Kennedy AD, Williams ME, Lindorfer MA, Taylor RP. The shaving reaction: rituximab/CD20 complexes are removed from mantle cell lymphoma and chronic lymphocytic leukemia cells by THP-1 monocytes. J Immunol. 2006;176(4):2600–9.
51. Kennedy AD, Beum PV, Solga MD, DiLillo DJ, Lindorfer MA, Hess CE, Densmore JJ, Williams ME, Taylor RP. Rituximab infusion promotes rapid complement depletion and acute CD20 loss in chronic lymphocytic leukemia. J Immunol. 2004;172(5):3280–8. https://doi.org/10.4049/jimmunol.172.5.3280.
52. Beers SA, French RR, Chan HT, Lim SH, Jarrett TC, Vidal RM, Wijayaweera SS, Dixon SV, Kim H, Cox KL, Kerr JP, Johnston DA, Johnson PW, Verbeek JS, Glennie MJ, Cragg MS. Antigenic modulation limits the efficacy of anti-CD20 antibodies: implications for antibody selection. Blood. 2010;115(25):5191–201. https://doi.org/10.1182/blood-2010-01-263533.
53. Dahal LN, Huang CY, Stopforth RJ, Mead A, Chan K, Bowater JX, Taylor MC, Narang P, Chan HTC, Kim JH, Vaughan AT, Forconi F, Beers SA. Shaving is an epiphenomenon of type I and II anti-CD20-mediated phagocytosis, whereas antigenic modulation limits type I monoclonal antibody efficacy. J Immunol. 2018;201(4):1211–21. https://doi.org/10.4049/jimmunol.1701122.
54. Miyoshi H, Arakawa F, Sato K, Kimura Y, Kiyasu J, Takeuchi M, Yoshida M, Ichikawa A, Ishibashi Y, Nakamura Y, Nakashima S, Niino D, Sugita Y, Ohshima K. Comparison of CD20 expression in B-cell lymphoma between newly diagnosed, untreated cases and those after rituximab treatment. Cancer Sci. 2012;103(8):1567–73. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1349-7006.2012.02307.x.
55. Terui Y, Mishima Y, Sugimura N, Kojima K, Sakurai T, Mishima Y, Kuniyoshi R, Taniyama A, Yokoyama M, Sakajiri S, Takeuchi K, Watanabe C, Takahashi S, Ito Y, Hatake K. Identification of CD20 C-terminal deletion mutations associated with loss of CD20 expression in non-Hodgkin's lymphoma. Clin Cancer Res. 2009;15(7):2523–30. https://doi.org/10.1158/1078-0432.Ccr-08-1403.
56. Mishima Y, Terui Y, Takeuchi K, Matsumoto-Mishima Y, Matsusaka S, Utsubo-Kuniyoshi R, Hatake K. The identification of irreversible rituximab-resistant lymphoma caused by CD20 gene mutations. Blood Cancer J. 2011;1(4):e15. https://doi.org/10.1038/bcj.2011.11.
57. Nakamaki T, Fukuchi K, Nakashima H, Ariizumi H, Maeda T, Saito B, Yanagisawa K, Tomoyasu S, Homma M, Shiozawa E, Yamochi-Onizuka T, Ota H. CD20 gene deletion causes a CD20-negative relapse in diffuse large B-cell lymphoma. Eur J Haematol. 2012;89(4):350–5. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1600-0609.2012.01838.x.

58. Johnson NA, Leach S, Woolcock B, de Leeuw RJ, Bashashati A, Sehn LH, Connors JM, Chhanabhai M, Brooks-Wilson A, Gascoyne RD. CD20 mutations involving the rituximab epitope are rare in diffuse large B-cell lymphomas and are not a significant cause of R-CHOP failure. Haematologica. 2009;94(3):423–7. https://doi.org/10.3324/haematol.2008.001024.
59. Tomita A, Hiraga J, Kiyoi H, Ninomiya M, Sugimoto T, Ito M, Kinoshita T, Naoe T. Epigenetic regulation of CD20 protein expression in a novel B-cell lymphoma cell line, RRBL1, established from a patient treated repeatedly with rituximab-containing chemotherapy. Int J Hematol. 2007;86(1):49–57. https://doi.org/10.1532/ijh97.07028.
60. Sugimoto T, Tomita A, Hiraga J, Shimada K, Kiyoi H, Kinoshita T, Naoe T. Escape mechanisms from antibody therapy to lymphoma cells: downregulation of CD20 mRNA by recruitment of the HDAC complex and not by DNA methylation. Biochem Biophys Res Commun. 2009;390(1):48–53. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.bbrc.2009.09.059.
61. Shimizu R, Kikuchi J, Wada T, Ozawa K, Kano Y, Furukawa Y. HDAC inhibitors augment cytotoxic activity of rituximab by upregulating CD20 expression on lymphoma cells. Leukemia. 2010;24(10):1760–8. https://doi.org/10.1038/leu.2010.157.
62. Mankai A, Buhe V, Hammadi M, Youinou P, Ghedira I, Berthou C, Bordron A. Improvement of rituximab efficiency in chronic lymphocytic leukemia by CpG-mediated upregulation of CD20 expression independently of PU.1. Ann NY Acad Sci. 2009;1173:721–8. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1749-6632.2009.04614.x.
63. Winiarska M, Nowis D, Bil J, Glodkowska-Mrowka E, Muchowicz A, Wanczyk M, Bojarczuk K, Dwojak M, Firczuk M, Wilczek E, Wachowska M, Roszczenko K, Miaczynska M, Chlebowska J, Basak GW, Golab J. Prenyltransferases regulate CD20 protein levels and influence anti-CD20 monoclonal antibody-mediated activation of complement-dependent cytotoxicity. J Biol Chem. 2012;287(38):31983–93. https://doi.org/10.1074/jbc.M112.374751.
64. Scialdone A, Hasni MS, Damm JK, Lennartsson A, Gullberg U, Drott K. The HDAC inhibitor valproate induces a bivalent status of the CD20 promoter in CLL patients suggesting distinct epigenetic regulation of CD20 expression in CLL in vivo. Oncotarget. 2017;8(23):37409–22. https://doi.org/10.18632/oncotarget.16964.
65. Xue K, Gu JJ, Zhang Q, Mavis C, Hernandez-Ilizaliturri FJ, Czuczman MS, Guo Y. Vorinostat, a histone deacetylase (HDAC) inhibitor, promotes cell cycle arrest and re-sensitizes rituximab- and chemo-resistant lymphoma cells to chemotherapy agents. J Cancer Res Clin Oncol. 2016;142(2):379–87. https://doi.org/10.1007/s00432-015-2026-y.
66. Frys S, Simons Z, Hu Q, Barth MJ, Gu JJ, Mavis C, Skitzki J, Song L, Czuczman MS, Hernandez-Ilizaliturri FJ. Entinostat, a novel histone deacetylase inhibitor is active in B-cell lymphoma and enhances the anti-tumour activity of rituximab and chemotherapy agents. Br J Haematol. 2015;169(4):506–19. https://doi.org/10.1111/bjh.13318.
67. Drott K, Hagberg H, Papworth K, Relander T, Jerkeman M. Valproate in combination with rituximab and CHOP as first-line therapy in diffuse large B-cell lymphoma (VALFRID). Blood Adv. 2018;2(12):1386–92. https://doi.org/10.1182/bloodadvances.2018019240.
68. Budde LE, Zhang MM, Shustov AR, Pagel JM, Gooley TA, Oliveira GR, Chen TL, Knudsen NL, Roden JE, Kammerer BE, Frayo SL, Warr TA, Boyd TE, Press OW, Gopal AK. A phase I study of pulse high-dose vorinostat (V) plus rituximab (R), ifosphamide, carboplatin, and etoposide (ICE) in patients with relapsed lymphoma. Br J Haematol. 2013;161(2):183–91. https://doi.org/10.1111/bjh.12230.
69. Venugopal P, Sivaraman S, Huang X-K, Nayini J, Gregory SA, Preisler HD. Effects of cytokines on CD20 antigen expression on tumor cells from patients with chronic lymphocytic leukemia. Leukemia Res. 2000;24(5):411–5. https://doi.org/10.1016/S0145-2126(99)00206-4.
70. Sivaraman S, Deshpande CG, Ranganathan R, Huang X, Jajeh A, O'Brien T, Huang RW, Gregory SA, Venugopal P, Preisler HD. Tumor necrosis factor modulates CD 20 expression on cells from chronic lymphocytic leukemia: a new role for TNF alpha? Microsc Res Tech. 2000;50(3):251–7. https://doi.org/10.1002/1097-0029(20000801)50:3<251::Aid-jemt9>3.0.Co;2-7.

71. Tuscano JM, Ma Y, Martin SM, Kato J, O'Donnell RT. The Bs20x22 anti-CD20-CD22 bispecific antibody has more lymphomacidal activity than do the parent antibodies alone. Cancer Immunol Immunother. 2011;60(6):771–80. https://doi.org/10.1007/s00262-011-0978-6.
72. Li B, Zhang X, Shi S, Zhao L, Zhang D, Qian W, Zheng L, Gao J, Wang H, Guo Y. Construction and characterization of a bispecific anti-CD20 antibody with potent antitumor activity against B-cell lymphoma. Cancer Res. 2010;70(15):6293–302. https://doi.org/10.1158/0008-5472.can-10-0009.
73. Leonard JP, Coleman M, Ketas JC, Chadburn A, Furman R, Schuster MW, Feldman EJ, Ashe M, Schuster SJ, Wegener WA, Hansen HJ, Ziccardi H, Eschenberg M, Gayko U, Fields SZ, Cesano A, Goldenberg DM. Epratuzumab, a humanized anti-CD22 antibody, in aggressive non-Hodgkin's lymphoma: phase I/II clinical trial results. Clin Cancer Res. 2004;10(16):5327–34. https://doi.org/10.1158/1078-0432.Ccr-04-0294.
74. Ogura M, Tobinai K, Hatake K, Davies A, Crump M, Ananthakrishnan R, Ishibashi T, Paccagnella ML, Boni J, Vandendries E, MacDonald D. Phase I study of Inotuzumab Ozogamicin combined with R-CVP for relapsed/refractory CD22+ B-cell non-Hodgkin lymphoma. Clin Cancer Res. 2016;22(19):4807–16. https://doi.org/10.1158/1078-0432.Ccr-15-2488.
75. Goebeler ME, Knop S, Viardot A, Kufer P, Topp MS, Einsele H, Noppeney R, Hess G, Kallert S, Mackensen A, Rupertus K, Kanz L, Libicher M, Nagorsen D, Zugmaier G, Klinger M, Wolf A, Dorsch B, Quednau BD, Schmidt M, Scheele J, Baeuerle PA, Leo E, Bargou RC. Bispecific T-cell engager (BiTE) antibody construct blinatumomab for the treatment of patients with relapsed/refractory non-Hodgkin lymphoma: final results from a phase I study. J Clin Oncol. 2016;34(10):1104–11. https://doi.org/10.1200/jco.2014.59.1586.
76. Palanca-Wessels MC, Czuczman M, Salles G, Assouline S, Sehn LH, Flinn I, Patel MR, Sangha R, Hagenbeek A, Advani R, Tilly H, Casasnovas O, Press OW, Yalamanchili S, Kahn R, Dere RC, Lu D, Jones S, Jones C, Chu YW, Morschhauser F. Safety and activity of the anti-CD79B antibody-drug conjugate polatuzumab vedotin in relapsed or refractory B-cell non-Hodgkin lymphoma and chronic lymphocytic leukaemia: a phase 1 study. Lancet Oncol. 2015;16(6):704–15. https://doi.org/10.1016/s1470-2045(15)70128-2.
77. Czuczman MS, Thall A, Witzig TE, Vose JM, Younes A, Emmanouilides C, Miller TP, Moore JO, Leonard JP, Gordon LI, Sweetenham J, Alkuzweny B, Finucane DM, Leigh BR. Phase I/II study of galiximab, an anti-CD80 antibody, for relapsed or refractory follicular lymphoma. J Clin Oncol. 2005;23(19):4390–8. https://doi.org/10.1200/jco.2005.09.018.
78. de Vos S, Forero-Torres A, Ansell SM, Kahl B, Cheson BD, Bartlett NL, Furman RR, Winter JN, Kaplan H, Timmerman J, Whiting NC, Drachman JG, Advani R. A phase II study of dacetuzumab (SGN-40) in patients with relapsed diffuse large B-cell lymphoma (DLBCL) and correlative analyses of patient-specific factors. J Hematol Oncol. 2014;7:44. https://doi.org/10.1186/1756-8722-7-44.
79. Klepfish A, Gilles L, Ioannis K, Rachmilewitz EA, Schattner A. Enhancing the action of rituximab in chronic lymphocytic leukemia by adding fresh frozen plasma: complement/rituximab interactions & clinical results in refractory CLL. Ann NY Acad Sci. 2009;1173:865–73. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1749-6632.2009.04803.x.
80. Xu W, Miao KR, Zhu DX, Fang C, Zhu HY, Dong HJ, Wang DM, Wu YJ, Qiao C, Li JY. Enhancing the action of rituximab by adding fresh frozen plasma for the treatment of fludarabine refractory chronic lymphocytic leukemia. Int J Cancer. 2011;128(9):2192–201. https://doi.org/10.1002/ijc.25560.
81. Ziller F, Macor P, Bulla R, Sblattero D, Marzari R, Tedesco F. Controlling complement resistance in cancer by using human monoclonal antibodies that neutralize complement-regulatory proteins CD55 and CD59. Eur J Immunol. 2005;35(7):2175–83. https://doi.org/10.1002/eji.200425920.
82. Golay J, Zaffaroni L, Vaccari T, Lazzari M, Borleri GM, Bernasconi S, Tedesco F, Rambaldi A, Introna M. Biologic response of B lymphoma cells to anti-CD20 monoclonal antibody rituximab in vitro: CD55 and CD59 regulate complement-mediated cell lysis. Blood. 2000;95(12):3900–8.

83. Barth MJ, Hernandez-Ilizaliturri FJ, Mavis C, Tsai PC, Gibbs JF, Deeb G, Czuczman MS. Ofatumumab demonstrates activity against rituximab-sensitive and -resistant cell lines, lymphoma xenografts and primary tumour cells from patients with B-cell lymphoma. Br J Haematol. 2012;156(4):490–8. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1365-2141.2011.08966.x.
84. Golay J, Lazzari M, Facchinetti V, Bernasconi S, Borleri G, Barbui T, Rambaldi A, Introna M. CD20 levels determine the in vitro susceptibility to rituximab and complement of B-cell chronic lymphocytic leukemia: further regulation by CD55 and CD59. Blood. 2001;98(12):3383–9.
85. Takei K, Yamazaki T, Sawada U, Ishizuka H, Aizawa S. Analysis of changes in CD20, CD55, and CD59 expression on established rituximab-resistant B-lymphoma cell lines. Leuk Res. 2006;30(5):625–31. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.leukres.2005.09.008.
86. Hu W, Ge X, You T, Xu T, Zhang J, Wu G, Peng Z, Chorev M, Aktas BH, Halperin JA, Brown JR, Qin X. Human CD59 inhibitor sensitizes rituximab-resistant lymphoma cells to complement-mediated cytolysis. Cancer Res. 2011;71(6):2298–307. https://doi.org/10.1158/0008-5472.Can-10-3016.
87. Terui Y, Sakurai T, Mishima Y, Mishima Y, Sugimura N, Sasaoka C, Kojima K, Yokoyama M, Mizunuma N, Takahashi S, Ito Y, Hatake K. Blockade of bulky lymphoma-associated CD55 expression by RNA interference overcomes resistance to complement-dependent cytotoxicity with rituximab. Cancer Sci. 2006;97(1):72–9. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1349-7006.2006.00139.x.
88. Weng WK, Levy R. Expression of complement inhibitors CD46, CD55, and CD59 on tumor cells does not predict clinical outcome after rituximab treatment in follicular non-Hodgkin lymphoma. Blood. 2001;98(5):1352–7.
89. Dzietczenia J, Wrobel T, Mazur G, Poreba R, Jazwiec B, Kuliczkowski K. Expression of complement regulatory proteins: CD46, CD55, and CD59 and response to rituximab in patients with CD20+ non-Hodgkin's lymphoma. Med Oncol. 2010;27(3):743–6. https://doi.org/10.1007/s12032-009-9278-9.
90. Teeling JL, French RR, Cragg MS, van den Brakel J, Pluyter M, Huang H, Chan C, Parren PW, Hack CE, Dechant M, Valerius T, van de Winkel JG, Glennie MJ. Characterization of new human CD20 monoclonal antibodies with potent cytolytic activity against non-Hodgkin lymphomas. Blood. 2004;104(6):1793–800. https://doi.org/10.1182/blood-2004-01-0039.
91. Saphire EO, Stanfield RL, Crispin MD, Parren PW, Rudd PM, Dwek RA, Burton DR, Wilson IA. Contrasting IgG structures reveal extreme asymmetry and flexibility. J Mol Biol. 2002;319(1):9–18. https://doi.org/10.1016/s0022-2836(02)00244-9.
92. Teeling JL, Mackus WJ, Wiegman LJ, van den Brakel JH, Beers SA, French RR, van Meerten T, Ebeling S, Vink T, Slootstra JW, Parren PW, Glennie MJ, van de Winkel JG. The biological activity of human CD20 monoclonal antibodies is linked to unique epitopes on CD20. J Immunol. 2006;177(1):362–71.
93. Barth MJ, Mavis C, Czuczman MS, Hernandez-Ilizaliturri FJ. Ofatumumab exhibits enhanced in vitro and in vivo activity compared to Rituximab in preclinical models of mantle cell lymphoma. Clin Cancer Res. 2015;21(19):4391–7. https://doi.org/10.1158/1078-0432.Ccr-15-0056.
94. Beum PV, Lindorfer MA, Beurskens F, Stukenberg PT, Lokhorst HM, Pawluczkowycz AW, Parren PW, van de Winkel JG, Taylor RP. Complement activation on B lymphocytes opsonized with rituximab or ofatumumab produces substantial changes in membrane structure preceding cell lysis. J Immunol. 2008;181(1):822–32.
95. Pawluczkowycz AW, Beurskens FJ, Beum PV, Lindorfer MA, van de Winkel JG, Parren PW, Taylor RP. Binding of submaximal C1q promotes complement-dependent cytotoxicity (CDC) of B cells opsonized with anti-CD20 mAbs ofatumumab (OFA) or rituximab (RTX): considerably higher levels of CDC are induced by OFA than by RTX. J Immunol. 2009;183(1):749–58. https://doi.org/10.4049/jimmunol.0900632.
96. Coiffier B, Losic N, Ronn BB, Lepretre S, Pedersen LM, Gadeberg O, Frederiksen H, van Oers MH, Wooldridge J, Kloczko J, Holowiecki J, Hellmann A, Walewski J, Robak T,

Petersen J. Pharmacokinetics and pharmacokinetic/pharmacodynamic associations of ofatumumab, a human monoclonal CD20 antibody, in patients with relapsed or refractory chronic lymphocytic leukaemia: a phase 1-2 study. Br J Haematol. 2010;150(1):58–71. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1365-2141.2010.08193.x.

97. Wierda WG, Kipps TJ, Durig J, Griskevicius L, Stilgenbauer S, Mayer J, Smolej L, Hess G, Griniute R, Hernandez-Ilizaliturri FJ, Padmanabhan S, Gorczyca M, Chang CN, Chan G, Gupta I, Nielsen TG, Russell CA. Chemoimmunotherapy with O-FC in previously untreated patients with chronic lymphocytic leukemia. Blood. 2011;117(24):6450–8. https://doi.org/10.1182/blood-2010-12-323980.
98. Lemery SJ, Zhang J, Rothmann MD, Yang J, Earp J, Zhao H, McDougal A, Pilaro A, Chiang R, Gootenberg JE, Keegan P, Pazdur R. U.S. food and drug administration approval: ofatumumab for the treatment of patients with chronic lymphocytic leukemia refractory to fludarabine and alemtuzumab. Clin Cancer Res. 2010;16(17):4331–8. https://doi.org/10.1158/1078-0432.Ccr-10-0570.
99. Wierda WG, Kipps TJ, Mayer J, Stilgenbauer S, Williams CD, Hellmann A, Robak T, Furman RR, Hillmen P, Trneny M, Dyer MJ, Padmanabhan S, Piotrowska M, Kozak T, Chan G, Davis R, Losic N, Wilms J, Russell CA, Osterborg A. Ofatumumab as single-agent CD20 immunotherapy in fludarabine-refractory chronic lymphocytic leukemia. J Clin Oncol. 2010;28(10):1749–55. https://doi.org/10.1200/jco.2009.25.3187.
100. Robak T, Warzocha K, Govind Babu K, Kulyaba Y, Kuliczkowski K, Abdulkadyrov K, Loscertales J, Kryachok I, Kloczko J, Rekhtman G, Homenda W, Blonski JZ, McKeown A, Gorczyca MM, Carey JL, Chang CN, Lisby S, Gupta IV, Grosicki S. Ofatumumab plus fludarabine and cyclophosphamide in relapsed chronic lymphocytic leukemia: results from the COMPLEMENT 2 trial. Leuk Lymphoma. 2017;58(5):1084–93. https://doi.org/10.1080/10428194.2016.1233536.
101. van Imhoff GW, McMillan A, Matasar MJ, Radford J, Ardeshna KM, Kuliczkowski K, Kim W, Hong X, Goerloev JS, Davies A, Barrigon MDC, Ogura M, Leppa S, Fennessy M, Liao Q, van der Holt B, Lisby S, Hagenbeek A. Ofatumumab versus rituximab salvage chemoimmunotherapy in relapsed or refractory diffuse large B-cell lymphoma: The ORCHARRD study. J Clin Oncol. 2017;35(5):544–51. https://doi.org/10.1200/jco.2016.69.0198.
102. Czuczman MS, Kahanic S, Forero A, Davis G, Munteanu M, Van Den Neste E, Offner F, Bron D, Quick D, Fowler N. Results of a phase II study of bendamustine and ofatumumab in untreated indolent B cell non-Hodgkin's lymphoma. Ann Hematol. 2015;94(4):633–41. https://doi.org/10.1007/s00277-014-2269-8.
103. Coiffier B, Radford J, Bosly A, Martinelli G, Verhoef G, Barca G, Davies A, Decaudin D, Gallop-Evans E, Padmanabhan-Iyer S, Van Eygen K, Wu KL, Gupta IV, Lin TS, Goldstein N, Jewell RC, Winter P, Lisby S (2013) A multicentre, phase II trial of ofatumumab monotherapy in relapsed/progressive diffuse large B-cell lymphoma. Br J Haematol 163 (3): 334-342. doi:https://doi.org/10.1111/bjh.12537
104. Matasar MJ, Czuczman MS, Rodriguez MA, Fennessy M, Shea TC, Spitzer G, Lossos IS, Kharfan-Dabaja MA, Joyce R, Fayad L, Henkel K, Liao Q, Edvardsen K, Jewell RC, Fecteau D, Singh RP, Lisby S, Moskowitz CH. Ofatumumab in combination with ICE or DHAP chemotherapy in relapsed or refractory intermediate grade B-cell lymphoma. Blood. 2013;122(4):499–506. https://doi.org/10.1182/blood-2012-12-472027.
105. Czuczman MS, Fayad L, Delwail V, Cartron G, Jacobsen E, Kuliczkowski K, Link BK, Pinter-Brown L, Radford J, Hellmann A, Gallop-Evans E, DiRienzo CG, Goldstein N, Gupta I, Jewell RC, Lin TS, Lisby S, Schultz M, Russell CA, Hagenbeek A. Ofatumumab monotherapy in rituximab-refractory follicular lymphoma: results from a multicenter study. Blood. 2012;119(16):3698–704. https://doi.org/10.1182/blood-2011-09-378323.
106. Diebolder CA, Beurskens FJ, de Jong RN, Koning RI, Strumane K, Lindorfer MA, Voorhorst M, Ugurlar D, Rosati S, Heck AJ, van de Winkel JG, Wilson IA, Koster AJ, Taylor RP, Saphire EO, Burton DR, Schuurman J, Gros P, Parren PW. Complement is activated by IgG hexamers assembled at the cell surface. Science. 2014;343(6176):1260–3. https://doi.org/10.1126/science.1248943.

107. de Jong RN, Beurskens FJ, Verploegen S, Strumane K, van Kampen MD, Voorhorst M, Horstman W, Engelberts PJ, Oostindie SC, Wang G, Heck AJ, Schuurman J, Parren PW. A novel platform for the potentiation of therapeutic antibodies based on antigen-dependent formation of IgG hexamers at the cell surface. PLoS Biol. 2016;14(1):e1002344. https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.pbio.1002344.
108. Clynes RA, Towers TL, Presta LG, Ravetch JV. Inhibitory Fc receptors modulate in vivo cytotoxicity against tumor targets. Nat Med. 2000;6(4):443–6. https://doi.org/10.1038/74704.
109. Nimmerjahn F, Ravetch JV. Fcgamma receptors as regulators of immune responses. Nat Rev Immunol. 2008;8(1):34–47. https://doi.org/10.1038/nri2206.
110. Cartron G, Dacheux L, Salles G, Solal-Celigny P, Bardos P, Colombat P, Watier H. Therapeutic activity of humanized anti-CD20 monoclonal antibody and polymorphism in IgG Fc receptor FcgammaRIIIa gene. Blood. 2002;99(3):754–8.
111. Cartron G, Dacheux L, Salles G, Solal-Celigny P, Bardos P, Colombat P, Watier H. Therapeutic activity of humanized anti-CD20 monoclonal antibody and polymorphism in IgG Fc receptor FcγRIIIa gene. Blood. 2002;99(3):754–8. https://doi.org/10.1182/blood.V99.3.754.
112. Kenkre VP, Hong F, Cerhan JR, Lewis M, Sullivan L, Williams ME, Gascoyne RD, Horning SJ, Kahl BS. Fc gamma receptor 3A and 2A polymorphisms do not predict response to Rituximab in follicular lymphoma. Clin Cancer Res. 2016;22(4):821–6. https://doi.org/10.1158/1078-0432.Ccr-15-1848.
113. Ghesquieres H, Cartron G, Seymour JF, Delfau-Larue MH, Offner F, Soubeyran P, Perrot A, Brice P, Bouabdallah R, Sonet A, Dupuis J, Casasnovas O, Catalano JV, Delmer A, Jardin F, Verney A, Dartigues P, Salles G. Clinical outcome of patients with follicular lymphoma receiving chemoimmunotherapy in the PRIMA study is not affected by FCGR3A and FCGR2A polymorphisms. Blood. 2012;120(13):2650–7. https://doi.org/10.1182/blood-2012-05-431825.
114. Persky DO, Dornan D, Goldman BH, Braziel RM, Fisher RI, Leblanc M, Maloney DG, Press OW, Miller TP, Rimsza LM. Fc gamma receptor 3a genotype predicts overall survival in follicular lymphoma patients treated on SWOG trials with combined monoclonal antibody plus chemotherapy but not chemotherapy alone. Haematologica. 2012;97(6):937–42. https://doi.org/10.3324/haematol.2011.050419.
115. Ahlgrimm M, Pfreundschuh M, Kreuz M, Regitz E, Preuss KD, Bittenbring J. The impact of Fc-gamma receptor polymorphisms in elderly patients with diffuse large B-cell lymphoma treated with CHOP with or without rituximab. Blood. 2011;118(17):4657–62. https://doi.org/10.1182/blood-2011-04-346411.
116. Fabisiewicz A, Paszkiewicz-Kozik E, Osowiecki M, Walewski J, Siedlecki JA. FcgammaRIIA and FcgammaRIIIA polymorphisms do not influence survival and response to rituximab, cyclophosphamide, doxorubicin, vincristine, and prednisone immunochemotherapy in patients with diffuse large B-cell lymphoma. Leuk Lymphoma. 2011;52(8):1604–6. https://doi.org/10.3109/10428194.2011.574760.
117. Weng WK, Levy R. Genetic polymorphism of the inhibitory IgG Fc receptor FcgammaRIIb is not associated with clinical outcome in patients with follicular lymphoma treated with rituximab. Leuk Lymphoma. 2009;50(5):723–7. https://doi.org/10.1080/10428190902829441.
118. Carlotti E, Palumbo GA, Oldani E, Tibullo D, Salmoiraghi S, Rossi A, Golay J, Pulsoni A, Foa R, Rambaldi A. FcgammaRIIIA and FcgammaRIIA polymorphisms do not predict clinical outcome of follicular non-Hodgkin's lymphoma patients treated with sequential CHOP and rituximab. Haematologica. 2007;92(8):1127–30.
119. Mitrovic Z, Aurer I, Radman I, Ajdukovic R, Sertic J, Labar B. FCgammaRIIIA and FCgammaRIIA polymorphisms are not associated with response to rituximab and CHOP in patients with diffuse large B-cell lymphoma. Haematologica. 2007;92(7):998–9.
120. Galimberti S, Palumbo GA, Caracciolo F, Benedetti E, Pelosini M, Brizzi S, Ciabatti E, Fazzi R, Stelitano C, Quintana G, Conte E, Tibullo D, Di Raimondo F, Petrini M. The efficacy of rituximab plus Hyper-CVAD regimen in mantle cell lymphoma is independent of FCgammaRIIIa and FCgammaRIIa polymorphisms. J Chemother. 2007;19(3):315–21. https://doi.org/10.1179/joc.2007.19.3.315.

121. Farag SS, Flinn IW, Modali R, Lehman TA, Young D, Byrd JC. Fc gamma RIIIa and Fc gamma RIIa polymorphisms do not predict response to rituximab in B-cell chronic lymphocytic leukemia. Blood. 2004;103(4):1472–4. https://doi.org/10.1182/blood-2003-07-2548.
122. Weng WK, Levy R. Two immunoglobulin G fragment C receptor polymorphisms independently predict response to rituximab in patients with follicular lymphoma. J Clin Oncol. 2003;21(21):3940–7. https://doi.org/10.1200/jco.2003.05.013.
123. Weng WK, Negrin RS, Lavori P, Horning SJ. Immunoglobulin G Fc receptor FcgammaRIIIa 158 V/F polymorphism correlates with rituximab-induced neutropenia after autologous transplantation in patients with non-Hodgkin's lymphoma. J Clin Oncol. 2010;28(2):279–84. https://doi.org/10.1200/jco.2009.25.0274.
124. Li SC, Chen YC, Evens AM, Lee CC, Liao HF, Yu CC, Tung YT, Su YC. Rituximab-induced late-onset neutropenia in newly diagnosed B-cell lymphoma correlates with Fc receptor FcgammaRIIIa 158 (V/F) polymorphism. Am J Hematol. 2010;85(10):810–2. https://doi.org/10.1002/ajh.21818.
125. Keane C, Nourse JP, Crooks P, Nguyen-Van D, Mutsando H, Mollee P, Lea RA, Gandhi MK. Homozygous FCGR3A-158V alleles predispose to late onset neutropenia after CHOP-R for diffuse large B-cell lymphoma. Intern Med J. 2012;42(10):1113–9. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1445-5994.2011.02587.x.
126. Weng WK, Weng WK, Levy R. Immunoglobulin G Fc receptor polymorphisms do not correlate with response to chemotherapy or clinical course in patients with follicular lymphoma. Leuk Lymphoma. 2009;50(9):1494–500. https://doi.org/10.1080/10428190903128660.
127. Lim SH, Vaughan AT, Ashton-Key M, Williams EL, Dixon SV, Chan HT, Beers SA, French RR, Cox KL, Davies AJ, Potter KN, Mockridge CI, Oscier DG, Johnson PW, Cragg MS, Glennie MJ. Fc gamma receptor IIb on target B cells promotes rituximab internalization and reduces clinical efficacy. Blood. 2011;118(9):2530–40. https://doi.org/10.1182/blood-2011-01-330357.
128. Lee CS, Ashton-Key M, Cogliatti S, Rondeau S, Schmitz S-FH, Ghielmini M, Cragg MS, Johnson P. Expression of the inhibitory Fc gamma receptor IIB (FCGR2B, CD32B) on follicular lymphoma cells lowers the response rate to rituximab monotherapy (SAKK 35/98). Br J Haematol. 2015;168(1):145–8. https://doi.org/10.1111/bjh.13071.
129. Shields RL, Lai J, Keck R, O'Connell LY, Hong K, Meng YG, Weikert SH, Presta LG. Lack of fucose on human IgG1 N-linked oligosaccharide improves binding to human Fcgamma RIII and antibody-dependent cellular toxicity. J Biol Chem. 2002;277(30):26733–40. https://doi.org/10.1074/jbc.M202069200.
130. Shinkawa T, Nakamura K, Yamane N, Shoji-Hosaka E, Kanda Y, Sakurada M, Uchida K, Anazawa H, Satoh M, Yamasaki M, Hanai N, Shitara K. The absence of fucose but not the presence of galactose or bisecting N-acetylglucosamine of human IgG1 complex-type oligosaccharides shows the critical role of enhancing antibody-dependent cellular cytotoxicity. J Biol Chem. 2003;278(5):3466–73. https://doi.org/10.1074/jbc.M210665200.
131. Ferrara C, Stuart F, Sondermann P, Brunker P, Umana P. The carbohydrate at FcgammaRIIIa Asn-162. An element required for high affinity binding to non-fucosylated IgG glycoforms. J Biol Chem. 2006;281(8):5032–6. https://doi.org/10.1074/jbc.M510171200.
132. Mössner E, Brünker P, Moser S, Püntener U, Schmidt C, Herter S, Grau R, Gerdes C, Nopora A, van Puijenbroek E, Ferrara C, Sondermann P, Jäger C, Strein P, Fertig G, Friess T, Schüll C, Bauer S, Dal Porto J, Del Nagro C, Dabbagh K, Dyer MJS, Poppema S, Klein C, Umaña P. Increasing the efficacy of CD20 antibody therapy through the engineering of a new type II anti-CD20 antibody with enhanced direct and immune effector cell–mediated B-cell cytotoxicity. Blood. 2010;115(22):4393–402. https://doi.org/10.1182/blood-2009-06-225979.
133. Alduaij W, Ivanov A, Honeychurch J, Cheadle EJ, Potluri S, Lim SH, Shimada K, Chan CHT, Tutt A, Beers SA, Glennie MJ, Cragg MS, Illidge TM. Novel type II anti-CD20 monoclonal antibody (GA101) evokes homotypic adhesion and actin-dependent, lysosome-mediated cell death in B-cell malignancies. Blood. 2011;117(17):4519–29. https://doi.org/10.1182/blood-2010-07-296913.

134. Kern DJ, James BR, Blackwell S, Gassner C, Klein C, Weiner GJ. GA101 induces NK-cell activation and antibody-dependent cellular cytotoxicity more effectively than rituximab when complement is present. Leuk Lymphoma. 2013;54(11):2500–5. https://doi.org/10.3109/10428194.2013.781169.
135. Herter S, Herting F, Mundigl O, Waldhauer I, Weinzierl T, Fauti T, Muth G, Ziegler-Landesberger D, Van Puijenbroek E, Lang S, Duong MN, Reslan L, Gerdes CA, Friess T, Baer U, Burtscher H, Weidner M, Dumontet C, Umana P, Niederfellner G, Bacac M, Klein C. Preclinical activity of the type II CD20 antibody GA101 (obinutuzumab) compared with rituximab and ofatumumab in vitro and in xenograft models. Mol Cancer Ther. 2013;12(10):2031–42. https://doi.org/10.1158/1535-7163.mct-12-1182.
136. Golay J, Da Roit F, Bologna L, Ferrara C, Leusen JH, Rambaldi A, Klein C, Introna M. Glycoengineered CD20 antibody obinutuzumab activates neutrophils and mediates phagocytosis through CD16B more efficiently than rituximab. Blood. 2013;122(20):3482–91. https://doi.org/10.1182/blood-2013-05-504043.
137. Awasthi A, Ayello J, Van de Ven C, Elmacken M, Sabulski A, Barth MJ, Czuczman MS, Islam H, Klein C, Cairo MS. Obinutuzumab (GA101) compared to rituximab significantly enhances cell death and antibody-dependent cytotoxicity and improves overall survival against CD20(+) rituximab-sensitive/-resistant Burkitt lymphoma (BL) and precursor B-acute lymphoblastic leukaemia (pre-B-ALL): potential targeted therapy in patients with poor risk CD20(+) BL and pre-B-ALL. Br J Haematol. 2015;171(5):763–75. https://doi.org/10.1111/bjh.13764.
138. Freeman CL, Morschhauser F, Sehn L, Dixon M, Houghton R, Lamy T, Fingerle-Rowson G, Wassner-Fritsch E, Gribben JG, Hallek M, Salles G, Cartron G. Cytokine release in patients with CLL treated with obinutuzumab and possible relationship with infusion-related reactions. Blood. 2015;126(24):2646–9. https://doi.org/10.1182/blood-2015-09-670802.
139. Goede V, Fischer K, Busch R, Engelke A, Eichhorst B, Wendtner CM, Chagorova T, de la Serna J, Dilhuydy MS, Illmer T, Opat S, Owen CJ, Samoylova O, Kreuzer KA, Stilgenbauer S, Dohner H, Langerak AW, Ritgen M, Kneba M, Asikanius E, Humphrey K, Wenger M, Hallek M. Obinutuzumab plus chlorambucil in patients with CLL and coexisting conditions. N Engl J Med. 2014;370(12):1101–10. https://doi.org/10.1056/NEJMoa1313984.
140. Salles GA, Morschhauser F, Solal-Celigny P, Thieblemont C, Lamy T, Tilly H, Gyan E, Lei G, Wenger M, Wassner-Fritsch E, Cartron G. Obinutuzumab (GA101) in patients with relapsed/refractory indolent non-Hodgkin lymphoma: results from the phase II GAUGUIN study. J Clin Oncol. 2013;31(23):2920–6. https://doi.org/10.1200/jco.2012.46.9718.
141. Byrd JC, Flynn JM, Kipps TJ, Boxer M, Kolibaba KS, Carlile DJ, Fingerle-Rowson G, Tyson N, Hirata J, Sharman JP. Randomized phase 2 study of obinutuzumab monotherapy in symptomatic, previously untreated chronic lymphocytic leukemia. Blood. 2016;127(1):79–86. https://doi.org/10.1182/blood-2015-03-634394.
142. Sehn LH, Chua N, Mayer J, Dueck G, Trneny M, Bouabdallah K, Fowler N, Delwail V, Press O, Salles G, Gribben J, Lennard A, Lugtenburg PJ, Dimier N, Wassner-Fritsch E, Fingerle-Rowson G, Cheson BD. Obinutuzumab plus bendamustine versus bendamustine monotherapy in patients with rituximab-refractory indolent non-Hodgkin lymphoma (GADOLIN): a randomised, controlled, open-label, multicentre, phase 3 trial. Lancet Oncol. 2016;17(8):1081–93. https://doi.org/10.1016/s1470-2045(16)30097-3.
143. Morschhauser FA, Cartron G, Thieblemont C, Solal-Céligny P, Haioun C, Bouabdallah R, Feugier P, Bouabdallah K, Asikanius E, Lei G, Wenger M, Wassner-Fritsch E, Salles GA. Obinutuzumab (GA101) monotherapy in relapsed/refractory diffuse large B-cell lymphoma or mantle-cell lymphoma: results from the phase II GAUGUIN study. J Clin Oncol. 2013;31(23):2912–9. https://doi.org/10.1200/jco.2012.46.9585.
144. Vitolo U, Trneny M, Belada D, Burke JM, Carella AM, Chua N, Abrisqueta P, Demeter J, Flinn I, Hong X, Kim WS, Pinto A, Shi YK, Tatsumi Y, Oestergaard MZ, Wenger M, Fingerle-Rowson G, Catalani O, Nielsen T, Martelli M, Sehn LH. Obinutuzumab or rituximab plus cyclophosphamide, doxorubicin, vincristine, and prednisone in previously untreated

diffuse large B-cell lymphoma. J Clin Oncol. 2017;35(31):3529–37. https://doi.org/10.1200/jco.2017.73.3402.
145. Manshouri T, K-a D, Wang X, Giles FJ, O'Brien SM, Saffer H, Thomas D, Jilani I, Kantarjian HM, Keating MJ, Albitar M. Circulating CD20 is detectable in the plasma of patients with chronic lymphocytic leukemia and is of prognostic significance. Blood. 2003;101(7):2507–13. https://doi.org/10.1182/blood-2002-06-1639.
146. Giles FJ, Vose JM, Do KA, Johnson MM, Manshouri T, Bociek G, Bierman PJ, O'Brien SM, Keating MJ, Kantarjian HM, Armitage JO, Albitar M. Circulating CD20 and CD52 in patients with non-Hodgkin's lymphoma or Hodgkin's disease. Br J Haematol. 2003;123(5):850–7.
147. Alatrash G, Albitar M, O'Brien S, Wang X, Manshouri T, Faderl S, Ferrajoli A, Burger J, Garcia-Manero G, Kantarjian HM, Lerner S, Keating MJ, Wierda WG. Circulating CD52 and CD20 levels at end of treatment predict for progression and survival in patients with chronic lymphocytic leukaemia treated with fludarabine, cyclophosphamide and rituximab (FCR). Br J Haematol. 2010;148(3):386–93. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1365-2141.2009.07965.x.
148. Manshouri T, Do KA, Wang X, Giles FJ, O'Brien SM, Saffer H, Thomas D, Jilani I, Kantarjian HM, Keating MJ, Albitar M. Circulating CD20 is detectable in the plasma of patients with chronic lymphocytic leukemia and is of prognostic significance. Blood. 2003;101(7):2507–13. https://doi.org/10.1182/blood-2002-06-1639.
149. Keating MJ, O'Brien S, Albitar M. Emerging information on the use of rituximab in chronic lymphocytic leukemia. Semin Oncol. 2002;29(1 Suppl 2):70–4.
150. Jäger U, Fridrik M, Zeitlinger M, Heintel D, Hopfinger G, Burgstaller S, Mannhalter C, Oberaigner W, Porpaczy E, Skrabs C, Einberger C, Drach J, Raderer M, Gaiger A, Putman M, Greil R. Rituximab serum concentrations during immuno-chemotherapy of follicular lymphoma correlate with patient gender, bone marrow infiltration and clinical response. Haematologica. 2012;97(9):1431–8. https://doi.org/10.3324/haematol.2011.059246.
151. Pfreundschuh M, Müller C, Zeynalova S, Kuhnt E, Wiesen MHJ, Held G, Rixecker T, Poeschel V, Zwick C, Reiser M, Schmitz N, Murawski N. Suboptimal dosing of rituximab in male and female patients with DLBCL. Blood. 2014;123(5):640–6. https://doi.org/10.1182/blood-2013-07-517037.
152. Berinstein NL, Grillo-Lopez AJ, White CA, Bence-Bruckler I, Maloney D, Czuczman M, Green D, Rosenberg J, McLaughlin P, Shen D. Association of serum Rituximab (IDEC-C2B8) concentration and anti-tumor response in the treatment of recurrent low-grade or follicular non-Hodgkin's lymphoma. Ann Oncol. 1998;9(9):995–1001. https://doi.org/10.1023/A:1008416911099.
153. Jazirehi AR, Vega MI, Bonavida B. Development of rituximab-resistant lymphoma clones with altered cell signaling and cross-resistance to chemotherapy. Cancer Res. 2007;67(3):1270–81. https://doi.org/10.1158/0008-5472.Can-06-2184.
154. Olejniczak SH, Hernandez-Ilizaliturri FJ, Clements JL, Czuczman MS. Acquired resistance to rituximab is associated with chemotherapy resistance resulting from decreased Bax and Bak expression. Clin Cancer Res. 2008;14(5):1550–60. https://doi.org/10.1158/1078-0432.Ccr-07-1255.
155. Friess T, Gerdes C, Nopora A, Patre M, Preiss S, van Puijenbroek E, Schuell C, Bauer S, Umana P, Klein C. GA101, a novel humanized type II CD20 antibody with glycoengineered Fc and enhanced cell death induction, mediates superior efficacy in a variety of NHL xenograft models in comparison to Rituximab. Blood. 2007;110(11):2338.
156. Honeychurch J, Alduaij W, Azizyan M, Cheadle EJ, Pelicano H, Ivanov A, Huang P, Cragg MS, Illidge TM. Antibody-induced nonapoptotic cell death in human lymphoma and leukemia cells is mediated through a novel reactive oxygen species-dependent pathway. Blood. 2012;119(15):3523–33. https://doi.org/10.1182/blood-2011-12-395541.
157. Awasthi A, Rolland DCM, Ayello J, van de Ven C, Basrur V, Conlon K, Fermin D, Barth MJ, Klein C, Elenitoba-Johnson KSJ, Lim MS, Cairo MS. A comparative global phosphoproteomics analysis of obinutuzumab (GA101) versus rituximab (RTX) against RTX sensitive and resistant Burkitt lymphoma (BL) demonstrates differential phosphorylation of

signaling pathway proteins after treatment. Oncotarget. 2017;8(69):113895–909. https://doi.org/10.18632/oncotarget.23040.
158. Decaup E, Jean C, Laurent C, Gravelle P, Fruchon S, Capilla F, Marrot A, Al Saati T, Frenois FX, Laurent G, Klein C, Varoqueaux N, Savina A, Fournie JJ, Bezombes C. Anti-tumor activity of obinutuzumab and rituximab in a follicular lymphoma 3D model. Blood Cancer J. 2013;3:e131. https://doi.org/10.1038/bcj.2013.32.
159. Chihara D, Fanale MA. Management of anaplastic large cell lymphoma. Hematol Oncol Clin North Am. 2017;31(2):209–22. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.hoc.2016.11.001.
160. Alperovich A, Younes A. Targeting CD30 using Brentuximab Vedotin in the treatment of Hodgkin lymphoma. Cancer J. 2016;22(1):23–6. https://doi.org/10.1097/ppo.0000000000000168.
161. Bartlett NL, Smith MR, Siddiqi T, Advani RH, O'Connor OA, Sharman JP, Feldman T, Savage KJ, Shustov AR, Diefenbach CS, Oki Y, Palanca-Wessels MC, Uttarwar M, Li M, Yang J, Jacobsen ED. Brentuximab vedotin activity in diffuse large B-cell lymphoma with CD30 undetectable by visual assessment of conventional immunohistochemistry. Leuk Lymphoma. 2017;58(7):1607–16. https://doi.org/10.1080/10428194.2016.1256481.
162. Venugopal P, Leslie WT, O'Brien T, Gregory SA. CD20-negative relapse after 131I–Anti-CD20 therapy. J Clin Oncol. 1999;17(11):3692–3. https://doi.org/10.1200/jco.1999.17.11.3692.
163. Al-Rohil RN, Torres-Cabala CA, Patel A, Tetzlaff MT, Ivan D, Nagarajan P, Curry JL, Miranda RN, Duvic M, Prieto VG, Aung PP. Loss of CD30 expression after treatment with brentuximab vedotin in a patient with anaplastic large cell lymphoma: a novel finding. J Cutan Pathol. 2016;43(12):1161–6. https://doi.org/10.1111/cup.12797.
164. Arai H, Furuichi S, Nakamura Y, Nakamura Y, Ichikawa M, Mitani K. ALK-negative anaplastic large cell lymphoma with loss of CD30 expression during treatment with brentuximab vedotin. [Rinsho ketsueki] Jpn J Clin Hematol. 2016;57(5):634–7. https://doi.org/10.11406/rinketsu.57.634.
165. Chen R, Hou J, Newman E, Kim Y, Donohue C, Liu X, Thomas SH, Forman SJ, Kane SE. CD30 downregulation, MMAE resistance, and MDR1 upregulation are all associated with resistance to Brentuximab Vedotin. Mol Cancer Ther. 2015;14(6):1376–84. https://doi.org/10.1158/1535-7163.Mct-15-0036.
166. Dornan D, Bennett F, Chen Y, Dennis M, Eaton D, Elkins K, French D, Go MAT, Jack A, Junutula JR, Koeppen H, Lau J, McBride J, Rawstron A, Shi X, Yu N, Yu S-F, Yue P, Zheng B, Ebens A, Polson AG. Therapeutic potential of an anti-CD79b antibody–drug conjugate, anti–CD79b-vc-MMAE, for the treatment of non-Hodgkin lymphoma. Blood. 2009;114(13):2721–9. https://doi.org/10.1182/blood-2009-02-205500.
167. Kohnke T, Krupka C, Tischer J, Knosel T, Subklewe M. Increase of PD-L1 expressing B-precursor ALL cells in a patient resistant to the CD19/CD3-bispecific T cell engager antibody blinatumomab. J Hematol Oncol. 2015;8:111. https://doi.org/10.1186/s13045-015-0213-6.
168. Braig F, Brandt A, Goebeler M, Tony HP, Kurze AK, Nollau P, Bumm T, Bottcher S, Bargou RC, Binder M. Resistance to anti-CD19/CD3 BiTE in acute lymphoblastic leukemia may be mediated by disrupted CD19 membrane trafficking. Blood. 2017;129(1):100–4. https://doi.org/10.1182/blood-2016-05-718395.
169. Aldoss I, Song J, Stiller T, Nguyen T, Palmer J, O'Donnell M, Stein AS, Marcucci G, Forman S, Pullarkat V. Correlates of resistance and relapse during blinatumomab therapy for relapsed/refractory acute lymphoblastic leukemia. Am J Hematol. 2017;92(9):858–65. https://doi.org/10.1002/ajh.24783.
170. Sun LL, Ellerman D, Mathieu M, Hristopoulos M, Chen X, Li Y, Yan X, Clark R, Reyes A, Stefanich E, Mai E, Young J, Johnson C, Huseni M, Wang X, Chen Y, Wang P, Wang H, Dybdal N, Chu YW, Chiorazzi N, Scheer JM, Junttila T, Totpal K, Dennis MS, Ebens AJ. Anti-CD20/CD3 T cell-dependent bispecific antibody for the treatment of B cell malignancies. Sci Transl Med. 2015;7(287):287ra270. https://doi.org/10.1126/scitranslmed.aaa4802.

Chapter 3
Resistance to Antibody-Drug Conjugate

Jessica Hochberg and Sarah Alexander

Abstract Immune therapies have shown significant efficacy in the treatment of pediatric lymphomas. Monoclonal antibodies, whether naked or conjugated have emerged as an attractive option for targeted therapy while minimizing toxicities. Monoclonal antibodies conjugated to small molecule drugs were developed as a way to combine highly potent agents with tumor specificity. Current challenges include careful selection of tumor targets, the management of potential toxicities, identification of ideal patient selection and therapy regimens, and a better understanding of antibody-drug conjugates (ADC) mechanisms of action and resistance. The right combination is critical for a successful ADC. Mechanisms of resistance to ADCs can be inherited to the ADC or acquired by the host environment and can developed against each of the individual components of the ADC. Given the rational design of ADCs, there is the ability to modify each of the components to develop improved agents that can overcome resistance.

Keywords Pediatrics · Lymphoma · Antibody · Conjugates · Resistance Immunotherapy

Abbreviations

ABVD	Doxorubicin, Bleomycin, Vinblastine, Dacarbazine
ADC	Antibody-Drug Conjugate
ADCC	Antibody Dependent Cellular Cytotoxicity

J. Hochberg (✉)
Division of Hematology, Oncology & Stem Cell Transplant, Maria Fareri Children's Hospital at Westchester Medical Center, New York Medical College, Valhalla, NY, USA
e-mail: Jessica_Hochberg@nymc.edu

S. Alexander
Division of Haematology/Oncology, The Hospital for Sick Children, Toronto, ON, Canada
e-mail: Sarah.alexander@sickkids.ca

A. C. Xavier, M. S. Cairo (eds.), *Resistance to Targeted Therapies in Lymphomas*, Resistance to Targeted Anti-Cancer Therapeutics 21,
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-24424-8_3

Ag-Ab	Antigen-Antibody
AKT	Activated Tyrosine Kinase
ALCL	Anaplastic Large Cell Lymphoma
ALL	Acute Lymphoblastic Leukemia
AML	Acute Myeloid Leukemia
AVD	Doxorubicin, Vinblastine, Dacarbazine
Bv	Brentuximab Vedotin
CI	Confidence Interval
COG	Children's Oncology Group
CR	Complete Response
DLBCL	Diffuse Large B-Cell Lymphoma
FDA	Food and Drug Administration
GO	Gemtuzumab Ozogamicin
HL	Hodgkin Lymphoma
HR	Hazard Ratio
IO	Inotuzumab Ozogamicin
mAB	Monoclonal Antibody
MF	Mycosis Fungoides
MMAE	Monomethylauristatin E
NHL	Non-Hodgkin Lymphoma
OR	Objective Response
pcALCL	Primary cutaneous Anaplastic Large Cell Lymphoma
PFS	Progression-Free Survival
RR	Response Rate

Introduction

Immune therapies play an increasing role in the treatment of cancer overall and have shown significant efficacy in the treatment of Hodgkin (HL) and Non-Hodgkin Lymphoma (NHL). Monoclonal antibodies, such as the CD20 targeted agent rituximab, emerged as an attractive option for targeted therapy while minimizing toxicities. Lessons learned from the use of rituximab in NHL have shown that monoclonal antibodies can be used alone and in combination with multi-agent chemotherapy to improve outcomes in both pediatric and adult lymphoma. Furthermore, the use of novel immune therapy agents allows for the potential reduction in cytotoxic therapies and minimization of long term side effects. However, the clinical efficacy of naked antibodies as single agents remains limited. Thus, monoclonal antibodies conjugated to small molecule drugs were developed as a way to combine highly potent agents with tumor specificity. Over the past 30 years of antibody-drug conjugate (ADC) research, several new linkers, and conjugation strategies have been discovered. Designing an effective ADC is a complex process, requiring thoughtful combination of optimal antibody target, linker, and tolerable drug. Lessons learned from the first-generation of ADC's have guided the design of improved compounds which are now in clinical trials. Current challenges include

careful selection of tumor targets, the management of potential toxicities, identification of ideal patient selection and therapy regimens, and a better understanding of ADC mechanisms of action and resistance. Here we will review the structure and mechanisms of resistance to ADCs, specifically as they relate to lymphoma.

ADC Structure and Components

ADCs are typically comprised of a fully humanized monoclonal antibody (mAb) targeting an antigen specifically/preferentially expressed on tumor cells, a cytotoxic drug, or payload, and a suitable linker (Fig. 3.1) [1]. The right combination is

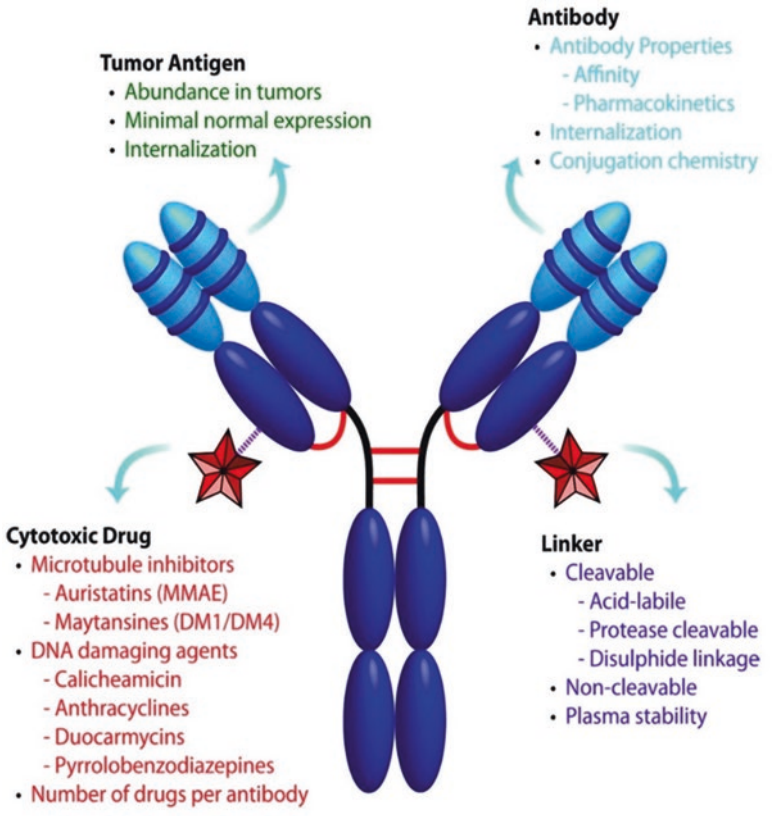


Fig. 3.1 Critical factors that influence ADC therapeutics. ADCs consist of a cytotoxic drug conjugated to a monoclonal antibody by means of a select linker. These components all affect ADC performance and their optimization is essential for development of successful conjugates. (from Siler Panowski, Sunil Bhakta, Helga Raab, Paul Polakis & Jagath R Junutula (2014) Site-specific antibody drug conjugates for cancer therapy, mAbs, 6:1, 34–45, DOI: https://doi.org/10.4161/mabs.27022)

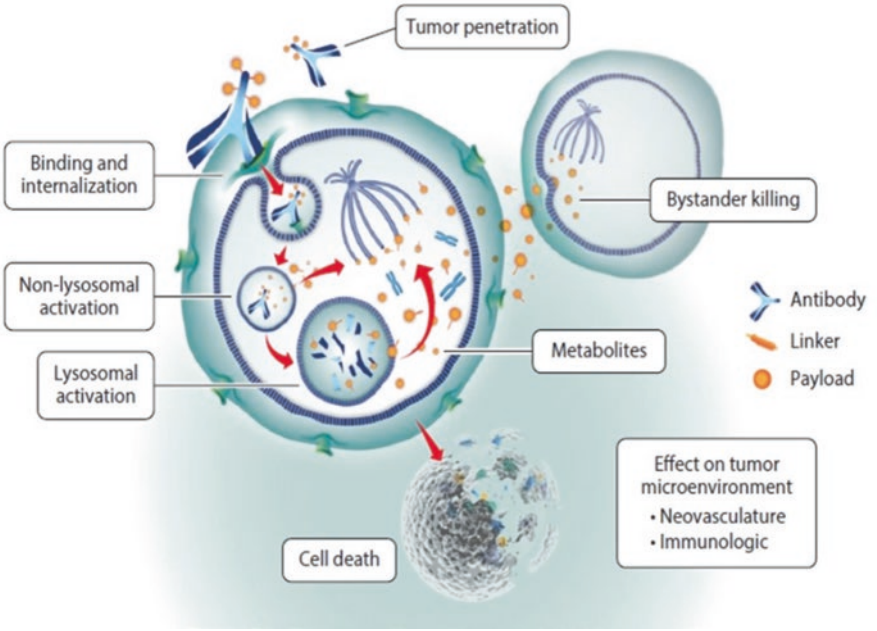


Fig. 3.2 The ADC must enter tumor tissue from the vasculature, bind to its cell surface target, and then be internalized via the endosome–lysosome pathway, where the linker is cleaved and/or the antibody is degraded to release the payload, which ultimately diffuses into the cytoplasm to reach its target. (*from* John M. Lambert and Anna Berkenblit, Antibody–Drug Conjugates for Cancer Treatment. Annu. Rev. Med. 2018. 69:191–207)

critical for a successful ADC. The target antigen must be highly expressed on the surface of the tumor cells with relatively little expression on normal cells, thus minimizing the chances of off target cytotoxicity. Upon binding, the antibody must be absorbed through rapid internalization followed by lysosomal degradation, and finally release of the cytotoxic drug inside the cell (Fig. 3.2) [1–3].

Antibody Selection

The selection of mAbs for specific tumor targeting leads to ADCs precision acting only on cancer cells, increasing the therapeutic index while minimizing off-target side effects. Therefore, determining which antigen to target is the first and most important step in ADC development [2]. Overexpression on tumor cells with minimal to no expression on healthy cells ensures specific targeting delivery of cytotoxic agents. Monoclonal antibodies also must have the ability to bind strongly and then penetrate tumor. If the target antigen is shed easily from tumor tissues or if the antibody does not strongly bind, systemic clearance from

circulation can alter the potency and pharmacokinetics of the ADC [1]. There must remain a balance between internalization and disassociation rates of the antigen-antibody (Ag-Ab) complexes in order to ensure effective drug utilization. Isotype selection of the mAb influences the ability of the ADC to stimulate immune system mediated actions with IgG1 able to support antibody-dependent cellular cytotoxicity (ADCC), whereas IgG2 and IgG4 are limited in this function [4]. Minimizing immune system actions can help limit unwanted side effects [1].

Cytotoxic Agents

The most frequently used cytotoxic agents are DNA damaging (such as calicheamicin analogs) or anti-microtubule compounds (such as auristatin analogs) [5]. Other drugs used in clinical-stage ADCs are topoisomerase inhibitors, DNA-alkylators, and RNA polymerase II inhibitors [1]. Drugs are selected for high cytotoxicity, so that they can destroy tumor cells at intracellular concentrations achieved after ADC delivery.

Linker Design

One of the main challenges in developing ADCs is to incorporate a linker that has high stability in systemic circulation for a prolonged period over several days and efficient lysosomal release of the drug only after internalization into the tumor. Premature release of drugs in the circulation can lead to systemic toxicity and a lower overall efficacy. Linkers are generally divided as cleavable and non-cleavable [2]. Cleavable linkers can be acid sensitive, only hydrolyzed in the lower pH environment of the lysosome; glutathione-sensitive disulfide linkers, where tumor cells express elevated levels of thiols; or lysosomal protease-sensitive peptide linkers. Non-cleavable linkers have better plasma stability which is beneficial in decreasing plasma drug release. Stability is achieved by attaching the linker to amino acid residues of the mAb through a non-reducible bond [2, 3, 6].

ADC in Lymphoma

At the time of writing of this review there is one ADC, brentuximab vedotin (Bv), which is Food and Drug Administration (FDA) approved for the treatment of patients with HL and NHL. In addition, three ADCs are approved for other diseases including gemtuzumab ozogamicin for the treatment of newly-diagnosed adult

patients with CD33-positive acute myeloid leukemia (AML) and for children and adults with relapsed or refractory CD33-positive AML, inotuzumab ozogamicin (IO) for adults with relapsed or refractory B-cell precursor acute lymphoblastic leukemia (ALL) and trastuzumab emtansine for patients with HER2 positive metastatic breast cancer. There are dozens of ADCs in development, including more than 20 being investigated for the treatment of patients with HL and NHL [7].

Brentuximab Vedotin

Bv is a chimeric anti-CD30 monoclonal antibody linked by a cathepsin B sensitive cleavable dipeptide valine-citruline linker to monomethylauristatin E (MMAE). Bv was the first ADC approved by the FDA, originally in 2011 for the treatment of patients with relapsed anaplastic large cell lymphoma (ALCL) following systemic chemotherapy and for those with relapsed HL following autologous stem cell transplant. Approval for the treatment of patients with relapsed and refractory ALCL was based on a phase 2 study in adults in which Bv was given at a dose of 1.8 mg per kilogram every 3 weeks. In this trial, 50 out of 58 (86%) patients achieved an objective response (OR), with 57% achieving complete response (CR) and 97% showing tumor reduction [8]. Subsequently, indications for Bv expanded to include treatment of adults with primary cutaneous ALCL (pcALCL) or CD30 negative expressing mycosis fungoides (MF) who have received prior systemic therapy. In addition the ECHELON-1 study in adults with newly diagnosed advanced stage HL demonstrated that Bv in combination with conventional AVD (doxorubicin, vinblastine, dacarbazine) chemotherapy (A + AVD) demonstrated 2-year modified progression-free survival (PFS) rates in the A + AVD and ABVD (doxorubicin, bleomycin, vinblastine, dacarbazine) groups of 82.1% [95% confidence interval (CI_{95}), 78.8–85.0] and 77.2% (CI_{95}, 73.7–80.4), respectively, with a hazard ratio (HR) for an event of progression, death, or modified progression of 0.77; CI_{95}, 0.60–0.98; P = 0.04) [9, 10].

Bv has been shown to be active in adult patients with relapsed and refractory diffuse large B cell lymphoma (DLBCL) with CD30 expression [11]. Safety of single agent Bv has been studied in children with relapsed and refractory HL and ALCL as well [12]. The safety and efficacy of Bv in combination with conventional chemotherapy for children with ALCL and for those with HL is being investigated through two Children's Oncology Group (COG) trials (www.clinicaltrials.gov identifiers NCT01979536 and NCT02166463).

Inotuzumab Ozogamicin

Inotuzumab ozogamicin (IO) is a humanized anti-CD22 monoclonal antibody with a cleavable hydrazine linker attached to N-acetyl-gamma-calicheamicin. It was FDA approved in 2017 for the treatment of adult patients with relapsed or

refractory precursor-B ALL. IO has been studied in multiple trials in adults with relapsed and refractory CD 22 positive indolent and aggressive B cell lymphomas as a single agent, in combination with rituximab and in combination with conventional chemotherapy with most studies describing favorable response rates while others showed no clear advantage when compared to alternate regimens [13–15].

ADC for Lymphoma in Development

There are numerous ADCs in all stages of pre-clinical and clinical trial development. Anti-CD19 agents that have undergone phase 1/2 studies in patients with B-lineage NHL include denintuzumab mafotin, coltuximab ravtansine and loncastuximab tesirine [16–19]. Pinatuzumab vedotin is a CD22-targeted ADC linked to MMAE that has and is being studies as a single agent and in combination with rituximab and obinutuzumab [20]. Polatuzumab vedotin is an anti-CD79b antibody conjugated to MMAE that has and is being investigated as a single agent and in combination with rituximab, obinutuzumab, conventional chemotherapy regimens in patents with DLBCL [21–23]. Additional ADC directed at CD19, 22 and 79b are in earlier phase clinical trials in addition to those directed at CD37, 70 and 25 [7].

General Mechanisms of Resistance

Mechanisms of resistance to ADCs can be inherent to the ADC or acquired by the host environment and can develop against each of the individual components of the ADC, namely the mAb, linker mechanism or the cytotoxic drug (Fig. 3.3) [6].

Antigen-Related Resistance

Changes in the levels of the antigen recognized by the mAb can occur through down regulation of cell surface protein expression, shedding of antigen or high level of expression of antigen in other tissues [6]. If the mAb is unable to bind sufficiently to the target cell, potency will be limited. Other mechanisms of antigen-related resistance may include masking or truncation of the epitope, or the presence of additional ligands to the antigen although these have not yet been reported in preclinical models of ADCs for lymphoma.

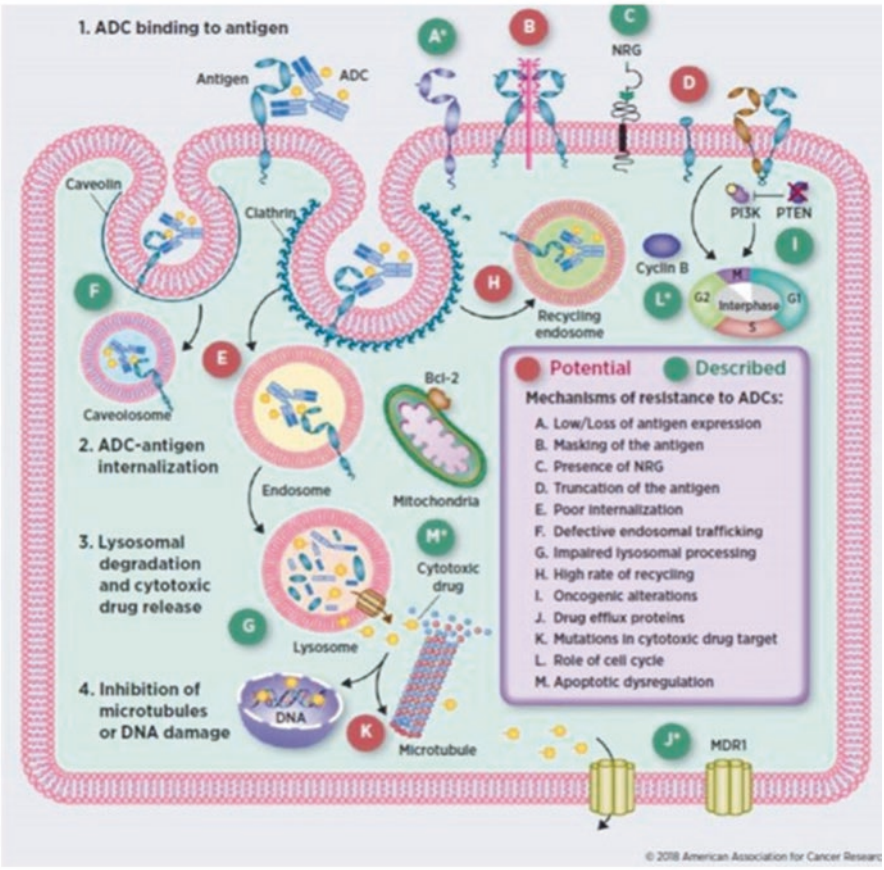


Fig. 3.3 The antibody binds to its target on the plasma membrane (1); then, ADC-target complexes enter cells via receptor-mediated endocytosis (2). The internalized complexes are initially contained within endocytic vesicles that fuse to become early endosomes and eventually mature to lysosomes (3). The ADC undergoes catabolism to release the cytotoxic agent, which can then be transported from the lumen of lysosomes to the cytosol. The intracellular cytotoxic agent exerts its action, generally damaging DNA or inhibiting microtubule polymerization (4), which ultimately leads to cell death. Alterations in any of these events may lead to resistance acquisition. Circled letters indicate potential (red) or already described in the literature (green) mechanisms of resistance to ADCs. The asterisks indicate mechanisms of resistance verified using patient-derived material. (*from* Sara García-Alonso, Alberto Ocana, and Atanasio Pandiella, Resistance to Antibody–Drug Conjugates. Cancer Res; 78 (9) May 1, 2018)

Defects in Internalization and Lysosomal Function

ADC efficacy requires endocytosis of the antibody into the cell (Fig. 3.3) [6]. Endocytosis can occur by different internalization routes which have all been implicated in possible resistance mechanisms [24]. Once delivered, impaired lysosomal

function can occur as a result of low proteolytic activity due to elevations in lysosomal pH [25].

Drug Efflux Pumps

A common mechanism of resistance for chemotherapies is the elimination of the agent from the cellular cytoplasm by drug efflux pumps. Commonly used cytotoxic agents, such as calicheamicin, auristatins, maytansines, taxanes, and doxorubicin are well-known substrates of efflux transporters [26–28].

Signaling Pathways and Apoptosis

Activation of downstream signaling pathways may contribute to the acquisition of resistance to ADCs. Activated PI3K/AKT signaling has been associated with gemtuzumab ozogamicin (GO) resistance *in vitro* in primary AML cells and it has been shown that the AKT inhibitor MK-2206 significantly sensitized resistant cells to GO or free calicheamicin [29]. A role for the pro-apoptotic proteins BAX and BAK in the regulation of GO sensitivity in AML has also been described previously as well as the overexpression of the anti-apoptotic proteins BCL-2 and BCL-X [30].

Mechanisms of Resistance to ADC in Lymphoma

In the pivotal phase 2 trial of Bv in adults with relapsed and refractory ALCL, the overall response rate (RR) was 86% and, of those, 57% obtained a CR [8]. However, despite ongoing therapy, all of the patients who did not achieve a CR eventually developed progressive disease. Understanding the mechanisms for those who had no response or loss of response is currently a focus on intense research.

Loss of Cell Surface Antigen

In vitro data using ALCL-derived cell lines selected for resistance to Bv has demonstrated that a mechanism for the evolution of resistance is the downregulation of CD30 expression [31]. This mechanism of ADC resistance has been suggested in case reports of individuals treated with Bv for CD30 positive lymphomas who had initially responsive disease and were found to have had loss of CD30 expression on pathologic samples at the time of disease progression [32–34].

Drug Efflux Pumps

In HL cell lines resistant to Bv, increased MDR1 drug exporter expression have been identified as possible mechanism of drug resistance [35]. Additionally, in a mouse xenograft model of Bv resistant cell lines with MDR1 upregulation, resistance was overcome by the addition of the MDR1 inhibitor cyclosporine [31]. MDR1 activity has been demonstrated *in vitro* to be associated with IO resistance in NHL and cell lines [28]. Similarly in NHL derived cells lines resistant to pinatuzumab vedotin and polatuzumab vedotin, MDR1 expression was identified as being the major driver of drug resistance. In this model, resistance was able to be overcome by replacing the MMAE moiety with an anthracycline derivative, NMS249, in the ADC complex leading the authors to hypothesize that the return of drug sensitivity was based on NMS249 being a poor substrate for MDR1.

Changes in Apoptotic Regulation

BCL-XL is a member of the BCL-2 family and is a mitochondrial transmembrane anti-apoptotic protein. It is associated with chemotherapy resistance and poor prognosis in adults with follicular lymphoma [36]. *In vitro* studies of an anti-CD79b-vc-MMAE ADC demonstrated that the expression level of BCL-XL was associated with less sensitivity to the drug [37]. In a subsequent xenograft model, the authors were able to demonstrate that the BCL-2 inhibitor ABT-263 (known currently as navitoclax) was able to restore tumor responsiveness to treatment with anti–CD79b-vc-MMAE.

Strategies for ADC Optimization

Given the rational design of ADCs, there is the ability to modify each of the components to develop improved agents that can overcome resistance. Low levels of antigen on tumor cells can be overcome by designing ADCs that have a significant bystander effect or by utilizing bispecific mAbs to recruit additional cytolytic immune cells [6]. Drug efflux pumps can be avoided by utilizing agents that are poor substrates for MDR1 or modifying the linker used for delivery [6]. Effective linker designs using hydrophobic compounds with homogenous drug-antibody conjugation were found to have enhanced potency [2]. Drug-to-antibody ratios also become very important in determining ADC efficacy. Drug-to-antibody ratio is defined as the number of drug molecules per mAb. This determines the dose needed to produce the desired efficacy. There is a limited number of drug molecules that can be efficiently delivered to the target site which significantly contributes to the pharmacokinetics of the ADC. If fewer drug molecules are conjugated per mAb, the

ADC system will not be effective clinically. However, too many drug molecules per mAb will make the ADC unstable, toxic and may lead to aggregation and increased immunogenic reactions [2, 38]. Most ADCs in current clinical development utilize conjugation to either lysine or cysteine residues of the antibody, which has led to an average drug-to-antibody ratio in the range of 3.5–4.0. This ratio was initially thought to minimize the amount of non-conjugated antibody and avoid too high of a ratio which can cause issues with manufacturing and stability [3]. Newer methods of ADC production have been developed for site-specific conjugation, which can enable lower drug-to-antibody ratios while avoiding excessive modification of the antibody. This approach is especially useful for highly potent or hydrophobic drugs, for which drug-to-antibody ratios greater than 2 are undesirable [3]. Likely, the best strategy for overcoming ADC resistance will be to combine with other cytotoxic and immune therapies such as multidrug chemotherapy regimens or with checkpoint blockade [39].

Conclusion

Drug resistance, either inherent or acquired, remains an obstacle to efficacy in oncology treatment. The need to develop improved treatment paradigms which utilize the power of the immune system with the potential to minimize short and long term side effects of therapy make ADCs attractive novel agents. However, many of the same resistance concerns are emerging and novel mechanisms of ADC resistance are being described with increased use. Further identification and characterization of these mechanisms of resistance will lead to more optimal ADC design with improved efficacy for all.

Disclosure of Conflict of Interest No potential conflicts of interest were disclosed.

References

1. Panowski S, Bhakta S, Raab H, Polakis P, Junutula JR. Site-specific antibody drug conjugates for cancer therapy. MAbs. 2014;6(1):34–45.
2. Dan N, Setua S, Kashyap VK, Khan S, Jaggi M, Yallapu MM, et al. Antibody-drug conjugates for Cancer therapy: chemistry to clinical implications. Pharmaceuticals (Basel). 2018;11(2)
3. Lambert JM, Berkenblit A. Antibody-drug conjugates for Cancer treatment. Annu Rev Med. 2018;69:191–207.
4. Wang X, Mathieu M, Brezski RJ. IgG Fc engineering to modulate antibody effector functions. Protein Cell. 2018;9(1):63–73.
5. Beck A, Goetsch L, Dumontet C, Corvaia N. Strategies and challenges for the next generation of antibody-drug conjugates. Nat Rev Drug Discov. 2017;16(5):315–37.
6. Garcia-Alonso S, Ocana A, Pandiella A. Resistance to antibody-drug conjugates. Cancer Res. 2018;78(9):2159–65.

7. Herrera AF, Molina A. Investigational antibody-drug conjugates for treatment of B-lineage malignancies. Clin Lymphoma Myeloma Leuk. 2018;18(7):452–68 e4.
8. Pro B, Advani R, Brice P, Bartlett NL, Rosenblatt JD, Illidge T, et al. Brentuximab vedotin (SGN-35) in patients with relapsed or refractory systemic anaplastic large-cell lymphoma: results of a phase II study. J Clin Oncol. 2012;30(18):2190–6.
9. Connors JM, Radford JA. Brentuximab Vedotin for stage III or IV Hodgkin's lymphoma. N Engl J Med. 2018;378(16):1560–1.
10. Adcetris. (brentuximab vedotin) [package insert]; FDA reference ID: 4237000; Seattle genetics, Bothell. 2011.
11. Jacobsen ED, Sharman JP, Oki Y, Advani RH, Winter JN, Bello CM, et al. Brentuximab vedotin demonstrates objective responses in a phase 2 study of relapsed/refractory DLBCL with variable CD30 expression. Blood. 2015;125(9):1394–402.
12. Locatelli F, Neville KA, Rosolen A, Landman-Parker J, Aladjidi N, Beishuizen A, Daw S, Gore L, Franklin AR, Fasanmade A, Wang J, Sachs J. Phase 1/2 study of Brentuximab Vedotin in pediatric patients with relapsed or refractory (R/R) Hodgkin Lymphoma (HL) or Systemic Anaplastic Large-Cell Lymphoma (sALCL): preliminary phase 2 data for Brentuximab Vedotin 1.8 mg/kg in the HL study arm. Blood. 2013;122(21):4378.
13. Goy A, Forero A, Wagner-Johnston N, Christopher Ehmann W, Tsai M, Hatake K, et al. A phase 2 study of inotuzumab ozogamicin in patients with indolent B-cell non-Hodgkin lymphoma refractory to rituximab alone, rituximab and chemotherapy, or radioimmunotherapy. Br J Haematol. 2016;174(4):571–81.
14. Fayad L, Offner F, Smith MR, Verhoef G, Johnson P, Kaufman JL, et al. Safety and clinical activity of a combination therapy comprising two antibody-based targeting agents for the treatment of non-Hodgkin lymphoma: results of a phase I/II study evaluating the immunoconjugate inotuzumab ozogamicin with rituximab. J Clin Oncol. 2013;31(5):573–83.
15. Dang NH, Ogura M, Castaigne S, Fayad LE, Jerkeman M, Radford J, et al. Randomized, phase 3 trial of inotuzumab ozogamicin plus rituximab versus chemotherapy plus rituximab for relapsed/refractory aggressive B-cell non-Hodgkin lymphoma. Br J Haematol. 2018;182(4):583–6.
16. Younes A, Kim S, Romaguera J, Copeland A, Farial Sde C, Kwak LW, et al. Phase I multidose-escalation study of the anti-CD19 maytansinoid immunoconjugate SAR3419 administered by intravenous infusion every 3 weeks to patients with relapsed/refractory B-cell lymphoma. J Clin Oncol. 2012;30(22):2776–82.
17. Coiffier B, Thieblemont C, de Guibert S, Dupuis J, Ribrag V, Bouabdallah R, et al. A phase II, single-arm, multicentre study of coltuximab ravtansine (SAR3419) and rituximab in patients with relapsed or refractory diffuse large B-cell lymphoma. Br J Haematol. 2016;173(5):722–30.
18. Moskowitz CH, Fanale MA, Shah BD, Advani RH, Chen R, Kim S, Kostic A, Liu T, Peng J, Forero-Torres A. A phase 1 study of Denintuzumab Mafodotin (SGN-CD19A) in relapsed/Refactory B-lineage non-Hodgkin lymphoma. Blood. 2015;126(23):182.
19. Kahl BS, Hamadani M, Caimi P, Carlo-Stella C, Reid E, Feingold J, Ardeshna KM, et al. Encouraging early results from the first in-human clinical trial of ADCT-402 (Loncastuximab Tesirine), a novel Pyrrolobenzodiazepine-based antibody drug conjugate, in relapsed/refractory B-cell lineage non-Hodgkin lymphoma. Blood. 2017;130:149.
20. Advani RH, Lebovic D, Chen A, Brunvand M, Goy A, Chang JE, et al. Phase I study of the anti-CD22 antibody-drug conjugate Pinatuzumab Vedotin with/without rituximab in patients with relapsed/refractory B-cell non-Hodgkin lymphoma. Clin Cancer Res. 2017;23(5):1167–76.
21. Palanca-Wessels MC, Czuczman M, Salles G, Assouline S, Sehn LH, Flinn I, et al. Safety and activity of the anti-CD79B antibody-drug conjugate polatuzumab vedotin in relapsed or refractory B-cell non-Hodgkin lymphoma and chronic lymphocytic leukaemia: a phase 1 study. Lancet Oncol. 2015;16(6):704–15.
22. Tilly H, Sharman J, Bartlett N, Morschhauser F, Haioun C, Munoz J, et al. POLA-R-CHP: Poloatuzumab Vedotin combined with rituximab, cyclophosphamide, cyclophosphamide,

doxorubicin, prednisone for patients with previously untreated diffuse large B cell lymphoma. Hematol Oncol. 2017;35(52):90–2.
23. Phillips T, Brunvand M, Chen A, Press O, Essell J, Chiappella A, Diefenbach C, Jones S, Hirata J, Flinn IW. Polatuzumab Vedotin combined with Obinutuzumab for patients with relapsed or refractory non-Hodgkin lymphoma: preliminary safety and clinical activity of a phase Ib/II study. Blood. 2016;128(22):622.
24. Kalim M, Chen J, Wang S, Lin C, Ullah S, Liang K, et al. Intracellular trafficking of new anticancer therapeutics: antibody-drug conjugates. Drug Des Devel Ther. 2017;11:2265–76.
25. Linenberger ML, Hong T, Flowers D, Sievers EL, Gooley TA, Bennett JM, et al. Multidrug-resistance phenotype and clinical responses to gemtuzumab ozogamicin. Blood. 2001;98(4):988–94.
26. Yu M, Ocana A, Tannock IF. Reversal of ATP-binding cassette drug transporter activity to modulate chemoresistance: why has it failed to provide clinical benefit? Cancer Metastasis Rev. 2013;32(1–2):211–27.
27. Cianfriglia M. The biology of MDR1-P-glycoprotein (MDR1-Pgp) in designing functional antibody drug conjugates (ADCs): the experience of gemtuzumab ozogamicin. Ann Ist Super Sanita. 2013;49(2):150–68.
28. Takeshita A, Shinjo K, Yamakage N, Ono T, Hirano I, Matsui H, et al. CMC-544 (inotuzumab ozogamicin) shows less effect on multidrug resistant cells: analyses in cell lines and cells from patients with B-cell chronic lymphocytic leukaemia and lymphoma. Br J Haematol. 2009;146(1):34–43.
29. Rosen DB, Harrington KH, Cordeiro JA, Leung LY, Putta S, Lacayo N, et al. AKT signaling as a novel factor associated with in vitro resistance of human AML to gemtuzumab ozogamicin. PLoS One. 2013;8(1):e53518.
30. Haag P, Viktorsson K, Lindberg ML, Kanter L, Lewensohn R, Stenke L. Deficient activation of Bak and Bax confers resistance to gemtuzumab ozogamicin-induced apoptotic cell death in AML. Exp Hematol. 2009;37(6):755–66.
31. Chen R, Hou J, Nair I, Wu J, Synold T, Kwak L, et al. Inhibition of MDR1 overcomes Brentuximab Vedotin resistance in Hodgkin lymphoma cell line model and is synergistic with Brentuximab Vedotin in mouse xenograft model. Blood. 2016;128(22):752.
32. Al-Rohil RN, Torres-Cabala CA, Patel A, Tetzlaff MT, Ivan D, Nagarajan P, et al. Loss of CD30 expression after treatment with brentuximab vedotin in a patient with anaplastic large cell lymphoma: a novel finding. J Cutan Pathol. 2016;43(12):1161–6.
33. Arai H, Furuichi S, Nakamura Y, Ichikawa M, Mitani K. ALK-negative anaplastic large cell lymphoma with loss of CD30 expression during treatment with brentuximab vedotin. Rinsho Ketsueki. 2016;57(5):634–7.
34. Nielson C, Fischer R, Fraga G, Aires D. Loss of CD30 expression in anaplastic large cell lymphoma following Brentuximab therapy. J Drugs Dermatol. 2016;15(7):894–5.
35. Chen R, Hou J, Newman E, Kim Y, Donohue C, Liu X, et al. CD30 downregulation, MMAE resistance, and MDR1 upregulation are all associated with resistance to Brentuximab Vedotin. Mol Cancer Ther. 2015;14(6):1376–84.
36. Zhao WL, Daneshpouy ME, Mounier N, Briere J, Leboeuf C, Plassa LF, et al. Prognostic significance of bcl-xL gene expression and apoptotic cell counts in follicular lymphoma. Blood. 2004;103(2):695–7.
37. Dornan D, Bennett F, Chen Y, Dennis M, Eaton D, Elkins K, et al. Therapeutic potential of an anti-CD79b antibody-drug conjugate, anti-CD79b-vc-MMAE, for the treatment of non-Hodgkin lymphoma. Blood. 2009;114(13):2721–9.
38. Adem YT, Schwarz KA, Duenas E, Patapoff TW, Galush WJ, Esue O. Auristatin antibody drug conjugate physical instability and the role of drug payload. Bioconjug Chem. 2014;25(4):656–64.
39. Gerber HP, Sapra P, Loganzo F, May C. Combining antibody-drug conjugates and immune-mediated cancer therapy: what to expect? Biochem Pharmacol. 2016;102:1–6.

Chapter 4
Resistance to Proteasome Inhibitor Therapy in Non-Hodgkin Lymphoma

Rodney R. Miles and Paul J. Galardy

Abstract The proteasome is a cytosolic proteolytic system that not only degrades damaged proteins but also has a critical role in cellular function through highly-regulated, targeted degradation of proteins. Inhibition of the proteasome system has been shown to have therapeutic potential in certain hematological malignancies. In this chapter, we will provide an overview of the ubiquitin proteasome system, focusing our discussion in the mechanisms of action and resistance to small molecule proteasome inhibitors currently approved or in development for therapeutic use in cancer.

Keywords Proteasome inhibitors · Non-Hodgkin lymphoma · Ubiquitin-activating enzymes · Ubiquitin-conjugating enzymes · Bortezomib

Abbreviations

ABC	Activated B-Cell
ALL	Acute Lymphoblastic Leukemia
AML	Acute Myeloid Leukemia

R. R. Miles
Department of Pathology, University at Utah, Salt Lake City, UT, USA

ARUP Institute for Clinical & Experimental Pathology, Salt Lake City, UT, USA
e-mail: rodney.miles@aruplab.com

P. J. Galardy (✉)
Department of Pediatric and Adolescent Medicine, Mayo Clinic, Rochester, MN, USA

Department of Biochemistry and Molecular Biology, Mayo Clinic, Rochester, MN, USA

Division of Pediatric Hematology-Oncology, Mayo Clinic, Rochester, MN, USA
e-mail: galardy.paul@mayo.edu

A. C. Xavier, M. S. Cairo (eds.), *Resistance to Targeted Therapies in Lymphomas*, Resistance to Targeted Anti-Cancer Therapeutics 21,
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-24424-8_4

CHOP	Cyclophosphamide, Doxorubicin, Vincristine, Prednisone
COG	Children's Oncology Group
CNS	Central Nervous System
CR	Complete Response
DLBCL	Diffuse Large B-Cell Lymphoma
DUB	Deubiquitinating Enzymes
E1	Ubiquitin-Activating Enzyme
E2	Ubiquitin-Conjugating Enzyme
E3	Ubiquitin-Protein Ligases
ER	Endoplasmic Reticulum
FDA	Food and Drug Administration
GCB	Germinal Center B-Cell Type
HL	Hodgkin Lymphoma
IC50	Half Maximum Inhibitory Concentration
IHC	Immunohistochemical
LL	Lymphoblastic Lymphoma
MCL	Mantle Cell Lymphoma
MHC	Major Histocompatibility Complex
MM	Multiple Myeloma
NHL	Non-Hodgkin Lymphoma
OS	Overall Survival
ORR	Overall Response Rate
PFS	Progression-Free Survival
PMBCL	Primary Mediastinal large B-Cell Lymphoma
R-CHOP	Rituximab, Cyclophosphamide, Doxorubicin, Vincristine, Prednisone
R/R	Relapsed/Refractory
VR-CAP	Bortezomib, Rituximab, Cyclophosphamide, Doxorubicin, and Prednisone

Introduction

Since the early 2000's, proteasome inhibition has taken center stage for the therapy of the plasma cell cancer multiple myeloma (MM). Although efficacy has not been as robust in other cancers, proteasome inhibitors have found utility in hematologic cancers, and recent clinical trials through the Children's Oncology Group (COG) have included bortezomib – the first in class proteasome inhibitor – in the initial therapy for patients with acute myeloid leukemia (AML) and T-cell acute lymphoblastic leukemia (ALL)/lymphoma. While ongoing work continues to push the boundaries of where bortezomib and newer next-generation proteasome inhibitors fit into the therapy for these diseases, there has been tremendous insight into the mechanisms by which cancers may evade these novel therapeutics. Here we will provide an overview of the ubiquitin proteasome system, the small molecule inhibitors of the proteasome that are approved and in development, and delve into the mechanisms of resistance with insight into potential avenues to preserve efficacy in non-Hodgkin lymphoma (NHL).

The Ubiquitin Proteasome System

The proteasome is the major cytosolic proteolytic system in eukaryotic cells. Comprised of a large multi-subunit complex, the proteasome recognizes and unfolds proteins marked for degradation, threads the polypeptide into the proteolytic chamber, and releases peptide fragments following proteolysis (Fig. 4.1) [1]. These peptides may be further degraded to recycle amino acids, or they may be incorporated into major histocompatibility complex proteins and trafficked to the cell surface for surveillance by T-lymphocytes [2]. While often envisioned as the garbage basket of

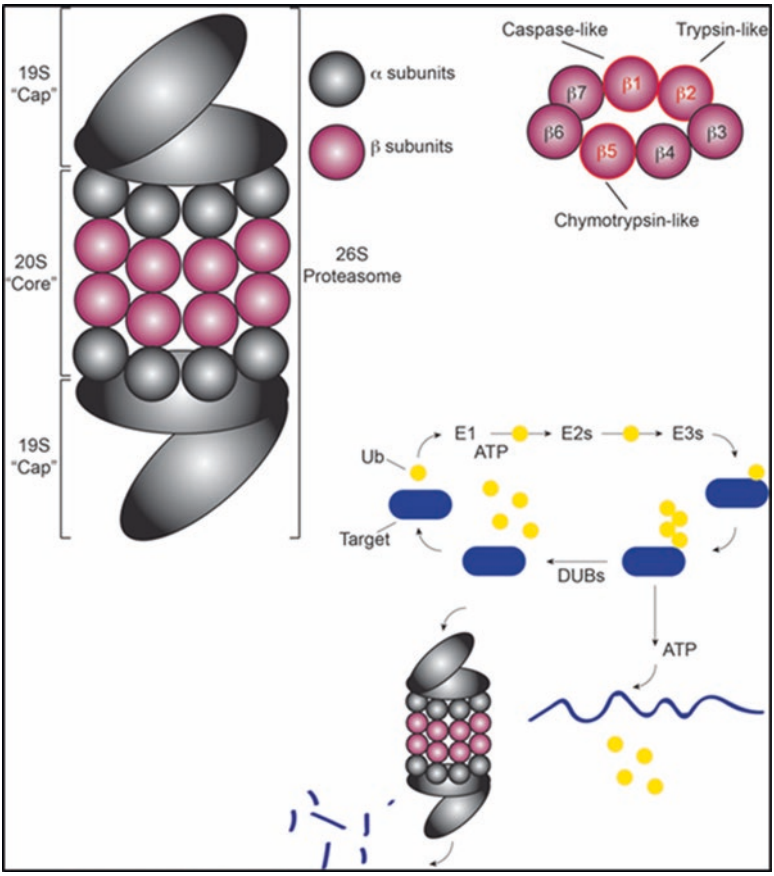


Fig. 4.1 The 26S proteasome is composed of the 20s core particle with a 19S regulatory particle at each end. The core 20S proteasome particle is comprised of a series of four stacked rings with seven subunits each that include the three catalytic subunits β1, β2, and β5. The enzymatic ubiquitination cascade involves an ubiquitin-activating enzyme (E1), ubiquitin-conjugating enzymes (E2s), and ubiquitin-protein ligases (E3s) for specific protein substrate ubiquitination. Once ubiquitinated, the protein is degraded by the proteasome or possibly targeted by deubiquitinating enzymes (DUBs) that remove ubiquitin

the cell that degrades proteins that have become damaged or otherwise have reached the end of their usefulness, the targeted degradation of many proteins is essential for events including receptor tyrosine kinase signaling and signal transduction from these receptors to the nucleus [3], cell cycle transitions [4], DNA damage repair [5], gene transcription [6], and others [7]. As such, activity of the proteasome is regulated at multiple levels, and inhibition of its activity has a broad array of cellular effects.

Ubiquitination

A major mechanism that regulates the activity of the proteasome is the selective marking of proteins with the modifier ubiquitin. Itself a 76 amino acid protein, the addition of ubiquitin to proteins is regulated by a large family of enzymes that attach or remove ubiquitin, often in a substrate and signal-specific manner [7]. The attachment of a single ubiquitin molecule, known as mono-ubiquitination, is affected by an enzymatic cascade that involves an ubiquitin-activating enzyme (E1) that expends ATP to install an energetic thioester on the C-terminus of ubiquitin. This enables its transfer to one of dozens of ubiquitin-conjugating enzymes (E2s) that work together with one of hundreds of ubiquitin-protein ligases (E3s) that bind to specific protein substrates to either directly transfer ubiquitin to the target (HECT-class E3s) or to simply act as a scaffold that brings the ubiquitin-loaded E2 in proximity with the targeted substrate [8]. In nearly all cases, the ubiquitin is attached to the ε-amino group on lysine side chains of the substrate [8]. Once a single ubiquitin has been attached, the process may be repeated with subsequent cycles of ubiquitination onto one of six potential lysine side chains on the initial ubiquitin molecule. Most proteasome substrates are marked by the presence of poly-ubiquitin chains comprised of at least four ubiquitin molecules linked sequentially through lysine 48 on each ubiquitin moiety [9]. Degradation of chains linked through lysine 11 generated by the anaphase promoting complex working with the Ube2c and Ube2s E2 enzymes has also been described [10]. Once marked by ubiquitination, modified proteins may either be recognized and degraded by the proteasome or they may be acted upon by one of nearly 100 ubiquitin isopeptidases (deubiquitinating enzymes, DUBs) that remove ubiquitin – possibly providing a reprise for the targeted protein [11, 12]. Although proteins may be degraded due to damage, the regulated ubiquitination of highly cancer relevant substrates such as cell cycle regulators is a highly orchestrated to occur at specific instances to promote cell cycle progression. As such, the ubiquitin proteasome system is less a garbage dump and more like a molecular sniper that is poised to eliminate select proteins to allow cellular events to occur in a highly ordered fashion.

Proteasome Structures

The proteasome exists in several forms, with the most predominant being the 20S and 26S proteasome [13]. The core 20S proteasome particle is comprised of a series of four stacked rings with seven subunits each that assemble to form a barrel shaped structure [14, 15]. Within the core 20S particle are three catalytic subunits β1, β2, and β5 that are largely responsible for three catalytic activities of the particle known as the chymotrypsin-like, trypsin-like, and post-glutamyl peptide hydrolyzing respectively [14, 15]. These catalytic subunits may be replaced by subunits β1i, β2i, and β5i the expression of which is induced by interferon-γ to form what is termed the immunoproteasome [16]. The catalytic activity of this alternative form is altered compared with the constitutive proteasome to favor the production of peptides that associate with the major histocompatibility complex (MHC) proteins that are involved in presenting antigens to T lymphocytes [16, 17]. Proteasome inhibitors have variable inhibitory activities towards the various catalytic subunits, though most available compounds target both the constitutive and immunoproteasome subunits equally. Selective immunoproteasome inhibitors are under development with potential application in hematologic cancers and inflammatory diseases [18].

Each end of this cylindrical particle may be capped with one two protein complexes known as the 11S or 19S regulatory particles [13]. The most common is the 19S regulatory particle that contains receptors for polyubiquitin and ATPases that assist in the unfolding of protein substrates and deubiquitinating enzymes that remove ubiquitin from the substrates so that it may be recycled [19, 20]. The combined structure that includes the 20S core particle with the 19S regulatory particle at each end is termed the 26S proteasome [5]. There is good evidence also that the activity of these deubiquitinating enzymes, counteracted by a proteasome-associated ubiquitin-protein ligase known as E4, will affect the rate at which relatively poorly ubiquitinated substrates are degraded [20, 21].

Feedback Induction of Proteasome Assembly

While there has been substantial excitement about the use of proteasome inhibitors in lymphoid malignancies due to the success in myeloma, other cancers seem more resistant to inhibition of this enzyme complex that is thought to be central to all cellular functions. While myeloma and other lymphoid cells may have enhanced sensitivity due to the increased reliance on protein synthesis and therefore to stress induced by the unfolded protein response [1, 22], it has been unclear as to why other cancers seem able to bypass the fundamental need for targeted proteolysis. Studies that examine resistance mechanisms have noted that some cells increase the synthesis of proteasomes in response to reduced proteasome activity [1, 23]. Through elegant work by the Deschais, Hay, and Goldberg laboratories, the mechanism that couples proteasome activity with the synthesis of its subunits was elucidated

[24–26]. The Nrf1 protein is synthesized as an endoplasmic reticulum (ER) resident protein and immediately engages with the ER-associated degradation pathway where it is retro-translocated to the cytosol with the assistance of p97. When proteasomes are abundant and active, the Nrf1 protein is degraded coincidentally with its translocation from the ER to the cytosol. When proteasome activity is limiting, the Nrf1 protein is processed by an ER membrane protease to release a transcriptionally active domain that translocates to the nucleus and promotes the transcription of proteasome subunit genes. This mechanism therefore results in increased proteasome assembly which then suppresses Nrf1 and resumes the baseline state. When combined with inhibitors that bind irreversibly to the proteasome, the effect is to enhance proteasome activity leading to clinical resistance. While irreversible proteasome inhibitors may be more effective, strategies that also incorporate inhibition of the p97 assisted retro-translocation pathway are being explored as ways to circumvent this resistance mechanism [27, 28].

Proteasome Inhibitors

Bortezomib

Proteasome inhibitors were first developed as tools to aid in biochemistry studies seeking to understand the role of the proteasome in cell biology (Table 4.1). Because of the central role of the proteasome as a critical regulator in all cells and tissues, it was initially assumed that systemic inhibition of the proteasome would lead to unacceptable toxicity. The potential for interfering with the proteasome as a cancer therapy was hinted at in initial studies where blocking ubiquitination – or proteasome function – was found to cause cell cycle arrest *in vitro*. Developed by Millennium Pharmaceuticals (Cambridge, MA) and initially referred to as PS-341, bortezomib (Velcade®) was the first-in-class proteasome inhibitor and rapidly generated excitement given its profound inhibitory effects on the NCI-60 cell line panel with a low nanomolar half maximum inhibitory concentration (IC50) for the entire panel [29]. A dipeptide boronic acid compound, bortezomib shows greater selectivity towards the proteasome compared with commonly used biochemical tools such

Table 4.1 Proteasome inhibitors in use or under development

Agent	Binding site(s)	Mode	Route
Bortezomib	β1, β5	Reversible	IV
Carfilzomib	β5	Irreversible	IV
Ixazomib	β5	Reversible	PO
Oprozomib[a]	β5	Irreversible	PO
Delanzomib	β1, β5	Reversible	IV, PO
Marizomib	β1, β2, β5	Irreversible	IV, PO

[a]in development
IV, intravenous; PO, oral

as MG-132 due to the reactivity of boronic acid with threonine residues at the proteolytic active sites [29]. With mechanisms that included inhibition of NF-κB activation and suppression of IL-6 release, the drug rapidly caught the attention of MM investigators where it showed potent activity in both drug sensitive and resistant cell lines [30]. After it showed remarkable clinical activity in heavily pre-treated patients with advanced MM [31, 32], bortezomib earned US Food and Drug Administration (FDA) approval in 2003 (www.fda.gov) for the treatment of relapsed/refractory (R/R) MM and opened a new therapeutic avenue in cancer. The use of bortezomib in myeloma progressed rapidly due to its efficacy as an agent reserved for R/R disease and by 2007 had been incorporated into the up-front treatment as part of the total-therapy 3 regimen [33]. With this success of course came interest in next generation proteasome inhibitors, particularly those that may have lower levels of toxicity (neuropathy due to off-target inhibition of HtrA2/Omi) [34], improved ease of administration, and the potential to circumvent bortezomib resistance due to differing chemical structures. The efficacy of proteasome inhibitors *in vitro* showed a strong correlation with the degree of proteasome inhibition, though concern persisted relating to the extent to which patients would tolerate more lengthy and profound inhibition of this central enzymatic complex [1].

Bortezomib binds to and inhibits the β1 and β5 proteasome subunits, though its effect on β5 substantially outweighs that towards β1 [35–37]. Though potent and selective, the partial inhibition of chymotrypsin-like activity that maps to the β5 subunit leaves substantial activity remaining that ultimately limits therapeutic efficacy. This is compounded by the relatively rapid clearance of the drug from plasma, and the reversible nature by which bortezomib binds to β5 [1, 38]. The net effect of these characteristics is that the proteasome is inhibited for a relatively short time in target tissues, particularly those that may be sub-optimally perfused such as solid tumors that are outstripping blood supply. The search was then launched to develop better inhibitors that were more potent with slower recovery rates that may result in clinically efficacy in diseases beyond that seen in MM.

Carlfizomib

With its ancestry based in the biochemical proteasome inhibitor epoximycin, carfilzomib is an irreversible inhibitor of the β5 subunit [39, 40]. Developed by Proteolyx (a partnership born out of the laboratories of Craig Crews and Ray Deschais), carfilzomib initially was designed to address the kinetic problems associated with bortezomib. Unfortunately, the drug is rapidly cleared from the plasma due to distribution and rapid metabolism [40]. Furthermore, despite the irreversible nature of its binding with the proteasome, the recovery time of proteasome activity that was measured in tissues was only slightly improved over bortezomib [39]. Nonetheless, carfilzomib has strong activity in R/R MM patients due its differing structure and mechanism, including in cells that are resistant to bortezomib, and has a reduced incidence of neuropathy compared with bortezomib. In 2012, the FDA approved the use of carfilzomib for R/R MM.

Ixazomib and Delanzomib

As with bortezomib, ixazomib and delanzomib are boronic acid-based reversible proteasome inhibitors – but with the advantage of oral bioavailability [41, 42]. Both compounds primarily bind to and inhibit the β5/chymotrypsin-like activity with much lower activity towards the β1/caspase-like activity. Ixazomib is more selective compared with bortezomib with little of the off-target inhibition of HtrA2/Omi that is thought to produce the neuropathy seen in the latter [41]. With a weekly dosage frequency when combined with lenalidomide, and a favorable safety profile, ixazomib has gained rapid approval in Europe and the US for the treatment of MM. The development of delanzomib is lagging behind that of ixazomib, and currently there are no open trials including this drug registered with Clinicaltrials.gov. This may be due to the occurrence of substantial skin toxicity compared with other agents and the lack of apparent clinical benefit compared to the other drugs under development [38, 43].

Oprozomib

As ixazomib is an orally administered descendant obortezomib, oprozomib was developed as an orally bioavailable tripeptide epoxyketone related to carfilzomib [44]. As with carfilzomib, it is a selective inhibitor of the β5/chymotrypsin-like activity. Thus far oprozomib has shown encouraging pre-clinical activity *in vitro* and in xenograft studies with MM models [45]. There are currently several early phase trials examining the use of oprozomib alone or in combination with other conventional or targeted agents in refractory myeloma, hematologic malignancies, and solid tumors.

Marizomib

In a complete departure from the other agents, marizomib is a naturally occurring compound derived from the marine actinomycete *Salinospora tropica* [46]. Structurally it also is a departure from prior inhibitors in that it lacks a peptide backbone structure having instead a bicyclic ring structure. It also differs in at least partially, though irreversibly, inhibiting all three subunits and activities of the proteasome, though as with other agents its most potent activity is towards the β5 contained chymotripsin-like activity [47]. Unique to this agent is the appearance of some central nervous system (CNS) toxicities and possible activity towards glioma cells. As such, there are three open studies actively investigating its use in patients with gliomas – particularly glioblastoma multiforme [48]. As other proteasome inhibitors have little penetration of the blood brain barrier, marizomib may be uniquely situated to use in patients with brain tumors or hematologic malignancies involving the CNS.

Use of Proteasome Inhibitors in Lymphoma

The impact of proteasome inhibitors in MM is in part related to the dependency of myeloma cells on protein processing with high level immunoglobulin production [49]. However, proteasome inhibition also impacts signaling pathways as described earlier. This section will address the emerging therapeutic role of targeting signaling pathways via proteasome inhibition in B-cell non-Hodgkin lymphoma (NHL) (Table 4.2). Specifically, the discussion will center on mantle cell lymphoma (MCL) and subtypes of diffuse large B-cell lymphoma (DLBCL).

Mantle Cell Lymphoma

Mantle cell lymphoma (MCL) is a lymphoma of mature B-cells that primarily affects older adults and accounts for around 4% of lymphomas in the US and 7–9% in Europe [50]. Mantle cell lymphoma responds well to therapy initially, but remissions tend to be short with an overall survival (OS) of 3–6 years [51]. The clinical course is quite variable, however, with some patients showing highly aggressive disease and others an indolent course with long-term survival [51]. Standard therapy for MCL patients has often included cyclophosphamide, doxorubicin, vincristine, and prednisone (CHOP), with more recently the inclusion of the anti-CD20 monoclonal antibody rituximab (R-CHOP).

Table 4.2 Representative clinical trials using bortezomib in B-cell non-Hodgkin lymphoma

Disease	Setting	Therapy	Results	Reference
B-NHL	R/R	BTZ monotherapy	ORR 41%	52
Indolent B-NHL. MCL	R/R	BTZ monotherapy	ORR 58%	53
			ORR 50% for MCL	
Indolent B-NHL. MCL	R/R	BTZ, R, bendamustine	ORR 83%	54
			ORR 71% for MCL	
MCL	Frontline	VR-CAP	PFS 24.7 months *vs.* 14.4 months for R-CHOP	55
DLBCL	R/R	BTZ + DA-EPOCH-B	ORR 85% in ABC DLBCL	61
			ORR 13% in GCB DLBCL	
Waldenström macroglobulinemia	Frontline	BTZ, R, dexamethasone	ORR 90–95%	64

ABC, activated B-cell; B-NHL, B-cell non-Hodgkin lymphoma; BTZ, bortezomib; CHOP, cyclophosphamide, doxorubicin, vincristine, prednisone; DA-EPOCH, dose-adjusted etoposide, vincristine, doxorubicin, cyclophosphamide, prednisone; GCB, germinal center B-cell; MCL, mantle cell lymphoma; ORR, overall response rate; PFS, progression-free survival; R/R, relapsed/refractory; R, rituximab; VR-CAP, bortezomib, rituximab, cyclophosphamide, doxorubicin, prednisone

Bortezomib was first used in B-cell NHL in the R/R setting, where monotherapy achieved an overall response rate (ORR) of 41% [52, 53]. A similar phase 2 trial of R/R B-cell NHL including MCL found an ORR of 58%, with 50% for MCL patients [53]. When combined with bendamustine and rituximab, the ORR improved to 71% in pretreated patients including those refractory to rituximab [54]. The FDA approved bortezomib for the treatment of MCL in patients who have received at least one prior therapy in 2006 and for frontline therapy in 2014. A phase 3 study showed significant improvement in progression-free survival (PFS) with the replacement of vincristine by bortezomib in R-CHOP (bortezomib, rituximab, cyclophosphamide, doxorubicin, and prednisone, VR-CAP) [55]. PFS in the VR-CAP group was 24.7 months *vs*. 14.4 months for R-CHOP ($p < 0.001$). Overall response rates and the durability of response were both superior with VR-CAP.

Diffuse Large B-Cell Lymphoma

Diffuse large B-cell lymphoma (DLBCL) is one of the most common types of NHL. Although it is curable for a subset of patients, biologic heterogeneity of DLBCL has increasingly been linked to variable responses to therapy and survival. In an early such study, two molecular subtypes of DLBCL were identified by gene expression profiling: the germinal center B-cell type (GCB) and the activated B-cell type (ABC) [56]. Highly expressed genes that defined the GCB subtype were also highly expressed in normal germinal center B-cells, while most of the genes that defined ABC DLBCL were expressed in activated peripheral blood B-cells. This study also demonstrated that the ABC subtype DLBCL patients had worse outcomes, and identifying targeted therapies to improve outcomes in this subtype has been an ongoing objective of multiple studies since that time.

Several studies subsequently demonstrated the activation of and survival dependence on NF-kB pathway activation in ABC DLBCL [57–60]. Because proteasome inhibition was known to negatively regulate NF-kB pathway activation, these studies led to a clinical trial using bortezomib in DLBCL. Bortezomib alone had no activity in DLBCL, but when combined with chemotherapy in relapsed DLBCL patients, it demonstrated a significantly higher response (83% *vs.* 13%; $P < .001$) and median OS (10.8 vs 3.4 months; $P = .003$) in ABC compared with GCB DLBCL. Further, 41.5% of ABC DLBCL patients achieved complete remission (CR) compared to only 6.5% of GCB DLBCL. These results suggested that bortezomib enhances the activity of chemotherapy in ABC but not GCB DLBCL [61].

The finding that proteasome inhibitor therapy is subtype-dependent in DLBCL has important implications for the diagnostic approach to this lymphoma. The 2017 WHO Classification of Tumours of Haematopoietic and Lymphoid Tissues recommends that GCB/ABC subtyping be a part of routine initial diagnosis in DLBCL [62]. However, subtyping by gene expression profiling is still not widely available in clinical laboratories, and the upfront therapy remains the same for both subtypes. Although immunohistochemical (IHC) staining can be used as a surrogate assay to

attempt to subclassify DLBCL, the approach is less specific in well-controlled studies let alone among varied pathology practices utilizing different laboratories and IHC. For now, further clinical studies are necessary to better define the therapeutic role for proteasome inhibition in DLBCL. If subtyping of DLBCL to guide therapy becomes the standard of care, better assays will need to be deployed in clinical laboratories.

Other Non-Hodgkin Lymphomas

Data supporting the use of proteasome inhibitors in other subtypes of B-cell NHL are quite limited. Primary mediastinal large B-cell lymphoma (PMBCL) is a much less common subtype of DLBCL that is distinct from GCB and ABC types by gene expression profiling [63]. This subtype shows more similarities to classical Hodgkin lymphoma (HL) and is characterized in part by NF-kB pathway activation [63]. This suggests a potential role for proteasome inhibitors in PMBCL therapy, but this has not yet been demonstrated in clinical trials. Proteasome inhibitors are also used to treat Waldenström macroglobulinemia, where bortezomib combined with dexamethasone and rituximab leads to overall response rates of 90–95%, although CRs are uncommon [64].

The potential role of bortezomib in T-lymphoblastic lymphoma (LL) therapy is currently under investigation by the COG. Due to the similarities between LL and ALL, most pediatric patients with LL are treated on regimens developed to treat ALL. The distinction between lymphoma and leukemia in lymphoblastic disease is based on the somewhat arbitrary designation of leukemia for those cases with ≥25% bone marrow blasts [62]. T-ALL blasts often have considerable activation of the NF-kB pathway, frequently as a consequence of activated Notch signaling [65]. Although similar data are lacking for T-LL, these patients were enrolled on an arm of this study and randomized to standard ALL therapy or standard ALL therapy plus bortezomib. The results of this trial are not yet available, but a positive signal may establish a role for bortezomib in T-LL therapy.

Therapy Resistance

Studies of bortezomib resistance in lymphoma cell lines have implicated apoptotic pathways and the unfolded protein response. Roue et al. demonstrated a high correlation between proteasome inhibitor resistance and up-regulation of the pro-survival chaperone BiP/Grp78 in MCL cells [66]. The stabilization of BiP/Grp78 was mediated by an increase in activity of heat shock protein of 90 kDa (Hsp90). With targeted inhibition of this pathway, bortezomib cytotoxicity was restored in MCL cell lines. Mechanisms of lymphoma resistance to bortezomib were explored by comparative analyses of two DLBCL cell lines, SUDHL-4 and SUDHL-6, which

are resistant and sensitive to bortezomib, respectively [67]. This study demonstrated bortezomib-induced apoptosis in sensitive SUDHL-6 cells, but not in resistant SUDHL-4 cells. Inhibition of the proteasome was similar in the two cell lines. Gene expression profiling was performed to compare up- and down-regulated transcripts in response to bortezomib in SUDHL-4 and SUDHL-6 cells. The resistant SUDHL-4 cells showed induction of heat shock proteins and other chaperone proteins, which have been associated with bortezomib resistance. In the sensitive SUDHL-6 cell line, bortezomib induced ATF3 and ATF4, which induced apoptosis and the unfolded protein response, respectively [67]. Similar mechanisms of resistance have been described in MM, where bortezomib induces expression of ATF4 that in turn drives increased expression of the BCL2 family anti-apoptotic protein MCL-1 leading to increased cell survival [68].

Conclusions

The proteasome is a cytosolic proteolytic system that not only degrades damaged proteins but also has a critical role in cellular function through highly-regulated, targeted degradation of proteins. Drugs that specifically inhibit the proteasome first showed clinical utility in myeloma, but the therapeutic realm for these compounds has expanded to include NHL. As with many targeted inhibitors in cancer therapy, resistance to proteasome inhibitor therapy often emerges. Ongoing and future studies seek to optimize combination therapies including proteasome inhibitors as well as to overcome resistance mechanisms.

Disclosure of Conflict of Interest No potential conflicts of interest were disclosed.

References

1. Deshaies RJ. Proteotoxic crisis, the ubiquitin-proteasome system, and cancer therapy. BMC Biol. 2014;12:94.
2. Loureiro J, Ploegh HL. Antigen presentation and the ubiquitin-proteasome system in host-pathogen interactions. Adv Immunol. 2006;92:225–305.
3. Levkowitz G, Waterman H, Zamir E, Kam Z, Oved S, Langdon WY, et al. C-Cbl/Sli-1 regulates endocytic sorting and ubiquitination of the epidermal growth factor receptor. Genes Dev. 1998;12(23):3663–74.
4. Murray AW, Solomon MJ, Kirschner MW. The role of cyclin synthesis and degradation in the control of maturation promoting factor activity. Nature. 1989;339(6222):280–6.
5. Harper JW, Elledge SJ. The DNA damage response: ten years after. Mol Cell. 2007;28(5):739–45.
6. Shema E, Tirosh I, Aylon Y, Huang J, Ye C, Moskovits N, et al. The histone H2B-specific ubiquitin ligase RNF20/hBRE1 acts as a putative tumor suppressor through selective regulation of gene expression. Genes Dev. 2008;22(19):2664–76.

7. Oh E, Akopian D, Rape M. Principles of ubiquitin-dependent signaling. Annu Rev Cell Dev Biol. 2018;34:137–62.
8. Rape M. Ubiquitylation at the crossroads of development and disease. Nat Rev Mol Cell Biol. 2018;19(1):59–70.
9. Chau V, Tobias JW, Bachmair A, Marriott D, Ecker DJ, Gonda DK, et al. A multiubiquitin chain is confined to specific lysine in a targeted short-lived protein. Science. 1989;243(4898):1576–83.
10. Williamson A, Wickliffe KE, Mellone BG, Song L, Karpen GH, Rape M. Identification of a physiological E2 module for the human anaphase-promoting complex. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA. 2009;106(43):18213–8.
11. Harrigan JA, Jacq X, Martin NM, Jackson SP. Deubiquitylating enzymes and drug discovery: emerging opportunities. Nat Rev Drug Discov. 2018;17(1):57–78.
12. Mevissen TET, Komander D. Mechanisms of Deubiquitinase specificity and regulation. Annu Rev Biochem. 2017;86:159–92.
13. Bard JAM, Goodall EA, Greene ER, Jonsson E, Dong KC, Martin A. Structure and function of the 26S proteasome. Annu Rev Biochem. 2018;87:697–724.
14. Finley D. Recognition and processing of ubiquitin-protein conjugates by the proteasome. Annu Rev Biochem. 2009;78:477–513.
15. Groll M, Ditzel L, Lowe J, Stock D, Bochtler M, Bartunik HD, et al. Structure of 20S proteasome from yeast at 2.4 a resolution. Nature. 1997;386(6624):463–71.
16. Murata S, Takahama Y, Kasahara M, Tanaka K. The immunoproteasome and thymoproteasome: functions, evolution and human disease. Nat Immunol. 2018;19(9):923–31.
17. van Hall T, Sijts A, Camps M, Offringa R, Melief C, Kloetzel PM, et al. Differential influence on cytotoxic T lymphocyte epitope presentation by controlled expression of either proteasome immunosubunits or PA28. J Exp Med. 2000;192(4):483–94.
18. Ettari R, Previti S, Bitto A, Grasso S, Zappala M. Immunoproteasome-selective inhibitors: a promising strategy to treat hematologic malignancies, autoimmune and inflammatory diseases. Curr Med Chem. 2016;23(12):1217–38.
19. Mofers A, Pellegrini P, Linder S, D'Arcy P. Proteasome-associated deubiquitinases and cancer. Cancer Metastasis Rev. 2017;36(4):635–53.
20. de Poot SAH, Tian G, Finley D. Meddling with fate: the proteasomal deubiquitinating enzymes. J Mol Biol. 2017;429(22):3525–45.
21. Lee BH, Lee MJ, Park S, Oh DC, Elsasser S, Chen PC, et al. Enhancement of proteasome activity by a small-molecule inhibitor of USP14. Nature. 2010;467(7312):179–84.
22. Obeng EA, Carlson LM, Gutman DM, Harrington WJ Jr, Lee KP, Boise LH. Proteasome inhibitors induce a terminal unfolded protein response in multiple myeloma cells. Blood. 2006;107(12):4907–16.
23. Oerlemans R, Franke NE, Assaraf YG, Cloos J, van Zantwijk I, Berkers CR, et al. Molecular basis of bortezomib resistance: proteasome subunit beta5 (PSMB5) gene mutation and overexpression of PSMB5 protein. Blood. 2008;112(6):2489–99.
24. Zhang Y, Ren Y, Li S, Hayes JD. Transcription factor Nrf1 is topologically repartitioned across membranes to enable target gene transactivation through its acidic glucose-responsive domains. PLoS One. 2014;9(4):e93458.
25. Sha Z, Goldberg AL. Proteasome-mediated processing of Nrf1 is essential for coordinate induction of all proteasome subunits and p97. Curr Biol. 2014;24(14):1573–83.
26. Radhakrishnan SK, den Besten W, Deshaies RJ. p97-dependent retrotranslocation and proteolytic processing govern formation of active Nrf1 upon proteasome inhibition. elife. 2014;3:e01856.
27. Le Moigne R, Aftab BT, Djakovic S, Dhimolea E, Valle E, Murnane M, et al. The p97 inhibitor CB-5083 is a unique disrupter of protein homeostasis in models of multiple myeloma. Mol Cancer Ther. 2017;16(11):2375–86.
28. Chou TF, Brown SJ, Minond D, Nordin BE, Li K, Jones AC, et al. Reversible inhibitor of p97, DBeQ, impairs both ubiquitin-dependent and autophagic protein clearance pathways. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 2011;108(12):4834–9.

29. Adams J, Palombella VJ, Sausville EA, Johnson J, Destree A, Lazarus DD, et al. Proteasome inhibitors: a novel class of potent and effective antitumor agents. Cancer Res. 1999;59(11):2615–22.
30. Hideshima T, Richardson P, Chauhan D, Palombella VJ, Elliott PJ, Adams J, et al. The proteasome inhibitor PS-341 inhibits growth, induces apoptosis, and overcomes drug resistance in human multiple myeloma cells. Cancer Res. 2001;61(7):3071–6.
31. Richardson PG, Sonneveld P, Schuster MW, Irwin D, Stadtmauer EA, Facon T, et al. Bortezomib or high-dose dexamethasone for relapsed multiple myeloma. N Engl J Med. 2005;352(24):2487–98.
32. Orlowski RZ, Stinchcombe TE, Mitchell BS, Shea TC, Baldwin AS, Stahl S, et al. Phase I trial of the proteasome inhibitor PS-341 in patients with refractory hematologic malignancies. J Clin Oncol. 2002;20(22):4420–7.
33. Barlogie B, Anaissie E, van Rhee F, Haessler J, Hollmig K, Pineda-Roman M, et al. Incorporating bortezomib into upfront treatment for multiple myeloma: early results of total therapy 3. Br J Haematol. 2007;138(2):176–85.
34. Arastu-Kapur S, Anderl JL, Kraus M, Parlati F, Shenk KD, Lee SJ, et al. Nonproteasomal targets of the proteasome inhibitors bortezomib and carfilzomib: a link to clinical adverse events. Clin Cancer Res. 2011;17(9):2734–43.
35. Berkers CR, Verdoes M, Lichtman E, Fiebiger E, Kessler BM, Anderson KC, et al. Activity probe for in vivo profiling of the specificity of proteasome inhibitor bortezomib. Nat Methods. 2005;2(5):357–62.
36. Altun M, Galardy PJ, Shringarpure R, Hideshima T, LeBlanc R, Anderson KC, et al. Effects of PS-341 on the activity and composition of proteasomes in multiple myeloma cells. Cancer Res. 2005;65(17):7896–901.
37. Groll M, Berkers CR, Ploegh HL, Ovaa H. Crystal structure of the boronic acid-based proteasome inhibitor bortezomib in complex with the yeast 20S proteasome. Structure. 2006;14(3):451–6.
38. Park JE, Miller Z, Jun Y, Lee W, Kim KB. Next-generation proteasome inhibitors for cancer therapy. Transl Res. 2018;198:1–16.
39. Demo SD, Kirk CJ, Aujay MA, Buchholz TJ, Dajee M, Ho MN, et al. Antitumor activity of PR-171, a novel irreversible inhibitor of the proteasome. Cancer Res. 2007;67(13):6383–91.
40. O'Connor OA, Stewart AK, Vallone M, Molineaux CJ, Kunkel LA, Gerecitano JF, et al. A phase 1 dose escalation study of the safety and pharmacokinetics of the novel proteasome inhibitor carfilzomib (PR-171) in patients with hematologic malignancies. Clin Cancer Res. 2009;15(22):7085–91.
41. Chauhan D, Tian Z, Zhou B, Kuhn D, Orlowski R, Raje N, et al. In vitro and in vivo selective antitumor activity of a novel orally bioavailable proteasome inhibitor MLN9708 against multiple myeloma cells. Clin Cancer Res. 2011;17(16):5311–21.
42. Piva R, Ruggeri B, Williams M, Costa G, Tamagno I, Ferrero D, et al. CEP-18770: a novel, orally active proteasome inhibitor with a tumor-selective pharmacologic profile competitive with bortezomib. Blood. 2008;111(5):2765–75.
43. Gallerani E, Zucchetti M, Brunelli D, Marangon E, Noberasco C, Hess D, et al. A first in human phase I study of the proteasome inhibitor CEP-18770 in patients with advanced solid tumours and multiple myeloma. Eur J Cancer. 2013;49(2):290–6.
44. Zhou HJ, Aujay MA, Bennett MK, Dajee M, Demo SD, Fang Y, et al. Design and synthesis of an orally bioavailable and selective peptide epoxyketone proteasome inhibitor (PR-047). J Med Chem. 2009;52(9):3028–38.
45. Chauhan D, Singh AV, Aujay M, Kirk CJ, Bandi M, Ciccarelli B, et al. A novel orally active proteasome inhibitor ONX 0912 triggers in vitro and in vivo cytotoxicity in multiple myeloma. Blood. 2010;116(23):4906–15.
46. Feling RH, Buchanan GO, Mincer TJ, Kauffman CA, Jensen PR, Fenical W. Salinosporamide A: a highly cytotoxic proteasome inhibitor from a novel microbial source, a marine bacterium of the new genus salinospora. Angew Chem Int Ed Engl. 2003;42(3):355–7.

47. Groll M, Huber R, Potts BC. Crystal structures of Salinosporamide A (NPI-0052) and B (NPI-0047) in complex with the 20S proteasome reveal important consequences of beta-lactone ring opening and a mechanism for irreversible binding. J Am Chem Soc. 2006;128(15):5136–41.
48. Di K, Lloyd GK, Abraham V, MacLaren A, Burrows FJ, Desjardins A, et al. Marizomib activity as a single agent in malignant gliomas: ability to cross the blood-brain barrier. Neuro-Oncology. 2016;18(6):840–8.
49. Meister S, Schubert U, Neubert K, Herrmann K, Burger R, Gramatzki M, et al. Extensive immunoglobulin production sensitizes myeloma cells for proteasome inhibition. Cancer Res. 2007;67(4):1783–92.
50. A clinical evaluation of the International Lymphoma Study Group classification of non-Hodgkin's lymphoma. The non-Hodgkin's lymphoma classification project. Blood. 1997;89(11):3909–18.
51. Vose JM. Mantle cell lymphoma: 2015 update on diagnosis, risk-stratification, and clinical management. Am J Hematol. 2015;90(8):739–45.
52. Goy A, Younes A, McLaughlin P, Pro B, Romaguera JE, Hagemeister F, et al. Phase II study of proteasome inhibitor bortezomib in relapsed or refractory B-cell non-Hodgkin's lymphoma. J Clin Oncol. 2005;23(4):667–75.
53. O'Connor OA, Wright J, Moskowitz C, Muzzy J, MacGregor-Cortelli B, Stubblefield M, et al. Phase II clinical experience with the novel proteasome inhibitor bortezomib in patients with indolent non-Hodgkin's lymphoma and mantle cell lymphoma. J Clin Oncol. 2005;23(4):676–84.
54. Friedberg JW, Vose JM, Kelly JL, Young F, Bernstein SH, Peterson D, et al. The combination of bendamustine, bortezomib, and rituximab for patients with relapsed/refractory indolent and mantle cell non-Hodgkin lymphoma. Blood. 2011;117(10):2807–12.
55. Robak T, Huang H, Jin J, Zhu J, Liu T, Samoilova O, et al. Bortezomib-based therapy for newly diagnosed mantle-cell lymphoma. N Engl J Med. 2015;372(10):944–53.
56. Alizadeh AA, Eisen MB, Davis RE, Ma C, Lossos IS, Rosenwald A, et al. Distinct types of diffuse large B-cell lymphoma identified by gene expression profiling. Nature. 2000;403(6769):503–11.
57. Davis RE, Brown KD, Siebenlist U, Staudt LM. Constitutive nuclear factor kappaB activity is required for survival of activated B cell-like diffuse large B cell lymphoma cells. J Exp Med. 2001;194(12):1861–74.
58. Lam LT, Davis RE, Pierce J, Hepperle M, Xu Y, Hottelet M, et al. Small molecule inhibitors of IkappaB kinase are selectively toxic for subgroups of diffuse large B-cell lymphoma defined by gene expression profiling. Clin Cancer Res. 2005;11(1):28–40.
59. Lenz G, Davis RE, Ngo VN, Lam L, George TC, Wright GW, et al. Oncogenic CARD11 mutations in human diffuse large B cell lymphoma. Science. 2008;319(5870):1676–9.
60. Ngo VN, Davis RE, Lamy L, Yu X, Zhao H, Lenz G, et al. A loss-of-function RNA interference screen for molecular targets in cancer. Nature. 2006;441(7089):106–10.
61. Dunleavy K, Pittaluga S, Czuczman MS, Dave SS, Wright G, Grant N, et al. Differential efficacy of bortezomib plus chemotherapy within molecular subtypes of diffuse large B-cell lymphoma. Blood. 2009;113(24):6069–76.
62. Swerdlow SHCE, Harris NL, Jaffe ES, Pileri SA, Stein H, Thiele J, Arber DA, Hasserjian RP, Le Beau MM, Orazi A, Siebert R, editors. WHO classification of Tumours of Haematopoietic and lymphoid tissues (Revised 4th edition). 4th ed. Lyon: IARC; 2017.
63. Savage KJ, Monti S, Kutok JL, Cattoretti G, Neuberg D, De Leval L, et al. The molecular signature of mediastinal large B-cell lymphoma differs from that of other diffuse large B-cell lymphomas and shares features with classical Hodgkin lymphoma. Blood. 2003;102(12):3871–9.
64. Castillo JJT, Steven P. Toward personalized treatment in Waldenstrom macroglobulinemia. Hematology Am Soc Hematol Educ Program. 2017;2017:365–70.
65. Vilimas T, Mascarenhas J, Palomero T, Mandal M, Buonamici S, Meng F, et al. Targeting the NF-kappaB signaling pathway in Notch1-induced T-cell leukemia. Nat Med. 2007;13(1):70–7.

66. Roue G, Perez-Galan P, Mozos A, Lopez-Guerra M, Xargay-Torrent S, Rosich L, et al. The Hsp90 inhibitor IPI-504 overcomes bortezomib resistance in mantle cell lymphoma in vitro and in vivo by down-regulation of the prosurvival ER chaperone BiP/Grp78. Blood. 2011;117(4):1270–9.
67. Shringarpure R, Catley L, Bhole D, Burger R, Podar K, Tai YT, et al. Gene expression analysis of B-lymphoma cells resistant and sensitive to bortezomib. Br J Haematol. 2006;134(2):145–56.
68. Hu J, Dang N, Menu E, De Bruyne E, Xu D, Van Camp B, et al. Activation of ATF4 mediates unwanted Mcl-1 accumulation by proteasome inhibition. Blood. 2012;119(3):826–37.

Chapter 5
Resistance to Histone Deacetylase Inhibitors in the Treatment of Lymphoma

Allyson Flower and Oussama Abla

Abstract Outcomes for patients with lymphoma have improved through the use of chemo/immunotherapy. However, therapy for patients with advanced disease and relapsed/refractory disease remains inadequate. In addition, off target side effects result in significant short and long-term toxicity. The use of targeted molecular therapy introduces an opportunity for improvement in efficacy and reduction in undesirable off target effects. Histone Deacetylase (HDAC) inhibitors are a class of targeted molecular therapies that have been extensively evaluated for the treatment of refractory malignancies including subtypes of lymphoma. However, critical resistance mechanisms are well described. Optimal efficacy of HDAC inhibitors in the treatment of lymphoma is dependent upon successful strategies to overcome drug resistance.

Keywords Lymphoma · Histone deacetylase inhibitor · Resistance · Epigenetics

Abbreviations

AITL	Angioimmunoblastic T-Cell Lymphoma
AML	Acute Myeloid Leukemia
CHOP	Cyclophosphamide, Doxorubicin, Vincristine, and Prednisone
CR	Complete Response
CTCL	Cutaneous T-Cell Lymphoma
DLBCL	Diffuse Large B-Cell Lymphoma
ER	Endoplasmic Reticulum

A. Flower (✉)
Division of Pediatric Hematology/Oncology, New York Medical College, Valhalla, NY, USA
e-mail: Allyson_flower@nymc.edu

O. Abla
The Hospital for Sick Children, Department of Pediatrics, University of Toronto, Toronto, ON, Canada

A. C. Xavier, M. S. Cairo (eds.), *Resistance to Targeted Therapies in Lymphomas*, Resistance to Targeted Anti-Cancer Therapeutics 21,
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-24424-8_5

FDA	Food and Drug Administration
FL	Follicular Lymphoma
HAT	Histone acetyltransferase
HDAC	Histone Deacetylase
HDACi	HDAC inhibitors
HL	Hodgkin Lymphoma
MCL	Mantle Cell Lymphoma
MM	Multiple Myeloma
MZL	Marginal Zone Lymphoma
NAD	Nicotinamide Adenine Dinucleotide
NHL	Non-Hodgkin Lymphoma
OR	Overall Response
ORR	Overall Response Rate
PCTCL	Primary Cutaneous T-Cell Lymphoma
PFS	Progression-Free Survival
PR	Partial Response
PTCL	Peripheral T-Cell Lymphoma
r/r	relapsed/refractory
SLL	Small Lymphocytic Lymphoma

Introduction

Survival for patients with lymphoma has improved over time through the use of multi-agent chemotherapy and immunotherapy (Fig. 5.1) [1, 2]. However, outcomes for patients with advanced disease or relapsed/refractory (r/r) disease remain poor. Also, importantly, current therapies for the treatment of lymphoma can lead to harmful short and long-term toxicities including cardiac dysfunction, endocrine dysfunction and secondary malignancies. Histone deacetylases (HDACs) are a set of naturally occurring proteins that contribute to gene expression through epigenetic modification. Dysfunctional HDAC activity leads to aberrant gene expression, which ultimately results in the generation of malignancy [3–7]. HDAC inhibitors (HDACi) are a class of targeted molecular therapies that, in addition to extensive alternative mechanisms of action, reverse the activity of dysfunctional HDACs. HDACi have been extensively evaluated for the treatment of refractory malignancies including subtypes of lymphoma, leading to United States Food and Drug Administration (FDA) approval of vorinostat for the treatment of primary cutaneous T-cell lymphoma (PCTCL), romidepsin for PCTCL and peripheral T-cell lymphoma (PTCL), and belinostat for PTCL. Panobinostat is approved by the FDA for use in combination with bortezomib for the treatment of multiple myeloma (MM), but also has activity against PCTLC and other lymphoma subtypes. Chidamide is approved by the China FDA for the treatment of r/r PTCL. However, the efficacy of HDACi in the treatment of lymphoma is limited by several well-described resistance mechanisms including DNA damage repair, reactive oxygen species redox pathways, drug

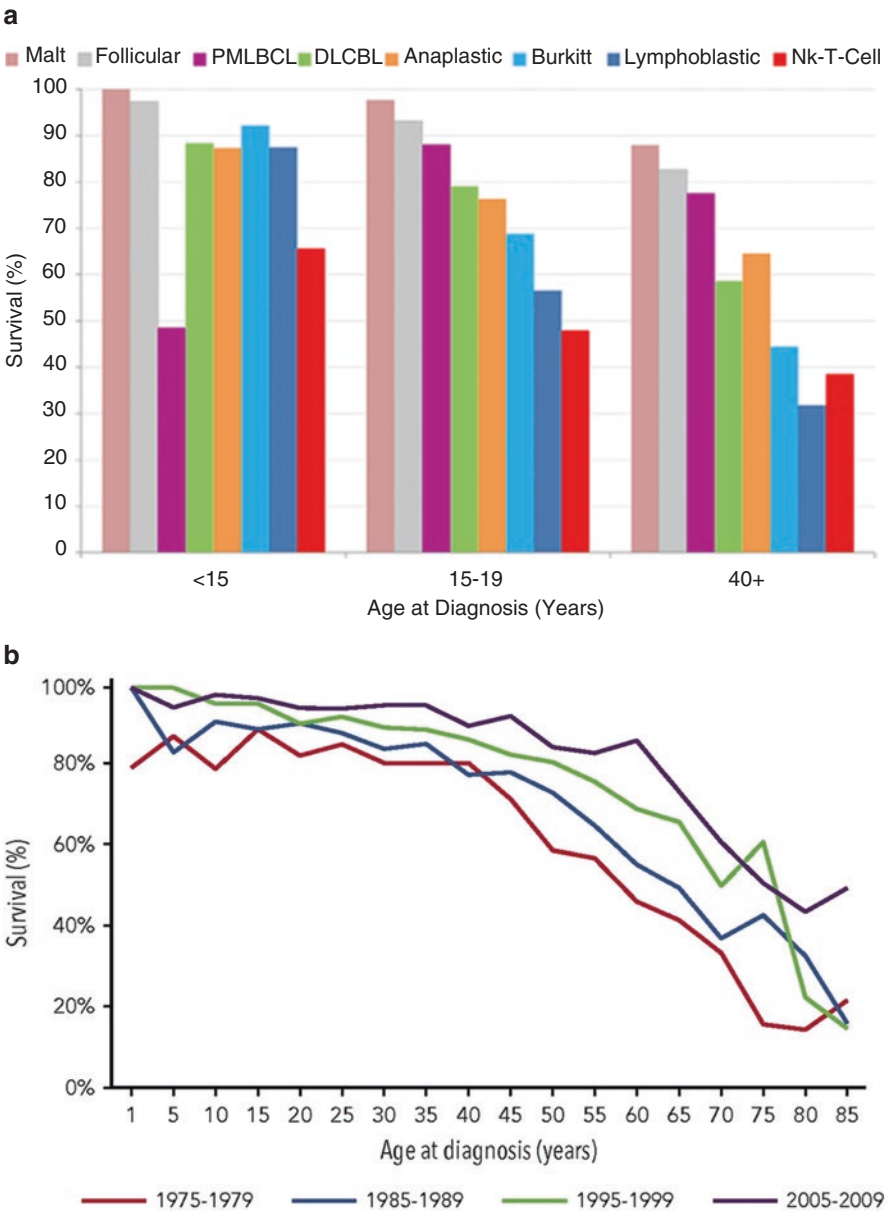


Fig. 5.1 (**a**) NHL 5 year lymphoma specific survival by histologic type and age, 2000–2011. United States SEER data. Source: National Cancer Institute: SEER 18 [1]; (**b**) Hodgkin lymphoma survival by age, 1973–2014. United States SEER data. Source: National Cancer Institute: SEER 18 [2]

efflux, cellular signaling, autophagy, endoplasmic stress pathway signaling, acquired resistance and target HDAC expression. This chapter will focus on HDACs, HDACi, drug resistance mechanisms, and strategies to overcome HDAC resistance in the setting of lymphoma.

Histone Deacetylases

Within the cell nucleus, DNA is wrapped around 4 key histone proteins (H2A, H2B, H3, and H4) to form nucleosomes (Fig. 5.2). When compacted, nucleosomes form the structure of condensed chromatin. Each histone protein is attached to a lysine tail, which extends out from the nucleosome and is accessible for modification. DNA within the nucleosome is controlled, in part, by modification of the lysine tail. Acetylation is one mechanism by which the lysine tail is modified. This occurs through the action of histone acetyltransferases (HAT) and HDACs [8]. HATs add acetyl groups to the histone lysine tail. This action neutralizes the lysine tail and reduces the attraction of negatively charged DNA. As a result, chromatin forms an open structure, and DNA is accessible by transcription factors and RNA polymerase. HDACs are enzymes that control acetylation of histones and other essential

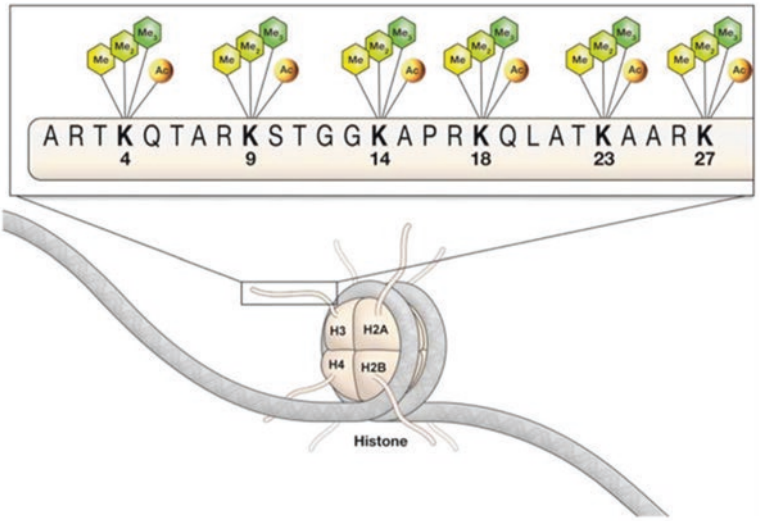


Fig. 5.2 Modification of lysines in histone tails. DNA is wound around four core histone proteins: H2A, H2B, H3, and H4. Each of the histones possess lysine-rich tails and accessibility of the DNA is controlled by modifications to the tail. Lysines can either be multiply methylated, or acetylated. Methylation and deacetylation of lysines both contribute to a more condensed chromatin structure, preventing transcription of genes. Demethylation and acetylation promote a more open chromatin structure allowing for increased gene transcription [8]

proteins by catalyzing deacetylation. Hypoacetylation results in condensed chromatin structure and decreased gene transcription [9].

Acetylation is a key epigenetic mechanism by which gene expression is modified [10]. HATs and HDACs affect cellular function essential to survival and proliferation through their regulation of gene expression [9]. Acetylation of proteins is not limited to histones. Non-histone proteins p53, c-Myc, BCL-2, BCL-6, E2F, HIF1α, hsp90, Ku70, NFκB, pRb, and STAT3 are critical to cellular function and are also affected by HAT and HDAC regulated acetylation [11–13]. The effects of deregulated acetylation have been implicated in the oncogenesis of some malignancies including diffuse large B-cell lymphoma (DLBCL), follicular lymphoma (FL), and PTCL [3–7].

HDACs are classified as either zinc dependent or nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide (NAD) dependent [14, 15]. HDACs are further grouped into 4 classes based on their similarity to yeast HDAC proteins. Tissue specificity of HDACs and distribution within the intracellular compartment varies. Class I HDACs (1, 2, 3 and 8) are ubiquitously expressed in human tissues. Class IIA HDACs (4, 5, 7 and 9) and Class IIB HDACs (6 and 10) are differentially expressed in human tissues. Class III HDACs are known as sirtuins. Activity of these HDACs is NAD dependent. HDAC 11 is the only known Class IV HDAC [8]. Class I, IIA, IIB and IV HDACs are zinc dependent.

Expression of HDACs in lymphomas is not fully defined. Class I HDACs are ubiquitously expressed in lymphoid cell lines and primary lymphoid tumors whereas class II HDACs are differentially expressed (Table 5.1) [16]. The expression of HDACs in lymphoma subtypes, and among tumor tissue in individual patients is essential to the rationale for treatment of lymphoma with HDAC inhibitors. However, the specific targets of HDAC inhibitors in the treatment of lymphoma have not yet been identified.

Table 5.1 Immunoactivity of HDAC activity in reactive lymph nodes [16]

Cell type	HDAC 1	HDAC 2	HDAC 3	HDAC 6	HDAC 10
Germinal center B-cells	+	+	+	–	+
Mantle zone B-cells	+	+	+	–	+
Plasma cells	+	+	+	+	+
T-cells	+	+	+	–	+ strong
Follicular dendritic reticulum cells	+ weak	+ strong	+	–	+
Interdigitating reticulum cells	+ weak	+ strong	+	–	+ weak
Fibroblastic reticulum cells	+ weak	+ strong	+	–	+
Macrophages	+ weak	+ strong	+	–	+
Sinus histiocytes	+	+ strong	+	–	+
Endothelial cells	+	+ strong	+	–	+

Histone Deacetylase Inhibitors

HDACis limit the deacetylation activity of HDACs. This results in unrestricted HAT mediated acetylation of histones and promotes gene transcription. In addition to histone proteins, HDACis regulate gene expression of non-histone proteins critical to cell proliferation and survival by multiple mechanisms.

HDACis induce cell cycle arrest in both healthy and malignant cells [17–20]. The cell cycle phase affected by HDAC inhibition is dose dependent. The same cell is affected in the G0/G1 phase at low doses or the G2/M phase at higher doses. Cell Cycle arrest is mediated by p21 or p15 [21]. In addition, cell cycle arrest is induced by HDACi mediated transcriptional repression of genes involved in DNA synthesis (CTP synthase, thymidylate synthetase) and reduced expression of cyclins [22]. HDAC inhibition upregulates proapoptotic proteins and downregulates anti-apoptotic proteins in the Bcl-2 family and XIAP [23]. Extrinsic apoptosis is stimulated by HDAC inhibition via increased expression of Fas, TNFα and TRAIL death receptors [24].

Other mechanisms by which HDACis induce cell death include inhibition of DNA repair, post translational modification of proteins, decreased angiogenesis, generation of reactive oxygen species, and promotion of inflammation and immunity [12, 25–27]. HDAC inhibition results in decreased angiogenesis via enhanced degradation of HIF1α and decreased production of VEGF [28, 29]. The targeted anti-cancer activity of HDAC inhibitors is based on DNA repair mechanisms functioning in healthy tissues, but not in malignant cells.

HDACis are classified by their chemical structure (hydroxamic acid, cyclic peptide, electrophilic ketone, short chain fatty acid, or benzamide) (Fig. 5.3) [30–32]. Each HDACi differs in potency, pharmacodynamics and off-target effects. Selectivity also varies between HDACis. Vorinostat, panobinostat and balinostat inhibit both Class I and Class II HDACs. Mocetinostat and entinostat inhibit Class I HDACs only, while romidepsin preferentially inhibits Class II HDACs [33–35].

Histone Deacetylase Inhibitor Use in Lymphoma

Three HDAC inhibitors are FDA approved for treatment of patients with r/r lymphoma in the United States. Ongoing clinical trials will further define their role as well as the role of emerging clinical grade HDAC inhibitors.

Vorinostat (suberoylanilide hydroxamic acid)

Vorinostat belongs to the hydroxamic acid class of HDAC inhibitors. Vorinostat inhibits Class I and Class II HDACs. Single agent vorinostat demonstrated a response rate of 24–30% in patients with r/r PCTCL, which led to FDA approval in

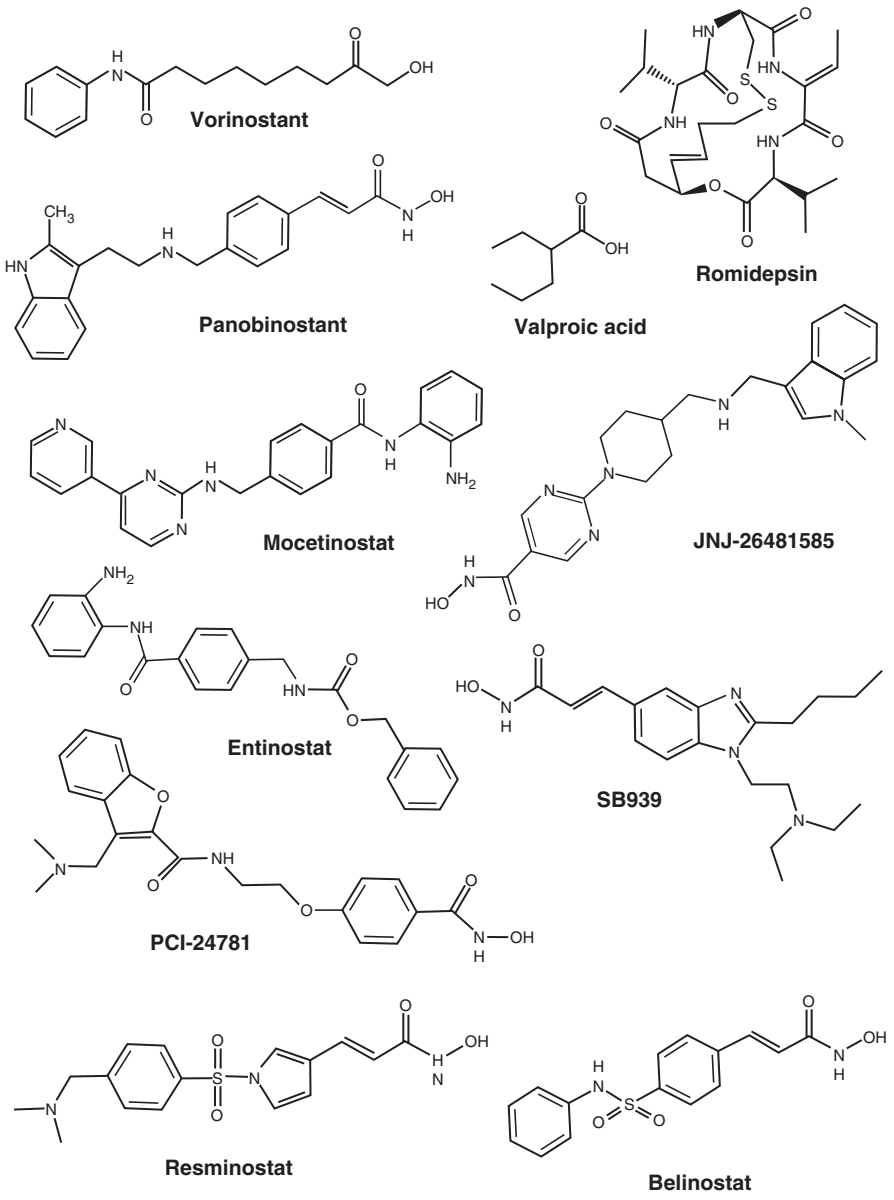


Fig. 5.3 Structure of some of the histone deacetylase inhibitors currently in clinical trials [8]

2006 [36–38]. Safety of administration and activity of vorinostat against Hodgkin lymphoma (HL) and small lymphocytic lymphoma (SLL) were demonstrated in a small number of patients in a preliminary phase 1 clinical trial [39]. However, the objective response rate for a small number of patients with DLBCL was only 5.6% in an early phase 2 clinical trial [40].

Although outcomes for patients with r/r HL treated with single agent vorinostat in a phase 2 clinical trial were dismal, an overall response rate (ORR) of 29% was demonstrated for patients with r/r indolent non-Hodgkin lymphoma (NHL). Though complete or partial response (CR/PR) was demonstrated for patients with FL or marginal zone lymphoma (MZL), no patient with mantle cell lymphoma (MCL) achieved a response [41]. Single agent vorinostat demonstrated a 49% ORR for patients with r/r FL [42]. Vorinostat is administered intravenously or orally. Common side effects associated with vorinostat include fatigue, diarrhea and nausea. Vorinostat has also been associated with thrombocytopenia, dehydration, and rare cases of pulmonary embolism, squamous cell carcinoma, severe anemia and QTc-interval prolongation [43].

Romidepsin (depsipeptide)

Romidepsin is a prodrug that is reduced to an active form intracellularly and has demonstrated activity against Class I HDACs and HDAC 6 [44, 45]. It has been shown to induce malignant cell differentiation, cell cycle arrest and apoptosis, inhibit angiogenesis and deplete hsp90 dependent proteins [46]. Romidepsin was approved by the FDA in 2009 for the treatment of r/r PCTCL and in 2011 for the treatment of r/r PTCL after demonstrating ORRs of 34–38% in affected patients [47–52]. Durable response of up to 48 months was demonstrated for patients with r/r PTCL after treatment with single agent romidepsin [53]. Patients with angioimmunoblastic T-cell lymphoma (AITL) experienced a 33% overall response rate after treatment with single agent romidepsin [54]. Romidepsin is administered intravenously. Adverse events associated with romidepsin include nausea, fatigue, infection, vomiting, anorexia, anemia and neutropenia. It has also been associated with hypomagnesemia and hypokalemia, which can lead to arrhythmia including prolonged QT.

Panobinostat

Panobinostat inhibits Class I, II and IV HDACs. It has been shown to mediate acetylation of H3 and H4, increase p21 levels, disrupt the chaperone function of hsp90, induce cell cycle arrest, and induce apoptosis [55]. Panobinostat was FDA approved for use in combination with bortezoimb for the treatment of MM in 2015. Panobinostat also has activity against PCTCL, HL and DLBCL in clinical trials. Single agent panobinostat therapy resulted in disease response in a small number of patients with PCTCL [56]. An objective response rate of 27% was demonstrated for patients with r/r HL treated with panobinostat [57–59]. Patients with r/r DLBCL achieved response rates of 28% after treatment with panobinostat [60]. Panobinostat

is administered orally. The most common adverse events associated with panobinostat are nausea, vomiting, diarrhea and fatigue. Common adverse grade 3 and 4 adverse events associated with panobinostat are thrombocytopenia, anemia and neutropenia.

Belinostat

Belinostat is a pan-HDACi. It has been shown to inhibit cell proliferation, induce apoptosis, inhibit angiogenesis, and induce differentiation of malignant cells [61, 62]. Belinostat was FDA approved for the treatment of r/r PTCL in 2014. The ORR for patients with r/r PTCL treated with single agent belinostat was 26% [63]. Belinostat is available for intravenous or oral administration. Adverse events associated with belinostat include nausea, vomiting, fatigue, pyrexia, and anemia.

Mocetinostat

Mocetinostat inhibits HDAC 1, 2, 3, and 11 [64]. It has been shown to inhibit the expression of thymus and activation-regulated chemokine/chemokine ligand 17 [65]. Single agent mocetinostat demonstrated an ORR of 18% and 11% for the treatment of patients with r/r DLBCL and FL, respectively [66]. Mocetinostat has also induced disease stability in patients with r/r HL [67]. Mocetinostat is administered in oral form. Common adverse events associated with mocetinostat include fatigue, anemia, nausea, anorexia, hyponatremia, neutropenia, and thrombocytopenia.

Entinostat

Entinostat inhibits HDAC 1 and 3. Entinostat inhibits cell proliferation by down-regulation of XIAP and induction of apoptosis [68]. Etinostat has been shown to increase IL2, p40–70, IP10, and RANTES and to decrease I13 and IL4. As a result, TH1 cytokines are increased. Entinostat also induces expression of tumor associated antigens SSX2 and MAGE-A [68]. Entinostat has activity against HL. The ORR for patients with r/r HL treated with single agent entinostat was 11% [69]. Entinostat is administered orally. The most common side effects associated with entinostat are thrombocytopenia, anemia, neutropenia, leukopenia, hypokalemia and hypophosphatemia.

HDACi Inhibitor Resistance Mechanisms

DNA Damage and Repair Mechanisms

Through hyperacetylation of histones, HDACis alter DNA stability and increase exposure to cytotoxic agents, radiation and reactive oxidative species. In addition, HDACis decrease expression of genes encoding homologous recombination DNA repair proteins (RAD51, RAD52, BRCA1/2, CtIP, Bloom Syndrome Gene, Nijmegan Breakage Syndrome1, XRCC2) and non-homologous recombination end-joining DNA repair proteins (Ku70, Ku86, DNA-PKCs, XRCC4, DNA ligase 4) [70–78]. The mechanism by which normal cells escape HDACi induced DNA damage has been demonstrated through the use of vorinostat [79]. Vorinostat induces accumulation of DNA DSBs in both normal and malignant cells. In malignant cells, vorinostat decreases levels of DNA repair proteins resulting in accumulation of DNA damage leading to cell death. Checkpoint kinase 1 (Chk1) has been proposed as the key factor for resistance to HDACis in normal cells [80]. Exposure of vorinostat, romidepsin or entinostat in combination with Chk1 inhibitor results accumulation of DNA DSBs and induces cell death in normal cells. HDACis induce cell cycle arrest in G1 and G2/M and cell depletion in S phase [81–84]. The effect of HDAC inhibition on mitotic chromosome breakage occurs in malignant but not in normal cells and persists after withdrawal of exposure [79, 80, 85].

Reactive Oxidative Species and Redox Pathways

Accumulation of reactive oxidative species induced by HDAC inhibition results in cell death. Thioredoxin is a thio reductase, which protects healthy cells from oxidative damage caused by reactive oxidative species. There is a negative correlation between sensitivity to HDACis and thioredoxin level [39]. However, vorinostat selectively increases thioredoxin levels in healthy cells. This mechanism plays a role in healthy cell resistance to damage caused by HDACis. In contrast, exposure of vorinostat to transformed cells induces upregulation of thioredoxin binding protein, a negative regulator of thioredoxin. As a result, reactive oxidative species accumulate and ultimately cause cell death. Increased expression of antioxidant genes including thioredoxin, super oxide dismutase 2, and glutathione reductase have been associated with HDACi resistance in acute myeloid leukemia (AML) cells [86, 87]. Lethality of leukemia cells after exposure to HDAC inhibition was significantly diminished by reactive oxidative species scavengers [88, 89]. This evidence suggests that modulation of reactive oxidative species after exposure to HDAC inhibition contributes to resistance in malignant cells.

Drug Efflux Mechanisms

P-glycoprotein-mediated transport of drugs across the cell membrane is a known entity contributing to multidrug resistance in cancer therapy. Exposure to HDAC inhibition including valproic acid, apicidin, romidepsin and sodium butyrate has been associated with increased levels of MDR1 mRNA and p-glycoprotein expression in cancer cells [90–94]. Romidepsin has been identified as a substrate of p-glycoprotein and romidepsin resistant cell lines express increased levels of p-gycoprotein [95, 96]. The increase in p-glycoprotein level is correlated with exposure to romidepsin and is reversible upon withdrawal of exposure [94]. As a result, HDAC activity is not affected [93]. Verapamil mediated inhibition of p-glycoprotein or MDR1 inhibition results in reversal of resistance of romidepsin and apicidin [97]. MDR1 expression is increased in circulating peripheral blood mononuclear cells from patients with romidepsin resistant malignancies [98]. While romidepsin induces cell death in non-p-glycoprotein expressing cells, vorinostat and oxamflatin are active in both non-p-glycoprotein expressing and p-glycoprotein expressing cells [99].

Cell Signaling-Related Mechanisms

Malignant cells may overcome HDAC-mediated cytotoxicity through the counteractive mechanism of specific cell signaling pathways. The BCL-2 protein family consists of both pro-apoptotic and anti-apoptotic groups; antiapoptotic BCL-2 proteins, proapoptotic BAX-like proteins, and proapoptotic BH3-only proteins [100]. The antiapoptotic activity of BCL-2 and BCL-XL limits HDACi-induced cell death. Cytotoxicity of transformed cells treated with vorinostat, sodium butyrate, valproic acid and entinostat is reduced in the presence of BCL-2 or BCL-XL [101–104]. The Eμ-myc mouse model provides a mechanism for evaluation of B-cell lymphoma with defined alterations in apoptotic pathways. Using this model, tumor cell apoptosis was correlated with therapeutic efficacy after exposure to vorinostat. This activity was found to be dependent upon the intrinsic apoptotic pathway, specifically proapoptotic BH3-only proteins Bid and Bim [100]. In contrast, overexpression of pro-apoptotic protein BCL-2 was associated with T-cell lymphoma resistance to vorinostat, romidepsin, and panobinostat [14, 105]. The apoptotic activity of panobinostat, romidepsin and m-carboxycinnamic acid bis-hydroxamide can be blocked by suppression of pro-apoptotic proteins BMV, BAX, or MCL-1 [105–107].

Activation of nuclear factor kB is a contributor to drug resistance in solid tumors and hematologic malignancies [108]. Apoptosis is indirectly downregulated by nuclear factor kB mediated transcription of anti-apoptotic genes including TNF receptor associated factors, Mn-SOD, and BCL-XL [109]. Vorinostat, trichostatin A, entinostat and pabinostat activate nuclear factor kB in malignant cells. Through

this mechanism, the cytotoxicity of HDACis is reduced [110–113]. Exposure to HDAC inhibition in addition to nuclear factor kB inhibition eliminates nuclear factor kB-mediated resistance [110, 111, 113, 114].

The JAK/STAT pathway promotes oncogenesis through interaction with antiapoptotic target genes and plays a key role in drug resistance in solid tumors and hematologic malignancies [115]. HDACis downregulate transcription of STAT target genes [116]. In cutaneous T-cell lymphoma (CTCL) cell lines and peripheral blood lymphocytes, HDACis reduce expression of STAT protein expression [117]. However, overexpression of antiapoptotic STAT proteins is associated with resistance to HDACis [118]. Increased expression of STAT proteins has also been associated with therapy resistance in lymphoma cell lines. In addition, nuclear accumulation of STAT1 and pSTAT3 was associated with lack of clinical response in CTCL patients [119]. Vorinostat in combination with JAK2 inhibitor demonstrated synergy in antiproliferative effect and downregulation of antiapoptotic genes [119]. This synergistic effect was also demonstrated through the use of panobinostat in combination with JAK inhibitor [120].

Retinoids modulate growth, differentiation, and apoptosis of cancer cells. Induction of TRAIL-mediated death signaling contributes to the therapeutic value of retinoids [121]. Inhibition of retinoic acid signaling is mediated by retinoic acid receptor α and preferentially expressed antigen of melanoma, and contributes to HDAC resistance [122]. Elimination of retinoic acid receptor α and preferentially expressed antigen of melanoma promotes HDAC inhibitor induced cell death [123].

Autophagy

Autophagy is the process by which cells maintain homeostasis and is mediated by lysosome dependent degradation of cellular components. Autophagosomes engulf and deliver non-essential cellular components to the lysosome for processing [124]. Accumulation of autophagosomes has been associated with resistance to HDAC inhibition and autophagy genes are upregulated by HDACis [125]. Chloroquine or bafilomycin interfere with autophagy and increase cell death in HDAC inhibitor resistant cells [125, 126].

Endoplasmic Reticulum Stress-Related Signaling

The endoplasmic reticulum (ER) is a cellular organelle that maintains homeostasis through control of protein synthesis, folding, delivery, and degradation [127]. Excessive unfolded proteins within the endoplasmic reticulum induce stress and promote the unfolded protein response. The unfolded protein response triggers glucose regulated protein 78 to bind to unfolded proteins and chaperone them to the

proteasome for degradation [128]. HDAC inhibitors induce overexpression of GRP78, which leads to HDAC inhibitor resistance [129–132].

Acetylation of GRP78 by panobinostat or vorinostat leads to cellular apoptosis [133, 134]. This proapoptotic signaling is mediated by protein kinase RNA-like EF kinase (PERK), which activates CAAT/enahancer binding protein homologous protein (CHOP) [127, 133]. Depletion of PERK or inhibition of CHOP lead to HDAC inhibitor resistance [135].

HDAC Expression in Lymphoma

The pattern of HDAC enzyme expression in lymphoma subtypes in incompletely understood. Amongst lymphoma tissue samples, expressions of class I and class II HDACs is variable (Table 5.1). Absent or low expression of HDAC targets in lymphoma is critical to the efficacy of selected HDACi therapy and is a mechanism of HDACi resistance. Class I HDACs are expressed in lymphoma cell lines and primary tumors including the non-malignant HL cellular microenvironment. The most variably expressed HDAC in lymphoma is HDAC 6, which is undetected or only weakly expressed in 64% of lymphoid cell lines and 93% of primary lymphoma tissue samples. Cells expressing HDAC 6 are more sensitive to Class I HDACi MGCD0103 [16]. Absent expression of HDAC 3 has been associated with vorinostat resistance and panobinostat cross resistance in CTCL T-cell leukemia/lymphoma [136].

Acquired Resistance to HDAC Inhibitors

Exposure to therapeutic agents can lead to drug resistance in cancer cells. Due to their heterogeneity, malignant cells have the capacity to induce mutations to promote cell survival and support resistant stem cell-like cells lines [137, 138]. Cancer cells with acquired resistance to HDACis exhibit decreased acetylation of histones and loss of G2 checkpoint inhibition [139]. Acquired resistance to HDACis can cause cross resistance. Resistance to vorinostat causes cross resistance to hydroxamic acid and the aliphatic acid-based HDACis [139]. Cancer cells with resistance to dacinostat show cross resistance not only to other HDACis vorinostat and panobinostat, but also to other chemotherapeutic agents. Hsp90 inhibitor reverses acquired resistance to dacinostat [140]. Belinostat resistant T-cell lymphoma cell lines show cross resistance with vorinostat, romidepsin, panobinostat, and ricolinostat [141].

Acquired resistance to HDAC inhibitors in malignant cells can be reversed. Reversible drug resistance is mediated by epigenetic modification. Restoration of HDAC3 expression by hypomethylation in cutaneous T-cell lymphoma and T-cell leukemia/lymphoma cell lines results in sensitization of cells previously proven to be vorinostat resistant [142].

Strategies to Overcome HDAC Inhibitor Resistance in Lymphoma Therapy

Chemotherapy Sensitization

Open chromatin structure after HDACi therapy increases DNA exposure to chemotherapeutic agents. The use of panobinostat in combination with ifosfamide, carboplatin and etoposide resulted in significantly improved CR rates for patients with r/r HL in comparison to ifosfamide, carboplatin and etoposide alone. However, the addition of panobinostat resulted in significantly increased incidence of neutropenia and thrombocytopenia [143].

Belinostat, cyclophosphamide, doxorubicin, vincristine and prednisone each target cell cycle arrest with different mechanisms of action, and their antineoplastic effects are potentially additive. Belinostat used in combination with cyclophosphamide, doxorubicin, vincristine, and prednisone (CHOP) resulted in an overall response rate of 89% for patients with peripheral T-cell lymphoma. The most frequent grade 3 or 4 adverse events included neutropenia and anemia [144].

Chidamide monotherapy for patients with r/r PTCL resulted in an ORR of 39%. However, when used in combination with CHOP-like, cisplatin based, or other chemotherapy regimens, overall response (OR) and progression-free survival (PFS) were significantly improved. Grade 3 and 4 adverse events included neutropenia and thrombocytopenia [145, 146].

Epigenetic Therapy

HDACs are one of many contributors to modification of DNA expression. In addition to acetylation, other epigenetic alternations including methylation, phosphorylation, ubiquitylation, and sumolyation influence gene expression without changing the DNA sequence. Alternative epigenetic factors also influence oncogenesis, and are potential targets for combination therapy.

The mTOR pathway influences cellular metabolism, growth and metabolism. Sirolimus is an mTOR inhibitor which has synergistic activity when used in combination with vorinostat. Patients with r/r HL experienced a response rate of 44% after treatment with sirolimus plus vorinostat with limited toxicity. The mTOR inhibitor everolimus used in combination with panobinostat resulted in objective responses in patients with indolent lymphoma, T-cell lymphoma, MCL and an ORR of 43% for patients with r/r HL. The toxicity profile included thrombocytopenia, neutropenia, anemia, infection, fatigue and dyspnea [147].

Bortezomib is a proteasome inhibitor. When used in combination with vorinostat, patients with r/r MCL achieved and ORR of 31.8%. However, limited activity was seen using these agents for the treatment of r/r DLBCL [148]. Patients with r/r PTCL achieved an ORR of 43% after treatment with combination borezominb plus panobinostat [149].

Immunotherapy

Rituximab is an anti-CD20 monoclonal antibody. Rituximab used in combination with panobinostat resulted in ORR of only 11% for patients with r/r DLBCL. The toxicity profile was similar to that seen with single agent HDAC inhibition and included thrombocytopenia, fatigue, anemia, diarrhea, nausea, lymphopenia, anorexia and hypophosphatemia [150].

Belinostat-resistant T-cell lymphoma cell lines exhibit decreased JAK/STAT activity and increased levels of reovirus receptor junctional adhesion molecule-A (JAM-A). After exposure to reovirus formulation, belinostat resistant T-cell lymphoma cell lines are sensitized both *in vivo* and *in vitro.* Enhanced sensitivity is associated with increased viral load and is mediated through endoplasmic reticulum stress mediated apoptosis. This preclinical data suggests that oncolytic reovirus is a promising therapeutic strategy for the treatment of HDAC resistant lymphomas. An early phase clinical trial is planned [141]

Toxicity of HDAC Inhibitors

HDAC inhibitors are associated with a range of adverse effects including myelsupression, diarrhea and cardiac arrythmias, specifically ST segment abnormalities and QTc interval prolongation, atrial fibrillation, and rarely ventricular tachyarrhythmias [151]. Monitoring of these and other side effects will be critical to the safety evaluation of HDAC inhibitors used alone or in combination with other agents in early phase clinical trials.

Conclusion

The use of HDAC inhibitors for treatment of subtypes of lymphoma is promising. However, the efficacy of single agent HDAC inhibition for patients with r/r CTCL, PTCL and HL is limited. This may, in part, be due to the aggressive nature of these diseases. However, multiple mechanisms of drug resistance also contribute to refractoriness. A more comprehensive understanding of resistance mechanisms through the identification of key pathways is critical to the development of strategies to overcome this limitation for the treatment of patients with lymphoma. The use of HDACi in combination with chemotherapy, alternative epigenetic modifiers or immunotherapy has demonstrated efficacy in lymphoma subtypes with limited toxicity. Evaluation of strategies to improve HDAC inhibitor efficacy in the treatment of lymphoma is ongoing.

Acknowledgements AF reviewed the literatures, developed the design of the paper and wrote the manuscript. OA critically revised the manuscript and have approved the final version for publication. The authors would like to thank Erin Morris, RN for her excellent assistance with the preparation of this manuscript.

Disclosure of Conflict of Interest No potential conflicts of interest were disclosed.

References

1. Hochberg J, Flower A, Brugieres L, Cairo MS. NHL in adolescents and young adults: a unique population. Pediatr Blood Cancer. 2018;65(8):e27073.
2. Flerlage JE, Metzger ML, Bhakta N. The management of Hodgkin lymphoma in adolescents and young adults: burden of disease or burden of choice? Blood. 2018;132(4):376–84.
3. Shaffer AL, Rosenwald A, Staudt LM. Lymphoid malignancies: the dark side of B-cell differentiation. Nat Rev Immunol. 2002;2(12):920–32.
4. Marquard L, Gjerdrum LM, Christensen IJ, Jensen PB, Sehested M, Ralfkiaer E. Prognostic significance of the therapeutic targets histone deacetylase 1, 2, 6 and acetylated histone H4 in cutaneous T-cell lymphoma. Histopathology. 2008;53(3):267–77.
5. Marquard L, Poulsen CB, Gjerdrum LM, de Nully Brown P, Christensen IJ, Jensen PB, et al. Histone deacetylase 1, 2, 6 and acetylated histone H4 in B- and T-cell lymphomas. Histopathology. 2009;54(6):688–98.
6. Bianco-Miotto T, Chiam K, Buchanan G, Jindal S, Day TK, Thomas M, et al. Global levels of specific histone modifications and an epigenetic gene signature predict prostate cancer progression and development. Cancer Epidemiol Biomark Prev. 2010;19(10):2611–22.
7. Elsheikh SE, Green AR, Rakha EA, Powe DG, Ahmed RA, Collins HM, et al. Global histone modifications in breast cancer correlate with tumor phenotypes, prognostic factors, and patient outcome. Cancer Res. 2009;69(9):3802–9.
8. Robey RW, Chakraborty AR, Basseville A, Luchenko V, Bahr J, Zhan Z, et al. Histone deacetylase inhibitors: emerging mechanisms of resistance. Mol Pharm. 2011;8(6):2021–31.
9. Narlikar GJ, Fan HY, Kingston RE. Cooperation between complexes that regulate chromatin structure and transcription. Cell. 2002;108(4):475–87.
10. Quina AS, Buschbeck M, Di Croce L. Chromatin structure and epigenetics. Biochem Pharmacol. 2006;72(11):1563–9.
11. Marks PA, Xu WS. Histone deacetylase inhibitors: potential in cancer therapy. J Cell Biochem. 2009;107(4):600–8.
12. Choudhary C, Kumar C, Gnad F, Nielsen ML, Rehman M, Walther TC, et al. Lysine acetylation targets protein complexes and co-regulates major cellular functions. Science. 2009;325(5942):834–40.
13. Glozak MA, Sengupta N, Zhang X, Seto E. Acetylation and deacetylation of non-histone proteins. Gene. 2005;363:15–23.
14. Bolden JE, Peart MJ, Johnstone RW. Anticancer activities of histone deacetylase inhibitors. Nat Rev Drug Discov. 2006;5(9):769–84.
15. Minucci S, Pelicci PG. Histone deacetylase inhibitors and the promise of epigenetic (and more) treatments for cancer. Nat Rev Cancer. 2006;6(1):38–51.
16. Gloghini A, Buglio D, Khaskhely NM, Georgakis G, Orlowski RZ, Neelapu SS, et al. Expression of histone deacetylases in lymphoma: implication for the development of selective inhibitors. Br J Haematol. 2009;147(4):515–25.
17. Marks PA, Dokmanovic M. Histone deacetylase inhibitors: discovery and development as anticancer agents. Expert Opin Investig Drugs. 2005;14(12):1497–511.

18. Ungerstedt JS, Sowa Y, Xu WS, Shao Y, Dokmanovic M, Perez G, et al. Role of thioredoxin in the response of normal and transformed cells to histone deacetylase inhibitors. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA. 2005;102(3):673–8.
19. Gabrielli BG, Johnstone RW, Saunders NA. Identifying molecular targets mediating the anticancer activity of histone deacetylase inhibitors: a work in progress. Curr Cancer Drug Targets. 2002;2(4):337–53.
20. Marks PA, Richon VM, Rifkind RA. Histone deacetylase inhibitors: inducers of differentiation or apoptosis of transformed cells. J Natl Cancer Inst. 2000;92(15):1210–6.
21. Hitomi T, Matsuzaki Y, Yokota T, Takaoka Y, Sakai T. p15(INK4b) in HDAC inhibitor-induced growth arrest. FEBS Lett. 2003;554(3):347–50.
22. Glaser KB, Staver MJ, Waring JF, Stender J, Ulrich RG, Davidsen SK. Gene expression profiling of multiple histone deacetylase (HDAC) inhibitors: defining a common gene set produced by HDAC inhibition in T24 and MDA carcinoma cell lines. Mol Cancer Ther. 2003;2(2):151–63.
23. Zhang XD, Gillespie SK, Borrow JM, Hersey P. The histone deacetylase inhibitor suberic bishydroxamate regulates the expression of multiple apoptotic mediators and induces mitochondria-dependent apoptosis of melanoma cells. Mol Cancer Ther. 2004;3(4):425–35.
24. Insinga A, Monestiroli S, Ronzoni S, Gelmetti V, Marchesi F, Viale A, et al. Inhibitors of histone deacetylases induce tumor-selective apoptosis through activation of the death receptor pathway. Nat Med. 2005;11(1):71–6.
25. Lane AA, Chabner BA. Histone deacetylase inhibitors in cancer therapy. J Clin Oncol. 2009;27(32):5459–68.
26. Marks PA. The clinical development of histone deacetylase inhibitors as targeted anticancer drugs. Expert Opin Investig Drugs. 2010;19(9):1049–66.
27. Rosato RR, Almenara JA, Grant S. The histone deacetylase inhibitor MS-275 promotes differentiation or apoptosis in human leukemia cells through a process regulated by generation of reactive oxygen species and induction of p21CIP1/WAF1 1. Cancer Res. 2003;63(13):3637–45.
28. Liang D, Kong X, Sang N. Effects of histone deacetylase inhibitors on HIF-1. Cell Cycle. 2006;5(21):2430–5.
29. Heider U, Kaiser M, Sterz J, Zavrski I, Jakob C, Fleissner C, et al. Histone deacetylase inhibitors reduce VEGF production and induce growth suppression and apoptosis in human mantle cell lymphoma. Eur J Haematol. 2006;76(1):42–50.
30. Beckers T, Burkhardt C, Wieland H, Gimmnich P, Ciossek T, Maier T, et al. Distinct pharmacological properties of second generation HDAC inhibitors with the benzamide or hydroxamate head group. Int J Cancer. 2007;121(5):1138–48.
31. Drummond DC, Noble CO, Kirpotin DB, Guo Z, Scott GK, Benz CC. Clinical development of histone deacetylase inhibitors as anticancer agents. Annu Rev Pharmacol Toxicol. 2005;45:495–528.
32. Marks PA, Breslow R. Dimethyl sulfoxide to vorinostat: development of this histone deacetylase inhibitor as an anticancer drug. Nat Biotechnol. 2007;25(1):84–90.
33. Haggarty SJ, Koeller KM, Wong JC, Grozinger CM, Schreiber SL. Domain-selective small-molecule inhibitor of histone deacetylase 6 (HDAC6)-mediated tubulin deacetylation. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA. 2003;100(8):4389–94.
34. Ontoria JM, Altamura S, Di Marco A, Ferrigno F, Laufer R, Muraglia E, et al. Identification of novel, selective, and stable inhibitors of class II histone deacetylases. Validation studies of the inhibition of the enzymatic activity of HDAC4 by small molecules as a novel approach for cancer therapy. J Med Chem. 2009;52(21):6782–9.
35. Mai A, Massa S, Pezzi R, Simeoni S, Rotili D, Nebbioso A, et al. Class II (IIa)-selective histone deacetylase inhibitors. 1. Synthesis and biological evaluation of novel (aryloxopropenyl) pyrrolyl hydroxyamides. J Med Chem. 2005;48(9):3344–53.
36. Duvic M, Vu J. Vorinostat: a new oral histone deacetylase inhibitor approved for cutaneous T-cell lymphoma. Expert Opin Investig Drugs. 2007;16(7):1111–20.

37. Olsen EA, Kim YH, Kuzel TM, Pacheco TR, Foss FM, Parker S, et al. Phase IIb multicenter trial of vorinostat in patients with persistent, progressive, or treatment refractory cutaneous T-cell lymphoma. J Clin Oncol. 2007;25(21):3109–15.
38. Kavanaugh SM, White LA, Kolesar JM. Vorinostat: a novel therapy for the treatment of cutaneous T-cell lymphoma. Am J Health Syst Pharm. 2010;67(10):793–7.
39. O'Connor OA, Heaney ML, Schwartz L, Richardson S, Willim R, MacGregor-Cortelli B, et al. Clinical experience with intravenous and oral formulations of the novel histone deacetylase inhibitor suberoylanilide hydroxamic acid in patients with advanced hematologic malignancies. J Clin Oncol. 2006;24(1):166–73.
40. Crump M, Coiffier B, Jacobsen ED, Sun L, Ricker JL, Xie H, et al. Phase II trial of oral vorinostat (suberoylanilide hydroxamic acid) in relapsed diffuse large-B-cell lymphoma. Ann Oncol. 2008;19(5):964–9.
41. Kirschbaum M, Frankel P, Popplewell L, Zain J, Delioukina M, Pullarkat V, et al. Phase II study of vorinostat for treatment of relapsed or refractory indolent non-Hodgkin's lymphoma and mantle cell lymphoma. J Clin Oncol. 2011;29(9):1198–203.
42. Ogura M, Ando K, Suzuki T, Ishizawa K, Oh SY, Itoh K, et al. A multicentre phase II study of vorinostat in patients with relapsed or refractory indolent B-cell non-Hodgkin lymphoma and mantle cell lymphoma. Br J Haematol. 2014;165(6):768–76.
43. Duvic M, Talpur R, Ni X, Zhang C, Hazarika P, Kelly C, et al. Phase 2 trial of oral vorinostat (suberoylanilide hydroxamic acid, SAHA) for refractory cutaneous T-cell lymphoma (CTCL). Blood. 2007;109(1):31–9.
44. Furumai R, Matsuyama A, Kobashi N, Lee KH, Nishiyama M, Nakajima H, et al. FK228 (depsipeptide) as a natural prodrug that inhibits class I histone deacetylases. Cancer Res. 2002;62(17):4916–21.
45. Bantscheff M, Hopf C, Savitski MM, Dittmann A, Grandi P, Michon AM, et al. Chemoproteomics profiling of HDAC inhibitors reveals selective targeting of HDAC complexes. Nat Biotechnol. 2011;29(3):255–65.
46. Campas-Moya C. Romidepsin for the treatment of cutaneous T-cell lymphoma. Drugs Today (Barc). 2009;45(11):787–95.
47. Piekarz RL, Robey R, Sandor V, Bakke S, Wilson WH, Dahmoush L, et al. Inhibitor of histone deacetylation, depsipeptide (FR901228), in the treatment of peripheral and cutaneous T-cell lymphoma: a case report. Blood. 2001;98(9):2865–8.
48. Mercurio C, Minucci S, Pelicci PG. Histone deacetylases and epigenetic therapies of hematological malignancies. Pharmacol Res. 2010;62(1):18–34.
49. Piekarz RL, Frye R, Turner M, Wright JJ, Allen SL, Kirschbaum MH, et al. Phase II multiinstitutional trial of the histone deacetylase inhibitor romidepsin as monotherapy for patients with cutaneous T-cell lymphoma. J Clin Oncol. 2009;27(32):5410–7.
50. Whittaker SJ, Demierre MF, Kim EJ, Rook AH, Lerner A, Duvic M, et al. Final results from a multicenter, international, pivotal study of romidepsin in refractory cutaneous T-cell lymphoma. J Clin Oncol. 2010;28(29):4485–91.
51. Piekarz RL, Frye R, Prince HM, Kirschbaum MH, Zain J, Allen SL, et al. Phase 2 trial of romidepsin in patients with peripheral T-cell lymphoma. Blood. 2011;117(22):5827–34.
52. Duvic M, Bates SE, Piekarz R, Eisch R, Kim YH, Lerner A, et al. Responses to romidepsin in patients with cutaneous T-cell lymphoma and prior treatment with systemic chemotherapy. Leuk Lymphoma. 2018;59(4):880–7.
53. Coiffier B, Pro B, Prince HM, Foss F, Sokol L, Greenwood M, et al. Romidepsin for the treatment of relapsed/refractory peripheral T-cell lymphoma: pivotal study update demonstrates durable responses. J Hematol Oncol. 2014;7:11.
54. Pro B, Horwitz SM, Prince HM, Foss FM, Sokol L, Greenwood M, et al. Romidepsin induces durable responses in patients with relapsed or refractory angioimmunoblastic T-cell lymphoma. Hematol Oncol. 2017;35(4):914–7.
55. George P, Bali P, Annavarapu S, Scuto A, Fiskus W, Guo F, et al. Combination of the histone deacetylase inhibitor LBH589 and the hsp90 inhibitor 17-AAG is highly active

against human CML-BC cells and AML cells with activating mutation of FLT-3. Blood. 2005;105(4):1768–76.
56. Ellis L, Pan Y, Smyth GK, George DJ, McCormack C, Williams-Truax R, et al. Histone deacetylase inhibitor panobinostat induces clinical responses with associated alterations in gene expression profiles in cutaneous T-cell lymphoma. Clin Cancer Res. 2008;14(14):4500–10.
57. Dickinson M, Ritchie D, DeAngelo DJ, Spencer A, Ottmann OG, Fischer T, et al. Preliminary evidence of disease response to the pan deacetylase inhibitor panobinostat (LBH589) in refractory Hodgkin Lymphoma. Br J Haematol. 2009;147(1):97–101.
58. Younes A. Novel treatment strategies for patients with relapsed classical Hodgkin lymphoma. Hematology Am Soc Hematol Educ Program. 2009;2009:507–19.
59. Younes A, Sureda A, Ben-Yehuda D, Zinzani PL, Ong TC, Prince HM, et al. Panobinostat in patients with relapsed/refractory Hodgkin's lymphoma after autologous stem-cell transplantation: results of a phase II study. J Clin Oncol. 2012;30(18):2197–203.
60. Assouline SE, Nielsen TH, Yu S, Alcaide M, Chong L, MacDonald D, et al. Phase 2 study of panobinostat with or without rituximab in relapsed diffuse large B-cell lymphoma. Blood. 2016;128(2):185–94.
61. Kapoor S. Inhibition of HDAC6-dependent carcinogenesis: emerging, new therapeutic options besides belinostat. Int J Cancer. 2009;124(2):509.
62. Qian X, Ara G, Mills E, LaRochelle WJ, Lichenstein HS, Jeffers M. Activity of the histone deacetylase inhibitor belinostat (PXD101) in preclinical models of prostate cancer. Int J Cancer. 2008;122(6):1400–10.
63. O'Connor OA, Horwitz S, Masszi T, Van Hoof A, Brown P, Doorduijn J, et al. Belinostat in patients with relapsed or refractory peripheral T-cell lymphoma: results of the pivotal phase II BELIEF (CLN-19) study. J Clin Oncol. 2015;33(23):2492–9.
64. Fournel M, Bonfils C, Hou Y, Yan PT, Trachy-Bourget MC, Kalita A, et al. MGCD0103, a novel isotype-selective histone deacetylase inhibitor, has broad spectrum antitumor activity in vitro and in vivo. Mol Cancer Ther. 2008;7(4):759–68.
65. Buglio D, Georgakis GV, Hanabuchi S, Arima K, Khaskhely NM, Liu YJ, et al. Vorinostat inhibits STAT6-mediated TH2 cytokine and TARC production and induces cell death in Hodgkin lymphoma cell lines. Blood. 2008;112(4):1424–33.
66. Batlevi CL, Crump M, Andreadis C, Rizzieri D, Assouline SE, Fox S, et al. A phase 2 study of mocetinostat, a histone deacetylase inhibitor, in relapsed or refractory lymphoma. Br J Haematol. 2017;178(3):434–41.
67. Younes A, Oki Y, Bociek RG, Kuruvilla J, Fanale M, Neelapu S, et al. Mocetinostat for relapsed classical Hodgkin's lymphoma: an open-label, single-arm, phase 2 trial. Lancet Oncol. 2011;12(13):1222–8.
68. Jona A, Khaskhely N, Buglio D, Shafer JA, Derenzini E, Bollard CM, et al. The histone deacetylase inhibitor entinostat (SNDX-275) induces apoptosis in Hodgkin lymphoma cells and synergizes with Bcl-2 family inhibitors. Exp Hematol. 2011;39(10):1007–17.. e1
69. Batlevi CL, Kasamon Y, Bociek RG, Lee P, Gore L, Copeland A, et al. ENGAGE- 501: phase II study of entinostat (SNDX-275) in relapsed and refractory Hodgkin lymphoma. Haematologica. 2016;101(8):968–75.
70. Adimoolam S, Sirisawad M, Chen J, Thiemann P, Ford JM, Buggy JJ. HDAC inhibitor PCI-24781 decreases RAD51 expression and inhibits homologous recombination. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA. 2007;104(49):19482–7.
71. Kachhap SK, Rosmus N, Collis SJ, Kortenhorst MS, Wissing MD, Hedayati M, et al. Downregulation of homologous recombination DNA repair genes by HDAC inhibition in prostate cancer is mediated through the E2F1 transcription factor. PLoS One. 2010;5(6):e11208.
72. Lopez G, Liu J, Ren W, Wei W, Wang S, Lahat G, et al. Combining PCI-24781, a novel histone deacetylase inhibitor, with chemotherapy for the treatment of soft tissue sarcoma. Clin Cancer Res. 2009;15(10):3472–83.
73. Palmieri D, Lockman PR, Thomas FC, Hua E, Herring J, Hargrave E, et al. Vorinostat inhibits brain metastatic colonization in a model of triple-negative breast cancer and induces DNA double-strand breaks. Clin Cancer Res. 2009;15(19):6148–57.

74. Robert T, Vanoli F, Chiolo I, Shubassi G, Bernstein KA, Rothstein R, et al. HDACs link the DNA damage response, processing of double-strand breaks and autophagy. Nature. 2011;471(7336):74–9.
75. Zhang Y, Carr T, Dimtchev A, Zaer N, Dritschilo A, Jung M. Attenuated DNA damage repair by trichostatin A through BRCA1 suppression. Radiat Res. 2007;168(1):115–24.
76. Chen CS, Wang YC, Yang HC, Huang PH, Kulp SK, Yang CC, et al. Histone deacetylase inhibitors sensitize prostate cancer cells to agents that produce DNA double-strand breaks by targeting Ku70 acetylation. Cancer Res. 2007;67(11):5318–27.
77. Munshi A, Kurland JF, Nishikawa T, Tanaka T, Hobbs ML, Tucker SL, et al. Histone deacetylase inhibitors radiosensitize human melanoma cells by suppressing DNA repair activity. Clin Cancer Res. 2005;11(13):4912–22.
78. Yaneva M, Li H, Marple T, Hasty P. Non-homologous end joining, but not homologous recombination, enables survival for cells exposed to a histone deacetylase inhibitor. Nucleic Acids Res. 2005;33(16):5320–30.
79. Lee JH, Choy ML, Ngo L, Foster SS, Marks PA. Histone deacetylase inhibitor induces DNA damage, which normal but not transformed cells can repair. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA. 2010;107(33):14639–44.
80. Lee JH, Choy ML, Ngo L, Venta-Perez G, Marks PA. Role of checkpoint kinase 1 (Chk1) in the mechanisms of resistance to histone deacetylase inhibitors. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA. 2011;108(49):19629–34.
81. Richon VM, Sandhoff TW, Rifkind RA, Marks PA. Histone deacetylase inhibitor selectively induces p21WAF1 expression and gene-associated histone acetylation. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA. 2000;97(18):10014–9.
82. Gui CY, Ngo L, Xu WS, Richon VM, Marks PA. Histone deacetylase (HDAC) inhibitor activation of p21WAF1 involves changes in promoter-associated proteins, including HDAC1. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA. 2004;101(5):1241–6.
83. Ju R, Muller MT. Histone deacetylase inhibitors activate p21(WAF1) expression via ATM. Cancer Res. 2003;63(11):2891–7.
84. Sandor V, Senderowicz A, Mertins S, Sackett D, Sausville E, Blagosklonny MV, et al. P21-dependent g(1)arrest with downregulation of cyclin D1 and upregulation of cyclin E by the histone deacetylase inhibitor FR901228. Br J Cancer. 2000;83(6):817–25.
85. Qiu L, Burgess A, Fairlie DP, Leonard H, Parsons PG, Gabrielli BG. Histone deacetylase inhibitors trigger a G2 checkpoint in normal cells that is defective in tumor cells. Mol Biol Cell. 2000;11(6):2069–83.
86. Garcia-Manero G. Demethylating agents in myeloid malignancies. Curr Opin Oncol. 2008;20(6):705–10.
87. Marks PA. Thioredoxin in cancer—role of histone deacetylase inhibitors. Semin Cancer Biol. 2006;16(6):436–43.
88. Hu Y, Lu W, Chen G, Zhang H, Jia Y, Wei Y, et al. Overcoming resistance to histone deacetylase inhibitors in human leukemia with the redox modulating compound beta-phenylethyl isothiocyanate. Blood. 2010;116(15):2732–41.
89. Rosato RR, Almenara JA, Maggio SC, Coe S, Atadja P, Dent P, et al. Role of histone deacetylase inhibitor-induced reactive oxygen species and DNA damage in LAQ-824/fludarabine antileukemic interactions. Mol Cancer Ther. 2008;7(10):3285–97.
90. Cerveny L, Svecova L, Anzenbacherova E, Vrzal R, Staud F, Dvorak Z, et al. Valproic acid induces CYP3A4 and MDR1 gene expression by activation of constitutive androstane receptor and pregnane X receptor pathways. Drug Metab Dispos. 2007;35(7):1032–41.
91. Frommel TO, Coon JS, Tsuruo T, Roninson IB. Variable effects of sodium butyrate on the expression and function of the MDR1 (P-glycoprotein) gene in colon carcinoma cell lines. Int J Cancer. 1993;55(2):297–302.
92. Kim YK, Kim NH, Hwang JW, Song YJ, Park YS, Seo DW, et al. Histone deacetylase inhibitor apicidin-mediated drug resistance: involvement of P-glycoprotein. Biochem Biophys Res Commun. 2008;368(4):959–64.

93. Xiao JJ, Huang Y, Dai Z, Sadee W, Chen J, Liu S, et al. Chemoresistance to depsipeptide FK228 [(E)-(1S,4S,10S,21R)-7-[(Z)-ethylidene]-4,21-diisopropyl-2-oxa-12,13-dithia-5,8,20,23-tetraazabicyclo[8,7,6]-tricos-16-ene-3,6,9,22-pentanone] is mediated by reversible MDR1 induction in human cancer cell lines. J Pharmacol Exp Ther. 2005;314(1):467–75.
94. Yamada H, Arakawa Y, Saito S, Agawa M, Kano Y, Horiguchi-Yamada J. Depsipeptide-resistant KU812 cells show reversible P-glycoprotein expression, hyper-acetylated histones, and modulated gene expression profile. Leuk Res. 2006;30(6):723–34.
95. Lee JS, Paull K, Alvarez M, Hose C, Monks A, Grever M, et al. Rhodamine efflux patterns predict P-glycoprotein substrates in the National Cancer Institute drug screen. Mol Pharmacol. 1994;46(4):627–38.
96. Piekarz RL, Robey RW, Zhan Z, Kayastha G, Sayah A, Abdeldaim AH, et al. T-cell lymphoma as a model for the use of histone deacetylase inhibitors in cancer therapy: impact of depsipeptide on molecular markers, therapeutic targets, and mechanisms of resistance. Blood. 2004;103(12):4636–43.
97. Okada T, Tanaka K, Nakatani F, Sakimura R, Matsunobu T, Li X, et al. Involvement of P-glycoprotein and MRP1 in resistance to cyclic tetrapeptide subfamily of histone deacetylase inhibitors in the drug-resistant osteosarcoma and Ewing's sarcoma cells. Int J Cancer. 2006;118(1):90–7.
98. Robey RW, Zhan Z, Piekarz RL, Kayastha GL, Fojo T, Bates SE. Increased MDR1 expression in normal and malignant peripheral blood mononuclear cells obtained from patients receiving depsipeptide (FR901228, FK228, NSC630176). Clin Cancer Res. 2006;12(5):1547–55.
99. Peart MJ, Tainton KM, Ruefli AA, Dear AE, Sedelies KA, O'Reilly LA, et al. Novel mechanisms of apoptosis induced by histone deacetylase inhibitors. Cancer Res. 2003;63(15):4460–71.
100. Lindemann RK, Newbold A, Whitecross KF, Cluse LA, Frew AJ, Ellis L, et al. Analysis of the apoptotic and therapeutic activities of histone deacetylase inhibitors by using a mouse model of B cell lymphoma. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA. 2007;104(19):8071–6.
101. Condorelli F, Gnemmi I, Vallario A, Genazzani AA, Canonico PL. Inhibitors of histone deacetylase (HDAC) restore the p53 pathway in neuroblastoma cells. Br J Pharmacol. 2008;153(4):657–68.
102. Duan H, Heckman CA, Boxer LM. Histone deacetylase inhibitors down-regulate bcl-2 expression and induce apoptosis in t(14;18) lymphomas. Mol Cell Biol. 2005;25(5):1608–19.
103. Lucas DM, Davis ME, Parthun MR, Mone AP, Kitada S, Cunningham KD, et al. The histone deacetylase inhibitor MS-275 induces caspase-dependent apoptosis in B-cell chronic lymphocytic leukemia cells. Leukemia. 2004;18(7):1207–14.
104. Mitsiades N, Mitsiades CS, Richardson PG, McMullan C, Poulaki V, Fanourakis G, et al. Molecular sequelae of histone deacetylase inhibition in human malignant B cells. Blood. 2003;101(10):4055–62.
105. Shao W, Growney JD, Feng Y, O'Connor G, Pu M, Zhu W, et al. Activity of deacetylase inhibitor panobinostat (LBH589) in cutaneous T-cell lymphoma models: defining molecular mechanisms of resistance. Int J Cancer. 2010;127(9):2199–208.
106. Inoue S, Walewska R, Dyer MJ, Cohen GM. Downregulation of Mcl-1 potentiates HDACi-mediated apoptosis in leukemic cells. Leukemia. 2008;22(4):819–25.
107. Zhang Y, Adachi M, Kawamura R, Imai K. Bmf is a possible mediator in histone deacetylase inhibitors FK228 and CBHA-induced apoptosis. Cell Death Differ. 2006;13(1):129–40.
108. Aggarwal BB. Nuclear factor-kappaB: the enemy within. Cancer Cell. 2004;6(3):203–8.
109. Pahl HL. Activators and target genes of Rel/NF-kappaB transcription factors. Oncogene. 1999;18(49):6853–66.
110. Dai Y, Rahmani M, Dent P, Grant S. Blockade of histone deacetylase inhibitor-induced RelA/p65 acetylation and NF-kappaB activation potentiates apoptosis in leukemia cells through a process mediated by oxidative damage, XIAP downregulation, and c-Jun N-terminal kinase 1 activation. Mol Cell Biol. 2005;25(13):5429–44.

111. Domingo-Domenech J, Pippa R, Tapia M, Gascon P, Bachs O, Bosch M. Inactivation of NF-kappaB by proteasome inhibition contributes to increased apoptosis induced by histone deacetylase inhibitors in human breast cancer cells. Breast Cancer Res Treat. 2008;112(1):53–62.
112. Rosato RR, Kolla SS, Hock SK, Almenara JA, Patel A, Amin S, et al. Histone deacetylase inhibitors activate NF-kappaB in human leukemia cells through an ATM/NEMO-related pathway. J Biol Chem. 2010;285(13):10064–77.
113. Rundall BK, Denlinger CE, Jones DR. Combined histone deacetylase and NF-kappaB inhibition sensitizes non-small cell lung cancer to cell death. Surgery. 2004;136(2):416–25.
114. Duan J, Friedman J, Nottingham L, Chen Z, Ara G, Van Waes C. Nuclear factor-kappaB p65 small interfering RNA or proteasome inhibitor bortezomib sensitizes head and neck squamous cell carcinomas to classic histone deacetylase inhibitors and novel histone deacetylase inhibitor PXD101. Mol Cancer Ther. 2007;6(1):37–50.
115. Yu H, Jove R. The STATs of cancer—new molecular targets come of age. Nat Rev Cancer. 2004;4(2):97–105.
116. Rascle A, Johnston JA, Amati B. Deacetylase activity is required for recruitment of the basal transcription machinery and transactivation by STAT5. Mol Cell Biol. 2003;23(12):4162–73.
117. Zhang C, Richon V, Ni X, Talpur R, Duvic M. Selective induction of apoptosis by histone deacetylase inhibitor SAHA in cutaneous T-cell lymphoma cells: relevance to mechanism of therapeutic action. J Invest Dermatol. 2005;125(5):1045–52.
118. Lee JH, Choy ML, Marks PA. Mechanisms of resistance to histone deacetylase inhibitors. Adv Cancer Res. 2012;116:39–86.
119. Fantin VR, Loboda A, Paweletz CP, Hendrickson RC, Pierce JW, Roth JA, et al. Constitutive activation of signal transducers and activators of transcription predicts vorinostat resistance in cutaneous T-cell lymphoma. Cancer Res. 2008;68(10):3785–94.
120. Wang Y, Fiskus W, Chong DG, Buckley KM, Natarajan K, Rao R, et al. Cotreatment with panobinostat and JAK2 inhibitor TG101209 attenuates JAK2V617F levels and signaling and exerts synergistic cytotoxic effects against human myeloproliferative neoplastic cells. Blood. 2009;114(24):5024–33.
121. Altucci L, Gronemeyer H. The promise of retinoids to fight against cancer. Nat Rev Cancer. 2001;1(3):181–93.
122. Epping MT, Wang L, Plumb JA, Lieb M, Gronemeyer H, Brown R, et al. A functional genetic screen identifies retinoic acid signaling as a target of histone deacetylase inhibitors. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA. 2007;104(45):17777–82.
123. Bazzaro M, Santillan A, Lin Z, Tang T, Lee MK, Bristow RE, et al. Myosin II co-chaperone general cell UNC-45 overexpression is associated with ovarian cancer, rapid proliferation, and motility. Am J Pathol. 2007;171(5):1640–9.
124. Mizushima N, Yoshimori T, Levine B. Methods in mammalian autophagy research. Cell. 2010;140(3):313–26.
125. Lopez G, Torres K, Liu J, Hernandez B, Young E, Belousov R, et al. Autophagic survival in resistance to histone deacetylase inhibitors: novel strategies to treat malignant peripheral nerve sheath tumors. Cancer Res. 2011;71(1):185–96.
126. Carew JS, Giles FJ, Nawrocki ST. Histone deacetylase inhibitors: mechanisms of cell death and promise in combination cancer therapy. Cancer Lett. 2008;269(1):7–17.
127. Ron D, Walter P. Signal integration in the endoplasmic reticulum unfolded protein response. Nat Rev Mol Cell Biol. 2007;8(7):519–29.
128. Lee YT, Miller LD, Gubin AN, Makhlouf F, Wojda U, Barrett AJ, et al. Transcription patterning of uncoupled proliferation and differentiation in myelodysplastic bone marrow with erythroid-focused arrays. Blood. 2001;98(6):1914–21.
129. Baumeister P, Dong D, Fu Y, Lee AS. Transcriptional induction of GRP78/BiP by histone deacetylase inhibitors and resistance to histone deacetylase inhibitor-induced apoptosis. Mol Cancer Ther. 2009;8(5):1086–94.
130. Lee AS. The Par-4-GRP78 TRAIL, more twists and turns. Cancer Biol Ther. 2009;8(22):2103–5.

131. Shi Y, Gerritsma D, Bowes AJ, Capretta A, Werstuck GH. Induction of GRP78 by valproic acid is dependent upon histone deacetylase inhibition. Bioorg Med Chem Lett. 2007;17(16):4491–4.
132. Wang JF, Bown C, Young LT. Differential display PCR reveals novel targets for the mood-stabilizing drug valproate including the molecular chaperone GRP78. Mol Pharmacol. 1999;55(3):521–7.
133. Kahali S, Sarcar B, Fang B, Williams ES, Koomen JM, Tofilon PJ, et al. Activation of the unfolded protein response contributes toward the antitumor activity of vorinostat. Neoplasia. 2010;12(1):80–6.
134. Rao R, Nalluri S, Kolhe R, Yang Y, Fiskus W, Chen J, et al. Treatment with panobinostat induces glucose-regulated protein 78 acetylation and endoplasmic reticulum stress in breast cancer cells. Mol Cancer Ther. 2010;9(4):942–52.
135. Rao R, Nalluri S, Fiskus W, Savoie A, Buckley KM, Ha K, et al. Role of CAAT/enhancer binding protein homologous protein in panobinostat-mediated potentiation of bortezomib-induced lethal endoplasmic reticulum stress in mantle cell lymphoma cells. Clin Cancer Res. 2010;16(19):4742–54.
136. Ding JRM, Narita T, Masaki A, Mori F, Ito A, Kusumoto S, et al. Reduced expression of HDAC3 contributes to the resistance against HDAC inhibitor, Vorinostat (SAHA) in mature lymphoid malignancies. Blood. 2012;120(21):1342.
137. Gottesman MM. Mechanisms of cancer drug resistance. Annu Rev Med. 2002;53:615–27.
138. Kruh GD. Introduction to resistance to anticancer agents. Oncogene. 2003;22(47):7262–4.
139. Dedes KJ, Dedes I, Imesch P, von Bueren AO, Fink D, Fedier A. Acquired vorinostat resistance shows partial cross-resistance to 'second-generation' HDAC inhibitors and correlates with loss of histone acetylation and apoptosis but not with altered HDAC and HAT activities. Anti-Cancer Drugs. 2009;20(5):321–33.
140. Fiskus W, Rao R, Fernandez P, Herger B, Yang Y, Chen J, et al. Molecular and biologic characterization and drug sensitivity of pan-histone deacetylase inhibitor-resistant acute myeloid leukemia cells. Blood. 2008;112(7):2896–905.
141. Islam SEC, Qu N, Persky D, Carew J, Nawrocki S. Oncolytic reovirus is an effective treatment for histone deacetylase inhibitor resistant T-cell lymphoma. American society of hematology annual meeting oral and poster abstracts 2018.
142. Sharma SV, Lee DY, Li B, Quinlan MP, Takahashi F, Maheswaran S, et al. A chromatin-mediated reversible drug-tolerant state in cancer cell subpopulations. Cell. 2010;141(1):69–80.
143. Hu B, Younes A, Westin JR, Turturro F, Claret L, Feng L, et al. Phase-I and randomized phase-II trial of panobinostat in combination with ICE (ifosfamide, carboplatin, etoposide) in relapsed or refractory classical Hodgkin lymphoma. Leuk Lymphoma. 2018;59(4):863–70.
144. Johnston BCA, Nikolinakos P, Beaven A, Barta S, Bhat G, Song T, et al. Safe and effective treatment of patients with Peripheral T-Cell Lymphoma (PTCL) with the novel HDAC inhibitor, Belinostat, in combination with CHOP: results of the Bel-CHOP phase 1 trial. Blood. 2015;126(23):253.
145. Lu X, Ning Z, Li Z, Cao H, Wang X. Development of chidamide for peripheral T-cell lymphoma, the first orphan drug approved in China. Intractable Rare Dis Res. 2016;5(3):185–91.
146. Shi Y, Dong M, Hong X, Zhang W, Feng J, Zhu J, et al. Results from a multicenter, open-label, pivotal phase II study of chidamide in relapsed or refractory peripheral T-cell lymphoma. Ann Oncol. 2015;26(8):1766–71.
147. Oki Y, Buglio D, Fanale M, Fayad L, Copeland A, Romaguera J, et al. Phase I study of panobinostat plus everolimus in patients with relapsed or refractory lymphoma. Clin Cancer Res. 2013;19(24):6882–90.
148. Yazbeck V, Shafer D, Perkins EB, Coppola D, Sokol L, Richards KL, et al. A phase II trial of Bortezomib and Vorinostat in mantle cell lymphoma and diffuse large B-cell lymphoma. Clin Lymphoma Myeloma Leuk. 2018;18(9):569–75.. e1
149. Tan D, Phipps C, Hwang WY, Tan SY, Yeap CH, Chan YH, et al. Panobinostat in combination with bortezomib in patients with relapsed or refractory peripheral T-cell lymphoma: an open-label, multicentre phase 2 trial. Lancet Haematol. 2015;2(8):e326–33.

150. Barnes JA, Redd R, Fisher DC, Hochberg EP, Takvorian T, Neuberg D, et al. Panobinostat in combination with rituximab in heavily pretreated diffuse large B-cell lymphoma: results of a phase II study. Hematol Oncol. 2018;36(4):633–7.
151. Shah RR. Safety and tolerability of Histone Deacetylase (HDAC) inhibitors in oncology. Drug Saf. 2019;42(2):235–45.

Chapter 6
Resistance to Bruton's Tyrosine Kinase Signaling Pathway Targeted Therapies

Yaya Chu, Mitchell S. Cairo, and Auke Beishuizen

Abstract Activation of B-cell receptor (BCR) signaling is an important mechanism of the development and growth of B-cell lymphomas. Bruton's tyrosine kinase (BTK) is a key component of BCR signaling and functions as an important regulator of cell proliferation and cell survival in various B-cell lymphomas. BTK inhibitors, especially ibrutinib, have shown promising anti-tumor activity in preclinical and clinical studies. High response rates of ibrutinib were reported in patients with a variety of B-cell non-Hodgkin lymphoma (B-NHL) such as chronic lymphocytic leukemia (CLL) and mantle cell lymphoma (MCL). However, clinical evidence shows primary and acquired resistance to BTK inhibitors in patients. Understanding the molecular mechanisms underlying BTK inhibitors' resistance is of paramount importance. In this review, we highlight the potential resistant mechanisms, which include mutational resistance in BTK, mutational resistance in other proteins than in BTK, chromosomal abnormalities, activation of prosurvival pathways, B-cell lymphoma 2 (BCL-2) family members mediated resistance, and tumor microenvironment mediated resistance. We also discuss the strategies that are utilized to overcome BTK inhibitors' resistance: non-covalent inhibitors of BTK, alternate kinase inhibitors, combination therapies with other oncogenic inhibitors, BCL-2 inhibitors, anti-CD20 antibodies, anti-CD19 chimeric antigen receptor (CAR) T cells, CD19/CD3 bispecific antibody, or with inhibitors targeting other cellular processes.

Y. Chu (✉)
Department of Pediatrics, New York Medical College, Valhalla, NY, USA
e-mail: yaya_chu@nymc.edu

M. S. Cairo
Departments of Pediatrics, Medicine, Pathology, Microbiology and Immunology, Cell Biology and Anatomy, New York Medical College, Valhalla, NY, USA

A. Beishuizen
Erasmus MC-Sophia Children's Hospital, University Medical Center Rotterdam and Princess Maxima Center for Pediatric Oncology, Utrecht, Netherlands

A. C. Xavier, M. S. Cairo (eds.), *Resistance to Targeted Therapies in Lymphomas*, Resistance to Targeted Anti-Cancer Therapeutics 21,
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-24424-8_6

Keywords Targeted therapies · Bruton's tyrosine kinase · Ibrutinib · Drug resistance · B-cell lymphoma · Activation of B-cell receptor

Abbreviations

ABC-DLBCL	Activated B-Cell- Diffuse Large B-cell Lymphoma
AKT	Protein Kinase B
AS-PCR	Allele-Specific Polymerase Chain Reaction
BCR	Activation of B Cell Receptor
BCL-2	B-Cell Lymphoma 2
BL	Burkitt Lymphoma
B-NHL	B cell Non-Hodgkin Lymphoma
BLNK	B-cell Linker Protein
BTK	Bruton's Tyrosine Kinase
CAR	Chimeric Antigen Receptor
CCND1	Cell Cycle Regulator Cycline D1
CLL	Chronic Lymphocytic Leukemia
CARD11	Caspase Recruitment Domain Family, Member 11
CDK4	Cyclin-Dependent Kinase 4
CR	Complete Response
CRM1/XPO1	Chromosome Region Maintenance1/Exportin-1 Protein
CXCR4	C-X-C Chemokine Receptor type 4
DPPYs	Diphenylpyrimidine Derivatives
DLBCL	Diffuse Large B-cell Lymphoma
DLT	Dose-Limited Toxicities
EFS	Event Free Survival
EGFR	Epidermal Growth Factor Receptor
EIF2A	Eukaryotic Translation Initiation Factor 2A
ERK	Extracellular Signal-Regulated Kinase
FDA	Food and Drug Administration
FL	Follicular Lymphoma
FLIPI	Follicular Lymphoma International Prognostic Index
GBC	Germinal Center B cell
HCL	Hairy cell Lymphoma
HDAC	Histone Deacetylase
HL	Hodgkin Lymphoma
IC50	Half Maximal Inhibitory Concentration
IκB	Inhibitor of Kappa B
IKKb	Inhibitor of Kappa Light Polypeptide Gene Enhancer in B-cells
ITAM	Immunoreceptor Tyrosine-Based Activation Motifs
Itk	Interleukin-2-Inducible T-Cell Kinase
LCK	Lymphocyte-Specific Protein Tyrosine Kinase

LNA	Locked Nucleic Acid
MALT1	Mucosa Associated Lymphoid Tissue Lymphoma Translocation Protein 1
MAPK	Mitogen-Activated Protein Kinase
MCL	Mantle Cell Lymphoma
MLL2	Mixed Lineage Leukemia 2
MOMP	Mitochondrial Outer Membrane Permeability
MPFS	Median Progression-Free Survival
MRD	Minimal Residual Disease
mTOR	Mechanistic Target of Rapamycin
MYD88	Myeloid Differentiation Primary Response Gene (88)
MZL	Marginal zone Lymphoma
NHL	Non-Hodgkin's Lymphoma
NF-κB	Nuclear Factor Kappa-Light-Chain-Enhancer of Activated B cells
NGS	Next-Generation Sequencing
NIK	NF-Kappa-B-Inducing Kinase
NSG	NOD.Cg-PrkdcscidIl2rgtm1Wjl/SzJ
OS	Overall Survival
ORR	Overall Response Rate
P	Phosphorylation
PARP-1	Poly [ADP-ribose] Polymerase 1
PFS	Progression-Free Survival
PH	Pleckstrin Homology
PI3K	Phosphoinositide 3-Kinase
PIM1	Serine/threonine Kinase pim-1
PIP3	Phosphatidylinositol (3,4,5)-Trisphosphate
PLCγ2	1-phosphatidylinositol-4,5-Bisphosphate Phosphodiesterase Gamma-2
PMBCL	Primary Mediastinal B-cell Lymphoma
PR	Partial Response
RPS15	40S Ribosomal Protein S15
R/R	Relapsed/Refractory
scFv	Single Chain Fragment of Variable Region
SFK	Src Family Tyrosine Kinases
SH2	Src Homology 2
SH3	Src Homology 3
SNPs	Single Nucleotide Polymorphisms
SLL	Small Lymphocytic Lymphoma
SYK	Spleen Tyrosine Kinase
Tec	Tyrosine Kinase Expressed in Hepatocellular Carcinoma
TLR	Toll-Like Receptor
TME	Tumor Microenvironment
TRAIL	Tumor Necrosis Factor Related Apoptosis Inducing Ligand

TRAIL-R	Tumor Necrosis Factor Related Apoptosis Inducing Ligand Receptors
Txk	Tyrosine-Protein Kinase TXK
WES	Whole-Exome Sequencing
WM	Waldenström's Macroglobulinemia
XLA	X-Linked Agammaglobulinemia
2p+	Gain of the Short Arm of Chromosome 2

Introduction

B-cell lymphoma represents a heterogeneous group of B-cell malignancies with distinct pathological characteristics, clinical features and prognoses [1]. The most common types of B-cell lymphoma include chronic lymphocytic leukemia (CLL)/small lymphocytic lymphoma (SLL), diffuse large B-cell lymphoma (DLBCL), follicular lymphoma (FL), mantle cell lymphoma (MCL), Waldenström's macroglobulinemia (WM), and Burkitt lymphoma (BL). In children, the vast majority of B-cell lymphomas are BL and DLBCL, rarely primary mediastinal B-cell lymphoma (PMBCL) and FL are found. Cairo et al. previously demonstrated that short but intensive chemotherapy is associated with an 80% 5-year event free survival (EFS) in patients with advanced mature B-cell non-Hodgkin lymphoma (B-NHL) [2–4]. Further, an international multi-cooperative group study showed a 90% 5-year overall survival (OS) in patients with newly diagnosed mature B-NHL [5–8]. Unfortunately, the outcome is dismal in patients with aggressive B-NHL, who relapse or progress due to chemoradiotherapy resistance [5, 8]. Therefore, facilitating the development of alternative novel therapeutic strategies is required to improve the outcome in patients with relapsed/refractory (R/R) B-cell lymphoma.

Activation of the BCR signaling pathway (Fig. 6.1) is critical to the development and maturation of B cells [9, 10] and the viability of a variety of B-cell lymphomas such as DLBCL [11], marginal zone lymphoma (MZL) [12], MCL, FL [13] and BL [14]. The BCR consists of the antigen-binding immunoglobulin heavy (IgH) and light (IgL) chains coupled to the heterodimeric CD79a and CD79b proteins, which contain tyrosine-based activation motifs [15]. Crosslinking of BCR by antigen triggers the phosphorylation of tyrosines within the immunoreceptor tyrosine-based activation motifs (ITAMs) of CD79A and CD79B by Src family tyrosine kinases (SFKs) [15]. The phosphorylated ITAMs serve as a scaffolding platform for engaging and activating Src homology 2 (SH2) domains containing kinases, including spleen tyrosine kinase (SYK). Activated SYK phosphorylates the B-cell linker protein (BLNK) to further recruit both Bruton's Tyrosine Kinase (BTK) and phospholipase C- γ2 (PLC- γ2) through their SH2 domains. BTK is then phosphorylated and activated by SYK to drive the activation of downstream signaling pathways such as phosphatidylinositol-3-kinase (PI3K)/protein kinase B (Akt) and nuclear factor kappa-light-chain-enhancer of activated B cells (NF-κB) [16]. The complex of

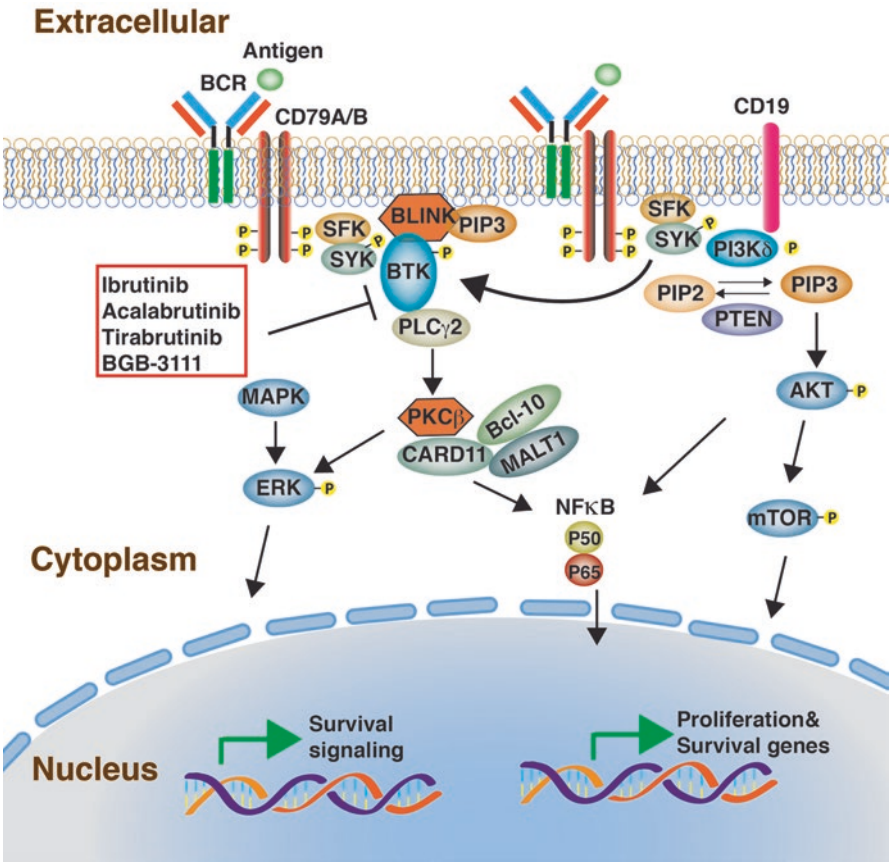


Fig. 6.1 Simplified B-cell receptor signaling. The BCR consists of the antigen-binding immunoglobulin heavy (IgH) and light (IgL) chains coupled to the heterodimeric CD79a and CD79b proteins. Antigen binding triggers the phosphorylation of tyrosines within the ITAMs of CD79A and CD79B by SFKs. And the phosphorylated ITAMs recruit SYK, which is followed by the activation of BLNK, BTK and PLCγ2. BTK is then phosphorylated and activated by Syk to drive the activation of PKCβ, PI3K/Akt/mTOR and NF-κB. PKCβ phosphorylates and activates ERK and NF-κB transcription factors. Ibrutinib, acalabrutinib, tirabrutinib, spebrutinib, and BGB-3111 inhibit BTK activities. The complex of CARD11, MALT1, and BCL10 is an important part of the pathway activating NF-κB. Additionally, the BCR co-receptor CD19 phosphorylation is also involved in BTK recruitment and activation by recruiting PI3K to generate PIP3 and activate the PI3K–AKT pathway. The activated ERK, PI3K/Akt/mTOR and NF-κB pathways upregulate the genes that are involved in cell proliferation and survival in B cell lymphoma

caspase recruitment domain family member 11 (CARD11), mucosa-associated lymphoid tissue lymphoma translocation protein 1(MALT1), and B-cell lymphoma/leukemia 10 (BCL10) is an important part of the pathway activating NF-κB. Additionally, the BCR co-receptor CD19 phosphorylation is also involved in BTK recruitment and activation by recruiting PI3K to generate phosphoinositide

phosphatidylinositol-3, 4, 5-trisphosphate (PIP3) [17]. The BCR signaling pathway offers a wealth of therapeutic targets such as SYK, BTK and PI3K, and drugs targeting these kinases are in development and clinical trials to evaluate their efficacy against a variety of B-cell lymphomas.

BTK is a member of the tyrosine kinase expressed in hepatocellular carcinoma (Tec) family of the non-receptor tyrosine kinases and was discovered during cloning the genes that were associated with X-linked agammaglobulinemia (XLA) in 1993 [18, 19]. The gene encodes a 659 amino acid protein that consists of several putative domains: an N-terminal Pleckstrin homology (PH) domain that binds membrane PIP3, is followed by SH2, Src homology 3 (SH3), and proline rich domains that regulate binding to other cellular signaling molecules [20]. Activation of BTK correlates with an increase in the phosphorylation of two regulatory BTK tyrosine residues: Y551 and Y223 [21]. Y551 within the Src kinase domain is transphosphorylated by the kinases Syk or Lyn during BCR signaling and promotes the catalytic activity of BTK. Y223 is an autophosphorylation site within the BTK SH3 domain and the phosphorylation of this site has little discernible influence on BTK catalytic activity *in-vitro* or *in vivo* but may be a mechanism to modify protein–protein interactions [21]. BTK has been widely characterized as a critical mediator in signaling through BCR and the Fcγ receptor (FcγR) and is important for B cell development, differentiation, proliferation and survival [22, 23]. Mutations in BTK gene lead to inactivating the BTK gene through an in-frame insertion of a lacZ reporter in mouse embryonic stem cells resulting in defects of B cell development from pre-B cells to immature B cells in the bone marrow and B-cell differentiation arrest during the maturation from IgD(low)IgM(high) to IgD(high)IgM(low) stages in the periphery [24]. In humans a wide spectrum of BTK loss-of-function mutations such as a PH domain mutation in the BTK gene lead to an almost complete absence of peripheral B cells and antibodies in XLA [25, 26].

In this review, we summarize the clinical results of BTK inhibitors, discuss the resistant mechanisms of BTK inhibitors, especially ibrutinib, based on the clinical and preclinical studies in B-cell lymphoma. In the end, we describe current and future novel therapeutic strategies to overcome the resistance.

Overview of BTK Inhibitors and Clinical Response

BTK is a regulator of normal B-cell development and is activated upon BCR stimulation. Activation of the BCR signaling pathway has now emerged as a central oncogenic pathway that promotes growth and survival in both normal and malignant B-cells. Antigenic activation of the dimeric membrane immunoglobulin B-cell receptor, which induces phosphorylation of BTK and PLCγ2, results in the activation of a number of signaling pathways including mitogen-activated protein kinase (MAPK), NF-κB and Akt [27] (Fig. 6.1). Selective and covalent BTK inhibitors such as ibrutinib can inhibit BTK activation to further block chronic active BCR signaling [28, 29].

Ibrutinib

Ibrutinib (PCI-32765, Imbruvica®) is the first-in-class, selective and irreversible small molecule inhibitor of BTK and covalently binds to cysteine residue 481 on the BTK kinase domain, thereby inhibiting the autophosphorylation of tyrosine 223 on exon 8 and resulting in irreversible inhibition of BTK enzymatic activity [30]. Ibrutinib has been demonstrated to be an active agent in activated B-cell-like diffuse large B cell lymphoma (ABC-DLBCL), a NHL subtype that is characterized by constitutively activated NF-κB signaling [31]. Preclinical studies of ibrutinib in CLL and MCL suggested that ibrutinib inhibits cell proliferation *in-vitro* in the range of 1.0–25.0 μM [32, 33].

Ibrutinib's unique biochemistry and *in vivo* activities in mice and dogs paved the way for not only human clinical phase 1 trials but also phase 2 and 3 (Table 6.1) trials in patients with mature B-cell lymphomas [30]. In a phase 1 study, ibrutinib was well tolerated in 50 evaluable adults with R/R B-cell lymphomas including MCL, FL, DLBCL, MZL and CLL [34]. It was associated with an overall response rate (ORR) of 60%, including complete response (CR) 16% [34]. The safety and efficacy of ibrutinib in MCL and CLL patients who had received at least one prior therapy were evaluated in single-arm, open-label, multicenter trials (NCT01236391, NCT01105247) in 2013 [35, 36]. The drug demonstrated substantial improvement on a clinically significant endpoint over available therapies. In the MCL trial, a response rate of 68% (75 patients) was observed, with a CR of 21% and a partial response rate (PR) of 47% [35]. In the CLL trial, the ORR was 71% and the PR ranges from 15–20% based on the doses [36]. Based on the highly effective treatment of refractory and relapsed adult patients with CLL and MCL, ibrutinib was granted breakthrough therapy designation and has been approved for the treatment in patients with R/R CLL or MCL with at least one prior therapy in 2013 [35–38].

To evaluate the efficacy and tolerability of ibrutinib in relapsed or refractory WM, and to examine the impact of myeloid differentiation primary response 88 (MYD88) (L265P) and WHIM-like C-X-C chemokine receptor type 4 (CXCR4) mutations on ibrutinib response, 63 patients with R/R WM were enrolled for a phase 2 study with an ORR of 90.5% and a major response rate (PR or better) of 73% with a median time to response of 4 weeks [39]. Patients with MYD88 mutation and wild type CXCR4 had better response to ibrutinib treatment than those with MYD88 wild type or WHIM-like CXCR4 mutations: 100% OR for patients with MYD88L265PCXCR4WT vs. 85.7% OR MYD88L265PCXCR4WHIM vs 71.4% OR MYD88WTCXCR4WT. The estimated 2-year progression-free and overall survival rates among all patients were 69.1% and 95.2%, respectively. Grade > 2 treatment related toxicities were observed. Based on the promising results, the Food and Drug Administration (FDA) approved ibrutinib for the treatment of patients with WM in 2015.

BTK expression was detected in approximately 20% of patients with classic Hodgkin lymphoma (HL) [40]. A single-agent ibrutinib at a dose of 560 mg was investigated in 2 primary refractory classic HL patients [41]. Two months after the

Table 6.1 Summary of phase 2 and 3 clinical trials of Ibrutinib in B cell lymphomas

Phase	Drug	N	Tumor subtypes	Response	Toxicity	Dose	Clinical trial NCT#	Year	Ref.
1b/2	Ibrutinib	85	Relapsed CLL	71% ORR; 15–20% PR; 75% PFS; 83% OS	Predominantly grade 1 or 2: Transient diarrhea, fatigue, and upper respiratory tract infection	420 mg 840 mg	NCT 01105247	2013	[36]
2	Ibrutinib	111	Relapsed/ refractory MCL	68% ORR; 21% CR; 47% PR; 13.9 months of MPFS; 58% OS at 18 months	Most grade 1 or 2: mild or moderate diarrhea, fatigue, and nausea; Grade 3 or grade 4: infrequent, neutropenia (in 16% of patients), thrombocytopenia (in 11%), and anemia (in 10%)	560 mg	NCT 01236391	2013	[35]
2	Ibrutinib	63	Relapsed/ refractory WM	57.1% PR; 77% ORR for patients with wild-type CXCR4 vs 30% with WHIM-like CXCR4 mutations	Grade > 2 treatment related toxicities include: thrombocytopenia; neutropenia; stomatitis; atrial fibrillation; diarrhea; hematoma; hypertension and epistaxis	420 mg	NCT 01614821	2015	[39]
2	Ibrutinib	40	Relapsed/ refractory FL	37.5% ORR; 12.5% CR; 25% PR; 52.6% ORR for rituximab-sensitive vs 16.7% for rituximab-refractory (P = .04); a lower ORR for chemotherapy-refractory; 50% ORR for low- or intermediate-risk FLIPI; 14 months of MPFS; 20.4% 2 yr PFS; 79.0% 2 yr OS	42.5% of patients experienced at least 1 grade 3–4 AE	560 mg	NCT 01849263	2018	[44]

2	Ibrutinib	110	Chemo-refractory FL	20.9% ORR; 10.9% CR; 4.6 months of MPFS; 63% 1 yr OS	Grade 1/2: Diarrhea, fatigue, and cough. 48.2% serious AEs; Grade 1/2: Diarrhea, fatigue, and cough; 48.2% serious AEs. 3.6% hemorrhage; 9.1% atrial fibrillation; 6.4% discontinued; 1 pt dose reduction	560 mg	NCT 01779791	2016	[45]
2	Ibrutinib	70	Relapsed/ refractory DLBCL	40% ORR in ABC vs 5.3% in GCB; 8% CR in ABC vs 0% in GCB; 32% PR in ABC vs 5.3% in GCB 2.5 months PFS in ABC vs 1.28 in GCB	N/A	560 mg	N/A	2012	[49]
3	Ibrutinib vs Ofatumumab	195 vs 196	Relapsed/ refractory CLL or SLL	Improved PFS; 90% vs 81% OS; 42.6% vs 4.1%;	57% of the patients had at least one adverse event of grade 3 or higher.	420 mg	NCT 01578707	2014	[50]
3	Ibrutinib vs chlorambucil	136 vs 133	previously untreated CLL	Significantly longer PFS; 98% vs 85% OS at 24 months; 84% lower risk death; 86% vs. 35% ORR; 4% vs 2% CR; improved hematologic variables	Grade 3 diarrhea (4%), grade 3 hypertension (4%), atrial fibrillation (6%) and grade ¾ hemorrhage (4%)	420 mg	NCT 01722487	2015	[51]
3	Ibrutinib vs Temsirolimus	139 vs 141	Relapsed/ refractory MCL	57% reduction in the risk of disease progression or death; 14.6 vs 6.2 months MPFS; 41% versus 7% PFS at 2 yrs; 72–77% vs 40–42% ORR; 19% CR vs 1% CR	Diarrhea (29%), cough (22%), and fatigue (22%), atrial fibrillation (4% vs 1%), major bleeding (10% vs 6%)	560 mg	NCT 01646021	2016	[55]

CLL: Chronic lymphocytic leukemia; MCL: Mantle cell lymphoma; WM: Waldenström's macroglobulinemia; FL: Follicular lymphoma; DLBCL: Diffuse large B-cell lymphoma; ABC: Activated B-cell; GBC: Germinal center B cell; SLL: small lymphocytic lymphoma; ORR: Overall response rate; CR: Complete response; PFS: Progression-free survival; MPFS: Median progression-free survival; PR: Partial response; R/R: Relapsed/refractory; Ref.: References.

initiation of ibrutinib, positron emission tomography-computed tomography (PET-CT) showed near-complete regression of disease in one patient with subsequent disease progression. Another patient had a CR, which was still ongoing more than 6 months later. The activity of ibrutinib in patients with classic HL warrants prospective assessment. A phase 2 multicenter trial to evaluate the efficacy and safety of ibrutinib in patients with R/R classical HL is ongoing (NCT02824029).

Primary FL cells have been found to maintain enhanced BCR pathway signaling when compared to normal B cells [42]. Sixteen patients with FL were treated with ibrutinib in the phase 1 study [43]. Of the cohort of 16 patients, 11 patients were treated at doses where full occupancy of BTK was achieved by ibrutinib. The OR rate was 55% and the median duration of response was 12.3 months and the median progression free survival (PFS) 13.4 months. Based upon drug occupancy and clinical responses, a phase 2 Consortium Trial of ibrutinib in R/R FL was conducted [44]. ORR was 37.5% with a complete response rate of 12.5%, median progression-free survival (PFS) of 14 months, and 2-year PFS of 20.4%. Response rates were higher among patients with rituximab-sensitive disease (52.6%) compared with those who had rituximab-refractory disease (16.7%; P = .04). Chemotherapy-refractory patients also had a lower ORR than chemotherapy-sensitive patients. Patients with low- or intermediate-risk FLIPI (the Follicular Lymphoma International Prognostic Index) had a trend toward a higher response rate compared with high-risk FLIPI (50% vs 25%; p = .19). The median PFS was 14.0 months and the 2-year PFS and OS were 20.4% and 79.0%, respectively. Similar results were found in a phase 2 study of ibrutinib in patients with chemoimmunotherapy-refractory FL (the DAWN study), which showed a significantly lower response rate of 20.9% in chemotherapy-refractory FL with a median PFS of 4.6 months, 10.9% CR and 63% 1 year OS [45].

Due to activating mutations in CD79B, MYD88, and CARD11, the BCR signaling, the toll-like receptor (TLR) and the NF-κB pathways are often constitutively activated in ABC-DLBCL compared with germinal center B-cell (GCB) type DLBCL [46–48]. A phase 2 multicenter study was performed to determine if ibrutinib would be more efficacious in ABC-DLBCL compared with GCB-DLBCL [49]. The ORR in patients with ABC type was 40%, whereas overall response rate in the GCB type was only 5%. The CR is 8% in ABC-DLBCL *vs.* 0% in GCB-DLBCL; PR is 32% in ABC-DLBCL *vs.* 5.3% in GCB-DLBCL; PFS is 2.5 months in ABC *vs.* 1.28 in GCB [49]. Furthermore, ibrutinib had activity in patients with and without CD79b mutations, suggesting an alternative mechanism of BCR pathway dependence. This study indicates that further study of ibrutinib should be aimed at the ABC type of DLBCL with attention to the different somatic mutations [49].

Based on the early promising results of the phase 2 trial on CLL, a multicenter, open-label, randomized, phase 3 trial (RESONATE) was opened to the study of ibrutinib *vs.* ofatumumab in patients with relapsed or refractory CLL or SLL [50]. Ibrutinib significantly improved the PFS and the OS (90% *vs.* 81%; p = .005) and ORR (42.6% *vs.* 4.1%; p < .001). Patients with a 17p13.1 deletion also had a

markedly improved PFS with ibrutinib compared with ofatumumab. In this trial, ibrutinib was associated with a slightly increased risk of grade 3/4 (57% *vs.* 47%) adverse events (AE) compared with ofatumumab. Based on the superior efficacy of ibrutinib compared to ofatumumab in difficult-to-treat patients with R/R CLL or SLL, the FDA expanded the approval of ibrutinib to include treatment of CLL patients with 17p deletion. In the following phase 3 RESONATE-2 study, the efficacy and safety of ibrutinib was compared with chlorambucil in patients 65 years of age or older with previously untreated CLL [51]. Consistent with the high-risk group, ibrutinib resulted in significantly longer PFS than that with chlorambucil with 98% OS at 24 months *vs.* 85% with chlorambucil. The relative risk of death with ibrutinib was 84% lower than that with chlorambucil ($p = .001$). The ORR was significantly higher in the ibrutinib group than in the chlorambucil group (86% vs. 35%; $p < .001$). CR occurred in 4% of the patients in the ibrutinib group and in 2% of those in the chlorambucil group. The hematologic variables were significantly improved in the ibrutinib treated group. Grade III diarrhea (4%), grade III hypertension (4%), atrial fibrillation (6%) and grade III/IV hemorrhage (4%) were more common in the ibrutinib treated group. These results support the use of ibrutinib as a first-line agent in CLL.

Temsirolimus is an inhibitor of the mechanistic target of rapamycin (mTOR) pathway that has been used to treat patients with relapsed MCL with 22–40% ORR and a median OS of 12.8 months [52–54]. A randomized phase 3 clinical trial led by the European MCL Network compared ibrutinib with temsirolimus in patients with R/R MCL [55]. With a median follow-up of 20 months, ibrutinib treatment resulted in a 57% reduction in the risk of disease progression or death compared with temsirolimus ($p < .0001$). The median progression-free survival (MPFS) was 14.6 months for the ibrutinib group *vs.* 6.2 months for the temsirolimus group. At a 2 year landmark, the PFS rate is 41% versus 7% and the ORR was 72–77% *vs.* 40–42% with a 19% CR *vs.* 1% CR. Median OR was not reached for ibrutinib versus 21.3 months for temsirolimus. The reported AEs were consistent with previous studies, including diarrhea (29%), cough (22%), fatigue (22%), atrial fibrillation (4% with ibrutinib *vs.* 1% with temsirolimus) and major bleeding (10% with ibrutinib *vs.* 6% with temsirolimus).

We investigated the efficacy of ibrutinib alone and in selective adjuvant combinations against BL *in vitro* and in a human BL xenografted immune-deficient NOD.Cg-PrkdcscidIl2rgtm1Wjl/SzJ (NSG) mouse model [56]. Our data demonstrated that phospho-BTK level was significantly reduced in BL cells treated with ibrutinib ($p < .001$). Moreover, we observed a significant decrease in cell proliferation as well as significant decrease in half maximal inhibitory concentration (IC_{50}) of ibrutinib in combination with dexamethasone, rituximab, obinutuzumab, carfilzomib, and doxorubicin ($p < .001$). *In vivo* studies demonstrated ibrutinib-treated mice had a significantly prolonged survival compared to vehicle controls ($p < .02$). Our findings demonstrate the significant *in vitro* and preclinical *in vivo* effects of ibrutinib in BL. Based on our preclinical results, there is an ongoing clinical trial comparing OS in children and adolescents with R/R BL treated with chemoimmunotherapy with or without ibrutinib (NCT02703272).

Second-Generation Inhibiors of BTK

Ibrutinib binds to Cys-481 of the BTK but it also binds to several other kinases [57]. These off-target effects of ibrutinib contribute to its activity and toxicity such as bleeding [50]. Therefore, second-generation BTK inhibitors such as acalabrutinib (ACP-196), Tirabrutinib (ONO/GS-4059, GS-4059), spebrutinib (CC-292, AVL-292), and BGB-3111 are being developed with more selective kinase activity profiles (Table 6.2).

Table 6.2 Summary of clinical trials of second-generation BTK inhibitors

Inhibitor name	Off-targets	Phase of trials	N	Tumor subtypes	Overall response rate	Approved indication	Ref.
Acalabrutinib	NO	1/2	61	R CLL	95% ORR	NO	[165]
					85% PR		
					10% PR with lymphocytosis		
					5% SD		
					For del(17)(p13.1): 100% ORR		
					89% PR		
					11% PR with lymphocytosis		
					With prior idelalisib therapy: 100% ORR		
					75% PR		
					25% PR with lymphocytosis		
Acalabrutinib	NO	2	124	R/R MCL	81% ORR	YES for R/R MCL	[62]
					40% CR		
					72% medians for duration of response		
					67% PFS		
					87% OR		
Tirabrutinib (ONO/GS-4059)	NO	1	90	R/R CLL; MCL; DLBCL; FL; WM; MZL; SLL	PFS in CLL, MCL, and DLBCL: 874, 341, and 54 days, respectively	NO	[66]
					CLL: 96% ORR		
					MCL: 91.7% ORR, 50% PR, and 41.7% CR		
					DLBCL: 35% ORR, 29% PR, 6.45% CR		
BGB-3111	NO	1	25	CLL, MCL, WM, DLBCL, FL, MZL, HCL	64% OR (16/25), including 1 CR and 6 SD	NO	[67]

Acalabrutinib

Acalabrutinib (ACP-196) binds covalently to BTK with greater *in vivo* potency and selectivity than ibrutinib [58]. *In-vitro* studies demonstrated that acalabrutinib and ibrutinib had similar molecular and biologic consequences in primary CLL cells but different effects on lymphocyte-specific protein tyrosine kinase (LCK) and proto-oncogene tyrosine-protein kinase Src phosphorylation in primary T-lymphocytes [59]. The IC_{50} of acalabrutinib for the BTK protein is 5.1 nmol/L vs 1.5 nmol/L of ibrutinib, indicating a weaker BTK inhibition than ibrutinib. However, ACP-196 demonstrated higher selectivity for BTK than ibrutinib when profiled against a panel of 395 non-mutant kinases (1 μM) in a competitive binding assay [60]. Importantly, ACP-196 did not inhibit epidermal growth factor receptor (EGFR), interleukin-2-inducible T-cell kinase (Itk) or tyrosine-protein kinase TXK (Txk) [60]. The phase 1/2 ACE-CL-001 trial of acalabrutinib monotherapy in patients with relapsed CLL showed that acalabrutinib was well tolerated and no major hemorrhage or atrial fibrillation was noted [61]. The clinical activity of acalabrutinib was rapid and robust. With a median follow up of 14.3 months, the ORR was 95% with 85% PR, 10% PR with lymphocytosis and 5% stable disease. The ORR was 100% for patients with del(17)(p13.1) with 89% PR, 11% PR with lymphocytosis. In the 4 patients with prior idelalisib therapy, the response rate was 100% (PR, 75%, PR with lymphocytosis, 25%). A direct comparison of acalabrutinib with ibrutinib in a phase 3 study (NCT02477696) is active and on the way to recruit patients with high-risk CLL.

Acalabrutinib is also active in clinical trials as a single agent or in combination for the treatment of other lymphomas including MCL (NCT02213926), FL (NCT02180711), WM (NCT02180724), and DLBCL (NCT03205046). In 2015, a phase 2 trial (ACE-LY-004) was conducted on patients with R/R MCL (NCT02213926) [62]. One hundred twenty-four patients with R/R MCL were enrolled in this trial. At a median follow-up of 15.2 months, the ORR was 81% and CR was 40%. The Kaplan-Meier estimated medians for duration of response, PFS, and OR rates at 12 months were 72%, 67%, and 87%, respectively. Primarily grade 1 or 2 adverse events were the most common. Consistent with CLL trials, atrial fibrillation and worse hemorrhage events were rare. The results demonstrated that acalabrutinib treatment provided a high rate of durable responses and a favorable safety profile in patients with relapsed or refractory MCL. Based on the promising results in the ACE- LY-004 trial and other clinical data, acalabrutinib was granted Breakthrough Therapy Designation by the FDA in 2017 for patients with MCL who have received at least one prior therapy.

Tirabrutinib

Tirabrutinib (ONO/GS-4059) is an irreversible inhibitor with a greater selectivity for BTK than for LCK, proto-oncogene tyrosine-protein kinase Fyn (FYN), tyrosine-protein kinase LynA (LYNA), and Itk [63]. *In-vitro* studies showed that IC_{50} of ONO/

GS-4059 to BTK was 2 nmol/L and it induced apoptosis at nanomolar concentrations in the activated DLBCL cell lines [64]. ONO/GS-4059 treatment resulted in inhibition of tumor growth in an ABC-DLBCL xenograft model [65]. These promising preclinical data prompted clinical evaluation of ONO/GS-4059. In a multicenter phase 1 dose escalation study, 90 patients with R/R B cell malignancies including CLL/SLL, MCL, DLBCL, FL, MZL, and WM, were enrolled in a 3 + 3 dose-escalation study [66]. The overall estimated mean PFS in CLL, MCL, and DLBCL were 874, 341, and 54 days, respectively. CLL patients had a 96% ORR. Of these patients, 13 had loss of TP53 and 21 had unmutated immunoglobulin heavy-chain variable region (IGHV) gene segments. All 12 patients with TP53/17p deletion or TP53 mutations had a response, with 9 remaining on study. MCL patients had 91.7% ORR, 50% PR, and 41.7% CR. DLBCL patients had 35% ORR, 29% PR, and 6.45% CR. A striking feature of this study was that ONO/GS-4059 across all disease subsets showed a low incidence of associated toxicities. ONO/GS-4059 may have significant advantages over other selective kinase inhibition in terms of reduced toxicities.

BGB-3111

BCB-3111 is another more selective, irreversible BTK inhibitor with higher BTK specificity than ibrutinib [67, 68]. In biochemical and cellular assays, BGB-3111 demonstrated nanomolar BTK inhibition activity and showed less off-target kinase inhibition against a panel of kinases [68]. Both in the MCL and ABC-DLBCL tumor cells xenografted models, BGB-3111 demonstrated dose-dependent antitumor effects and prolonged the overall survival of xenografts [68]. Additionally, BGB-3111 demonstrated at least ten-fold weaker than ibrutinib in inhibiting rituximab induced antibody-dependent cellular cytotoxicity (ADCC), supporting the combination therapy with anti-CD20 antibodies in lymphoma [68]. In the phase 1 trial of BGB-3111, 24 patients with advanced lymphoma (CLL, MCL, WM, DLBCL, FL, MZL) and 1 with Hairy cell lymphoma (HCL) were enrolled [67]. Sixty-four percent (16/25) of patients had objective responses, including 1 CR and 6 SD. Drug-related AEs and dose-limited toxicities (DLT) were not reported. These preliminary phase 1 results suggest that BGB-3111 is safe and highly clinically active but clinical efficacy remains to be further determined.

Molecular Mechanisms of BTK Inhibitors' Resistance

Despite the promising clinical responses of BTK inhibitors especially ibrutinib in a variety of B-cell lymphomas, cases of primary and secondary resistance were recognized [69]. Clinically, ibrutinib resistance presents in two forms: primary resistance in which patients demonstrate lack of response at initial therapy due to disease transformation (Richter transformation, an aggressively ibrutinib-resistant disease), and secondary resistance which is characterized by an initial disease response but it

is subsequently lost due to the cell's ability to bypass the target via alternative pathways or acquired mutations in the target or its pathway [15, 69, 70]. Understanding the molecular mechanisms (Fig. 6.2) underlying BTK inhibitors' resistance is of paramount importance. The reported resistant mechanisms of BTK inhibitors, especially ibrutinib resistance are summarized in Table 6.3.

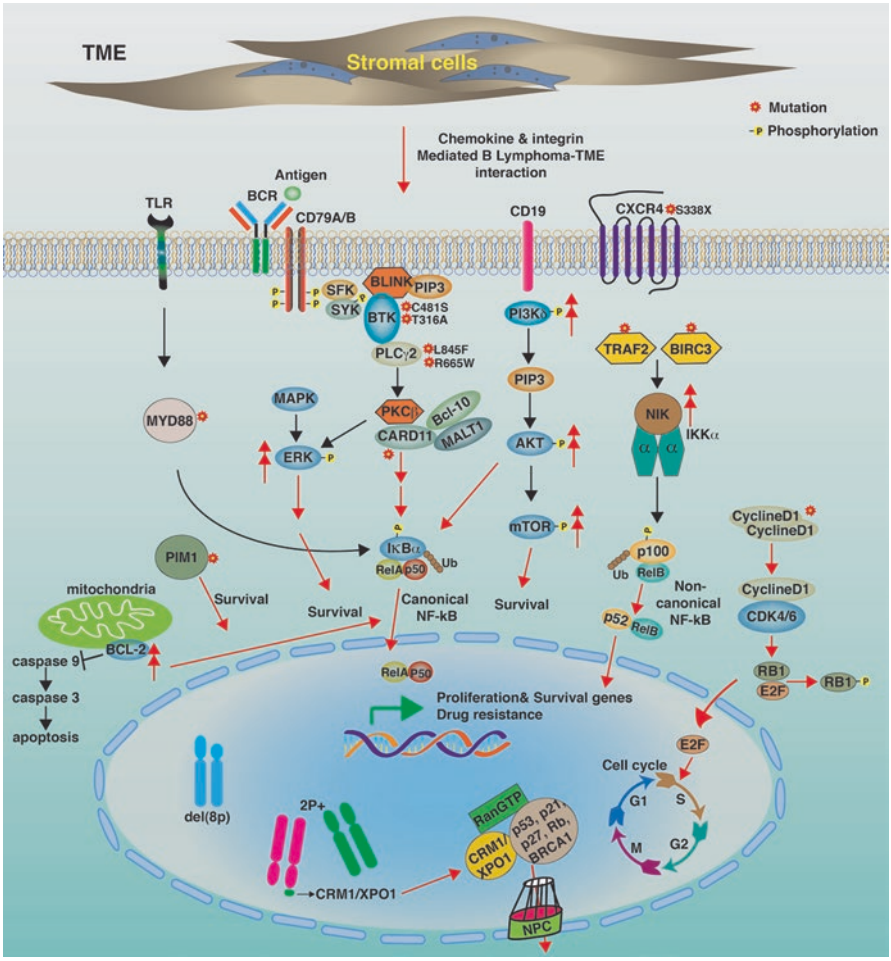


Fig. 6.2 Mechanisms of resistance of BTK inhibitors in B-cell lymphomas. Primary resistance of BTK inhibitors may be caused by sustained activation of other oncogenic pathways such as PI3K-AKT/mTOR, MAPK/ERK independent of BTK. Acquired resistances include mutations in BTK, PLCγ2, CARD11 and the activation of alternative NF-kB or PI3K/mTOR pathways. MYD88 and CXCR4 mutations in WM patients trigger pro-survival NF-kB signaling, activate AKT and ERK and promote resistance to ibrutinib. Chromosomal abnormality such as del(8p) and 2p+ has been documented in acquired ibrutinib resistance. Overexpression of CRM1/XPO1 is involved in nuclear export of a number of tumor suppressor proteins such as p53 and BRCA1, which is associated with drug resistance. Mutations in CCND1 stabilize cycline D1 and subsequently activate cyclin-dependent kinase (CDK) 4 to phosphorylate and inactivate retinoblastoma (Rb) protein. This event leads to G1/S cell cycle progression, cell proliferation and ibrutinib resistance. Last, TME–lymphoma interactions activate integrin b1-integrin-linked kinase (ILK)/PI3K-AKT-mTOR to mediate ibrutinib resistance

Table 6.3 Summary of the reported mechanisms of BTK inhibitors' resistance

BTK inhibitor	Diseases	Resistance mechanism	Report year	Ref.
Ibrutinib	CLL	Mutations: BTKC481S, PLCγ2 (R665W, L845F, S707Y)	2014	[72]
Ibrutinib	CLL	Mutations: PLCγ2 (S707F, M1141R, M1141K and D993H)	2016	[89]
Ibrutinib	CLL	Mutation: BTKT316A	2016	[76]
Ibrutinib	CLL	Mutations: EIF2A, RPS15, EP300, MLL2	2016	[89]
Ibrutinib	CLL	Del(8p)	2016	[89]
		TRAIL receptor haploinsufficiency		
Ibrutinib	CLL	2p+	2017	[166]
		XPO1 overexpression		
Ibrutinib	Mouse Eμ-myc B cells	Myc amplification	2017	[92]
Ibrutinib	MCL	Activation of the alternative NF-kB pathway	2013	[100]
Ibrutinib	MCL	Mutations in TRAF2, BIRC3, Activation of alternative NK-kB pathway	2014	[100]
Ibrutinib	MCL	Mutations in CARD11	2016	[87]
Ibrutinib	MCL	Mutations in primary resistance: A20, BIRC2, epigenetic modifiers, EGFR family;	2016	[78]
		Mutations in acquired resistance: PLCγ2, CARD11, epigenetic modifiers, NF-kB and PI3K/mTOR pathways		
Ibrutinib	MCL	PI3K–AKT activation	2014	[102]
Ibrutinib	MCL	ERK1/2 and AKT activation	2014	[103]
Ibrutinib	MCL	Upregulating the c-Myc and mTOR signaling pathways and metabolic pathways	2017	[88]
Ibrutinib	ABC-DLBCL	Mutations in PIM1	2016	[80]
Ibrutinib and ONO/GS-4059	ABC-DLBCL	NF-kB pathway activation	2017	[129]
Ibrutinib	DLBCL	Upregulation of IAP, survivin, cIAP2, BCL2 and BCL6, PI3Kα and PI3Kβ;	2017	[105]
		Downregulation of PTEN		
Ibrutinib	WM	CXCR4S338X mutation leads to activation of both AKT and ERK	2015	[85]
Ibrutinib	WM	Mutations: BTKC481S, CXCR4, CARD11, PLCγ2	2017	[83]
		Upregulation of Bcl-2 and AKT	2017	[106]

Mutational Resistance in BTK

The development of mutations within the drug target that alter drug sensitivity is an important mechanism of acquired resistance to ibrutinib. Whole-exome sequencing (WES), Sanger sequencing, and Ion Torrent deep sequencing of pre-treatment and

relapse samples from six CLL patients confirmed a cysteine-to-serine mutation at BTK position 481 (C481S) in five of the six patients [71, 72]. No patient at baseline had evidence of mutations in either BTK on the basis of WES and Ion Torrent sequencing. This finding was further confirmed by another study using peripheral blood cells and cell free DNA samples from ibrutinib naïve and treated CLL patients with custom DNA or locked nucleic acid (LNA) oligos in a wild-type blocking polymerase chain reaction, followed by Sanger sequencing and Next-generation sequencing (NGS) methods [73]. Functional characterization demonstrated that mutant BTK has significantly lowered affinity to ibrutinib than nonmutant BTK [72]. When transfected to cells with mutant BTK, ibrutinib was significantly less effective at blocking BTK auto-phosphorylation and downstream signaling than nonmutant BTK [72]. The data from the mutational analyses, signal transduction and gene expression profiling strongly suggest C481S mutation confers resistance to ibrutinib leading to increased BCR signaling at patient's relapse [74]. These functional studies suggest that the C481S mutation in BTK confers resistance to ibrutinib by preventing irreversible drug binding [72, 75]. Another mutation in BTK that is associated with ibrutinib resistance was identified at the center of the positively-charged binding pocket in the SH2 domain with a threonine to alanine change at BTKT316 site [76]. Unlike the C481, T474 and L528 mutations in the kinase domain to either directly attenuate or hinder ibrutinib binding, structure analysis revealed that T316A does not directly interfere with ibrutinib binding. *In vitro* cellular and molecular studies demonstrated that ibrutinib did not inhibit the cell proliferation of the transfected lymphoma cells with BTKT316A mutation and the degree of phosphorylation inhibition in p-BTK (Y223), p-PLCγ2, p-AKT and p-ERK following ibrutinib treatment was significantly less in C481S and T316A mutant cells than in wild type cells [76]. This data firmly established that the BTKT316A mutant is as capable as BTKC481S to confer ibrutinib resistance. The resistant BTK mutations were not detectable at the baseline before ibrutinib exposure [72, 75]. It might be limited by the sensitivity of the detection methods that may not identify small numbers of BTK mutant CLL cells in the presence of large numbers of nonmutant CLL cells. To investigate this possibility, Fam'a, R. et al. used an allele-specific polymerase chain reaction (AS-PCR) which is highly sensitive and can detect 1 mutant allele per 1000 wild-type alleles, to assess the occurrence of small subclones harboring the C481S codon mutations in ibrutinib-naive CLL patient samples [77]. Among CLLs that have not been exposed to ibrutinib, the BTK C481S variant was not detected, indicating the ibrutinib resistance in CLL is not mutation driven resistance [77].

Mutational Resistance in Other Proteins than in BTK

Mutations in the prosurvival pathways to bypass BTK appear to be another common mechanism of resistance. The samples from relapsed CLL patients were detected to have gain-of-function mutations targeting PLCγ2, a direct downstream target of

BTK phosphorylation [72]. When transfected with PLCγ2 with the L845F mutation, or with the R665W mutation into human embryonic kidney (HEK) 293 T cells and DT40 cells, which lack endogenous PLCγ2 expression, upon activating BCR signaling, phosphorylation of extracellular signal-regulated kinases (ERK) and AKT was less inhibited by ibrutinib than nonmutant cells [72]. In the phase 3 MCL 3001 (RAY) trial, mutations were identified in NF-kB signaling pathways, both canonical (e.g., A20) and noncanonical (e.g., BIRC2); in epigenetic modifiers; and in the epidermal growth factor receptor (EGFR) family in primary resistance to ibrutinib [78]. Mutations were found in PLCγ2, CARD11, epigenetic modifiers and alternate NF-kB or PI3K/mTOR pathways in the MCL patients with acquired resistance after a short treatment duration [78]. Serine/threonine kinase (PIM1) encodes a serine/threonine kinase that is a critical regulator of tumorigenesis in a number of hematologic malignancies [79]. Interestingly, in 48 DLBCL patient samples with available genomic profiling, PIM1 mutations appeared more frequently in patients with ABC-DLBCL than those with GCB-DLBCL [80]. PIM1 mutations were also identified in patients with poor response to ibrutinib, indicating PIM1 mutations are associated with intrinsic ibrutinib resistance in ABC-DLBCL. *In vitro* studies demonstrated that introducing one of these mutations into an ABC-DLBCL cell line is sufficient to induce ibrutinib resistance through stabilizing the protein and enhancing NF-κB signaling [80]. The combination of pan-PIM inhibitors such as AZD-1208 with ibrutinib results in greater efficacy than ibrutinib as a single agent and can circumvent resistance. Activating somatic mutations in MYD88 and CXCR4 are present in 90–95% and 30–40% of WM patients, respectively [81–83]. MYD88 mutations trigger pro-survival NF-kB signaling through BTK [84]. The WHIM-like CXCR4 (S338X) somatic mutation activates AKT and ERK and promotes resistance to ibrutinib [85]. In a multicenter study that administered ibrutinib to rituximab refractory WM patients, patients with CXCR4 mutations showed delayed responses, and the 1 patient with WT MYD88 showed no response to ibrutinib [86]. Xu et al. utilized Sanger sequencing, highly sensitive AS-PCR assays and targeted NGS to identify mutations associated with clinical progression in WM patients treated with ibrutinib [83]. Their study revealed that 5.1% patients on ibrutinib without clinical progression had BTKC481S mutation. And BTKC481 mutations are associated with mutated CXCR4 [83]. Akin as in CLL, BTKC481 mutations were not detected in baseline samples or ibrutinib-naïve WM patients. Additional mutations in ibrutinib resistant WM samples were identified in CARD11 and PLCγ2 [83]. CARD11 is a scaffold protein required for BCR induced NF-kB activation. Its mutation may result in a constitutive activation of B-cell receptor (BCR)/NF-κB signaling and render the mutant cells resistant or sensitive to some of the BCR/NF-κB inhibitors [47]. CARD11 mutations were observed in 5.5% of MCL samples [87]. When overexpressed *in vitro*, CARD11 mutants conferred resistance to ibrutinib, providing new insights for ibrutinib resistance in MCL and continuous activation of NF-kB pathway.

In addition to acquisition of these mutations, other mechanisms of resistance, such as upregulation of potentially druggable survival pathways [88], clonal evolution of genetic alterations [89, 90], presence of BCL-6 abnormalities [91], complex

karyotype [91], TP53 abnormality [90, 91], MYC amplification [90–92] and baseline del(17p) [90, 91], are associated with an increased risk of acquired resistance to ibrutinib.

Chromosomal Abnormality

Deletions in chromosomes have been documented in acquired ibrutinib resistance such as large deletions in the short arm of chromosome 8 [89]. Deletions of chromosome 8p were reported as a recurrent event in B-NHL and tumor necrosis factor related apoptosis inducing ligand receptors (TRAIL-R) were identified as dosage-dependent tumor suppressor genes in this region whose monoallelic deletion can impair TRAIL-induced apoptosis in B-cell lymphoma [93]. In ibrutinib resistant CLL patients, del(8p) was not present at baseline, but was detected at the time of progression on ibrutinib, indicating ibrutinib therapy favors the selection and expansion of CLL subclones carrying del(8p) [89]. The region of del(8p) was confirmed to encompass TRAIL-R [89]. Treatment with TRAIL decreased cell viability in a greater proportion of non-del(8p) CLL samples compared to the del(8p) CLL samples (16% *vs.* 5%), indicating monoallelic deletion of chromosome 8p was sufficient to abrogate the positive or negative effects of TRAIL on cell viability *in vitro*. The expected sensitivity to TRAIL in the pre-treatment samples and resistance in the relapse samples further confirmed the role of del(8p) in protection from TRAIL-induced apoptosis [89]. Some ibrutinib resistant CLL patients acquired additional putative driver mutations in eukaryotic translation initiation factor 2A (EIF2A), 40S ribosomal protein S15 (RPS15), the histone acetyltransferase EP300 (Y1397F) and the chromatin regulator MLL2 (the mixed lineage leukemia 2) without detectable mutations in BTK and PLCγ2 genes, which likely confer proliferative advantage and bypass the BTK pathway [89].

The gain of the short arm of chromosome 2 (2p+) was reported as a frequent chromosomal abnormality in CLL [94, 95]. Using single nucleotide polymorphisms array and fluorescence in situ hybridization approaches, chromosome region maintenance1/Exportin-1 gene (CRM1/XPO1) was identified to be overexpressed in the tested 2p + CLL samples [95]. CRM1/XPO1 is a ubiquitous nuclear export receptor protein that regulates intracellular nuclear export of many substrates, including both proteins and ribonucleic acid (RNA) [96]. CRM1/XPO1 is often overexpressed in cancer cells and its overexpression is involved in nuclear export of a number of tumor suppressor proteins such as p53, BRCA1, retinoblastoma, forkhead box O (FOXO), cell cycle inhibitors (p21, p27) and other drug targets [96]. CRM1/XPO1 overexpression and its mediated export has been associated with poor prognosis and resistance to therapy in various cancers [96]. Relapsed 2p+/CLL patients after treatment showed a similar or increasing percentage of cells carrying a XPO1 gain compared with the patients at the time of diagnosis, indicating the potential relevance of XPO1 in CLL drug resistance [95]. *In vitro* ibrutinib induced significantly lower programmed cell death in the 2p+/CLL cells compared with the 2p−/CLL control

cells, indicating XPO1 overexpression associated with 2p + is associated with ibrutinib resistance in the 2p+/CLL cells [95]. Further studies are needed to investigate if the combination of selinexor, a selective inhibitor of XPO1 currently in Phase 1/2 clinical trials, with ibrutinib can enhance cell death in the 2p+/CLL cells.

Activaiton of Prosurvival Pathways

Canonical and Non-canonical NF-kB Signaling Pathways

NF-kB signaling is an integral important part of the BCR signaling pathway in B cell lymphoma [97]. In canonical NF-κB pathway, NF-κB activation relies on inducible degradation of inhibitor of kappa B (IκBs), leading to nuclear translocation of various NF-κB complexes, predominantly the p50/RelA dimmer [98]. While, in a non-canonical (alternative) NF-κB pathway, the RelB/p52 NF-κB complex activation uses a mechanism that relies on the inducible processing of p100 instead of degradation of IκBα [99]. The deregulated non-canonical NF-κB signaling has associated with hematologic malignancies [99]. In a study of ibrutinib-resistance in MCL, Rahal et al. revealed that the resistant MCL cell lines depended on the alternative NF-kB pathway rather than on the canonical pathway [100]. RNA sequencing and single nucleotide polymorphism arrays showed recurrent mutations in TNF receptor associated factor 2 (TRAF2) or baculoviral IAP repeat containing 3 (BIRC3) in 15% of these individuals in ibrutinib-insensitive cell lines. The BIRC3 mutations were not only less efficient at destabilizing NIK (also known as NF-kappa-B-inducing kinase, mitogen-activated protein 3 kinase 14 or MAP3K14) but also markedly impaired in their ability to suppress p52 production [100]. And these MCL cell lines with alternative NF-κB pathway alterations are dependent on the NIK signaling both *in vitro* and *in vivo*, suggesting that NIK inhibition may offer a novel, targeted therapeutic strategy for this ibrutinib-resistant population of patients [100].

PI3K-AKT/mTOR Pathway

PI3K-AKT/mTOR activation represents a crucial downstream event of BCR/pre-BCR signaling [101]. The relapse-specific C481S mutation is often absent in patients with primary resistance or progression following transient response to ibrutinib, suggesting alternative mechanisms of resistance in MCL [102]. Chiron et al. found that primary ibrutinib resistance or transient response seems not to stem from defective ibrutinib inhibition of BTKWT in MCL cells but rather may involve sustained PI3K–AKT activation [102]. Ma et al. found that inhibition of ERK1/2 and AKT, but not BTK phosphorylation, correlates well with the extent of cell death to BTK inhibition in MCL cell lines as well as in primary tumors [103]. RNA-Seq and gene set enrichment analysis (GSEA) revealed the marked upregulation of

components of the c-Myc and mTOR signaling pathways in the ibrutinib-resistant MCL patient samples, indicating that the activation of the pathways may mediate ibrutinib resistance [104]. The role of PI3K-AKT pathway in ibrutinib resistance is also reported in DLBCL and WM. DLBCL Ibrutinib resistance cell lines were generated by continuous culturing of parental DLBCL cell lines in increasing concentrations of ibrutinib [105]. In the resistant cells, besides the increased expression of inhibitors of apoptosis (IAP) family members, survivin, cIAP2 (cellular inhibitor of apoptosis protein 2) and oncogenic BCL2 and BCL6, the deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA) damage repair pathway, and the checkpoint kinase 1 (CHK1), PI3K isoforms PI3Kα and PI3Kβ were upregulated with decreased expression of PI3Kδ and phosphatase and tensin homolog (PTEN) which is a PI3K negative regulator. When treating these resistant cells with the PI3Kβ/δ isoform targeting Drug KA2237, metabolic activity (survival) and surviving of these cells were reduced [105]. Although ibrutinib is highly effective in WM, no complete remissions in WM patients treated with ibrutinib have been reported to date, indicating the WM cell's ability to maintain their survival under ibrutinib-induced stress [106]. Paulus et al. developed ibrutinib resistant WM cell lines to identify the potential mechanisms of ibrutinib resistance in WM cells [106]. These cells exhibited decreased survival dependency on BTK-mediated signaling, but phospho-AKT level was increased in ibrutinib resistant WM cells. When the resistance cells were treated with clinical-grade allosteric pan-AKT inhibitor, MK2206, pAKT level was marked reduced and apoptosis was enhanced as indicated by poly [ADP-ribose] polymerase 1 (PARP-1) cleavage. Remarkably, when cells were treated concurrently with ibrutinib and MK2206, pBTK and pAKT levels were significantly reduced with more robust cleavage of PARP-1 and resistant tumor cell viability was synergistically reduced. This data demonstrated that drug combination strategies encompassing BTK + AKT/PI3K inhibition may potentially overcome ibrutinib resistance in WM [106].

B-Cell Lymphoma-2 (BCL-2) Family Members Mediated Resistance

BCL-2 was initially discovered as a part of the t(14;18) chromosomal translocation in patients with NHLs [107]. The dysregulation of *BCL-2* leads to high levels of Bcl-2 protein in B-cells, which alters the balance between pro-apoptotic and anti-apoptotic members of the Bcl-2 family [108]. The resulting inhibition of apoptosis is thought to lead to chemoresistance [108]. Recent studies show that Bcl-2 is involved in ibrutinib resistance. CLL patient samples treated *ex vivo* with ibrutinib or acalabrutinib and the primary samples from CLL patients on clinical trials of both drugs show enhanced mitochondrial Bcl-2 dependence without significantly altering overall mitochondrial priming [109]. The Bcl-2 family regulators profiles restored to pre-treatment levels in the samples of CLL patients that developed ibrutinib resistance [110]. Treatment of DLBCL cells with ibrutinib increased Bcl-2 expression and combination treatment with Bcl-2 inhibitors and ibrutinib

completely inhibited tumor growth in murine models of ABC-DLBCL [111]. In ibrutinib resistant WM cell lines, apoptosis regulators Bcl-2 and Mcl-1 expression were increased [106]. With Bcl-2 inhibitor, venetoclax compromised mitochondrial function in ibrutinib-resistant WM cells by increasing mitochondrial outer membrane permeability (MOMP) with induction of apoptosis [106]. These data demonstrated that drug combination strategies encompassing BTK + Bcl-2 inhibition can potentially overcome ibrutinib resistance.

Cell Cycle Deregulation

Cell cycle regulator Cycline D1, encoded by CCND1, binds and activates cyclin-dependent kinase (CDK) 4 to phosphorylate and inactivate retinoblastoma (Rb) protein [112]. This event leads to G1/S cell cycle progression and cell proliferation [112].

High-throughput sequencing has consistently revealed CCND1 was frequently mutated in MCL [113]. Recently, Mohanty et al. found some recurrent mutations located in the N-terminus of CCND1, which interfere with T286 phosphorylation and lead deregulated CCND1 turnover and increased protein levels [114]. More importantly, these mutated CCND1-expressing MCL cells were more resistant to ibrutinib [114]. In another study, it was found that tissue-specific proliferation of ibrutinib resistant MCL cells was driven by the activation CDK4 [102]. Cyclin-dependent kinase 4 specific inhibitor palbociclib prolonged early G1 arrest and sensitized resistant MCL cells to ibrutinib killing, suggesting a strategy to override acquired ibrutinib resistance [102].

Tumor Microenvironment Mediated Resistance

Tumor microenvironment (TME) is known as a critical regulator of immune escape, progression, metastasis of cancer, and tumor resistance to various therapies [115]. The complex cell-signaling relationship between MCL cells, TME and ibrutinib resistance, is currently under investigation but it is less studied in other types of B-cell lymphoma [116]. Zhao et al. recently revealed how the TME contributes to the development of acquired ibrutinib resistance in MCL [117]. They found that co-culture of MCL cells with lymph node stromal cells or bone marrow stromal cells significantly increased pBTK, pERK and pAKT in MCL cell lines and primary MCL cells. Ibrutinib resistant MCL cells had a marked increase in adhesion to stromal cells and enhanced clonogenic growth in the presence of ibrutinib. Combining kinomics, longitudinal drug screening with *ex vivo*, *in vivo* TME, and patient-derived xenograft models, Zhao et al. identified a major kinase network involving PI3K-AKT-mTOR/integrin b1-integrin-linked kinase (ILK) as a central hub for TME–lymphoma interactions mediating ibrutinib resistance [117]. When PI3K inhibitor dactolisib or mTOR inhibitor AZD8055 was combined with ibrutinib, cell

survival, b1 expression, cell adhesion and clonogenic growth were substantially inhibited in all ibrutinib resistant MCL lines and in patient samples of acquired ibrutinib resistant MCL. AZD8055 in combination with ibrutinib induced remarkable inhibition of ibrutinib resistant MCL, reduction of pAKT, pS6K1, p4EBP and b1 expression levels and reduced cell adhesion to stromal cells in these xenograft tumor cells [117]. Their finding suggested that combined disruption of BCR signaling and central pathways resulting from kinome reprogramming is critical for overcoming ibrutinib resistance in MCL.

Novel Approaches to Overcome BTK Inhibitors Resistance

Overcome Ibrutinib C481 Mutation Resistance with Non-Covalent Inhibitors of BTK

Based on the improved understanding of ibrutinib resistance, several strategies have been utilized to overcome BTK inhibitor especially ibrutinib resistance. The second-generation BTK inhibitors such as acalabrutinib are covalent, target-specific and have shown improved clinical responses. However, these covalent inhibitors often lose potency against BTK C481 mutations. One strategy to treat C481-mutant based ibrutinib resistance is to develop small molecule BTK inhibitors that do not depend upon binding to the C481 site for inhibition of BTK. Non-covalent inhibitors GDC-0853, SNS-062 (Vecabrutinib®), and GNE-431 have been evaluated in preclinical and clinical studies with potency against C481 mutant BTK [118–120]. GDC-0853 is a novel non-covalent, reversible, selective, orally bioavailable, and ATP-competitive inhibitor of BTK that effectively blocks BCR signaling in the treatment of B-cell malignancies including CLL [118]. *In vitro* studies showed that GDC-0853 reduced the activations of BTK, PLCγ2, AKT, and ERK. Unlike ibrutinib, GDC-0853 inhibited signaling of both WT and C481S mutated BTK in transfected HEK293T cell lines and preserved NK cell mediated ADCC with clinical anti-CD20 antibodies [121]. In a phase 1 trial, unlike ibrutinib, GDC-0853 was able to inhibit BTK C481S mutants in CLL and NHL patients, demonstrated by reductions in C-C motif chemokine Ligand 3 (CCL3), which is one of the biomarkers to assess systemic inhibition of BTK in B-cell lymphoma [118]. SNS-062 is another non-covalent inhibitor of BTK unaffected by the C481S mutation. Fabian et al. found that SNS-062 and ibrutinib demonstrated comparable activity in inhibiting BTK, decreasing the expression of B cell activation markers, and reducing CLL cell viability in in BTK wild type CLL cells [119]. More importantly, SNS-062 was not affected by BTK C481S mutation but the activities of ibrutinib and acalabrutinib were hindered. SNS-062 also showed 6 times more potent than ibrutinib and more than 640 times more potent than acalabrutinib against C481S BTK [119]. Finally, the investigators found that SNS-062 diminished stromal cell protection in CLL cells, suggesting the drug can reduce the protection from the TME to CLL [119]. Their findings support clinical investigation of SNS-062 in patients with acquired

resistance to covalent BTK inhibitors. A phase 1b study is currently recruiting B lymphoid cancers (NCT03037645). Non-covalent inhibitor GNE-431 also showed excellent potency against the C481S, C481R, T474I, and T474 M mutants with nanomolar potency in-vitro, in cells, and in whole blood [120]. These non-covalent inhibitors may provide a potentially effective treatment option to ibrutinib resistant patients, but further studies are needed to demonstrate their clinical response.

Utilize Alternate Kinase Inhibitors to Overcome Ibrutinib Resistance

Researchers have proposed and investigated several other salvage approaches to overcome BTK inhibitors' resistance, which include using alternate kinase inhibitors. Based on an *in vitro* CLL proliferation model, Cheng et al. demonstrated that the ibrutinib resistant CLL cells were sensitive to the inhibition of dasatinib (blocking multiple tyrosine kinases including LYN and BTK), and SYK inhibitors (Cerdulatinib (PRT062070) and PRT060318) and idelalisib (PI3Kδ inhibitor) [74]. In a recent study, the finding of the increased incidence of PI3Kα in DLBCL sheds light on the molecular basis of the intrinsic resistance of DLBCL to PI3Kδ inhibition observed in the clinic [122]. Copanlisib is a predominant PI3Kα/δ dual inhibitor [122]. It led to significantly reduced cell viability in-vitro in both ibrutinib-sensitive and -resistant ABC-DLBCL cell lines by suppression of p-AKT and blocking nuclear factor-κB activation driven by CD79mut, CARD11mut, TNFAIP3mut, or MYD88mut [122]. Copanlisib also demonstrated potent *in vivo* anti-tumor effect in ibrutinib-resistant CARD11mutand/or MYD88mut DLBCL mice models [122]. Dasatinib was identified as the most DLBCL-specific agent in a drug screen composed of 2160 FDA-approved drugs and other targeted drugs. Notably, dasatinib overcomes Ibrutinib-resistance caused by BTK C481S mutation through FYN suppression [123]. These results are consistent with the previous report.

Combine BTK Inhibitors with Other Oncogenic Inhibitors

The second strategy is to utilize drug combination that targets multiple components or multiple oncogenic pathways (Table 6.4). Most of the reported combination studies are in preclinical evaluation with promising results. For example, addition of ONO/GS-4059 + entospletinib (SYK inhibitor) or idelalisib, had an additive effect on induction of apoptosis in primary CLL cells. The addition of ABT-199 to entospletinib, ONO/GS-4059, or idelalisib showed additive to synergistic effects on induction of apoptosis in primary CLL cells, and increased the maximal level of apoptosis [124]. The safety and tolerability of the combination was evaluated in a Phase 1b clinical trial [125]. ONO/GS-4059 at up to 160 mg in combination with entospletinib up to 400 mg daily was safe and well tolerated [125]. The combination

Table 6.4 Summary of combination therapies with BTK inhibitors

BTK inhibitor	Combination reagents	Role of the combination reagent	Diseases	Study stage	Year	Ref.
ONO/ GS-4059	Idelalisib or Entospletinib or ABT-199	PI3Kδ inhibitor, SYK inhibitor, Bcl-2 inhibitor	CLL	Preclinical	2015	[124]
Acalabrutinib	ACP-319	PI3Kδ inhibition	CLL	Preclinical	2017	[126]
ONO/ GS-4059	Idelalisib	PI3Kδ inhibition	ABC-DLBCL	Preclinical	2017	[129]
ONO/ GS-4059	Entospletinib	SYK inhibitor	CLL	Preclinical	2015	[124]
ONO/ GS-4059	Entospletinib	SYK inhibitor	CLL; Non-GCB DLBCL; FL; WM; MCL; SLL; MZL	Phase 1b clinical	2017	[125]
Ibrutinib	AZD2014	mTOR1/2 inhibitor	ABC-DLBCL	Preclinical	2014	[128]
PLS-123	Everolimus	mTOR inhibitor	MCL	Preclinical	2018	[167]
Ibrutinib	Ulixertinib	ERK1/2 inhibitor	MYD88 mutated WM ABC DLBCL	Preclinical	2016	[132]
Ibrutinib	Pimasertib	MEK1/2 inhibitor	DLBCL MCL	Preclinical	2016	[168]
PLS-123	N/A	BTK/ PLC-γ2 dual inhibitor	B cell lymphoma	Preclinical	2015	[133]
QLX138	N/A	BTK/MNK dual inhibitor	B cell lymphoma	Preclinical	2016	[134]
MDVN1003	N/A	BTK/PI3Kδ dual inhibitor	B cell lymphoma	Preclinical	2017	[135]
Pyrimidine derivatives compounds	N/A	BTK/JAK dual inhibitor	B cell lymphoma	Preclinical	2018	[136]
Ibrutinib	Venetoclax (ABT-199)	Bcl-2 inhibitor	MCL, ABC-DLBCL, FL	Preclinical	2015, 2017	[138, 140]
Ibrutinib	Venetoclax	Bcl-2 inhibitor	MCL	Phase 2 clinical	2018	[139]
Acalabrutinib	Venetoclax	Bcl-2 inhibitor	CLL	Preclinical	2018	[169]
ONO/ GS-4059	Venetoclax (ABT-199)	Bcl-2 inhibitor	CLL	Preclinical	2015	[124]
Ibrutinib	Rituximab	Anti-CD20 antibody	High risk CLL	Phase 2 clinical	2014	[141]
Ibrutinib	Rituximab	Anti-CD20 antibody	R/R MCL	Phase 2 clinical	2016	[142]
Ibrutinib	Rituximab	Anti-CD20 antibody	Naïve FL	Phase 2 clinical	2016	[143]

(continued)

Table 6.4 (continued)

BTK inhibitor	Combination reagents	Role of the combination reagent	Diseases	Study stage	Year	Ref.
Acalabrutinib	Rituximab	Anti-CD20 antibody	R/R FL	Phase 1/2 clinical	2015	[144]
Ibrutinib	R-CHOP	Rituximab + cyclophosphamide, doxorubicin, vincristine, and prednisone	Naïve B-NHL	Phase 1b clinical	2014	[145]
Ibrutinib	Bendamustine + rituximab	a nitrogen mustard drug + anti-CD20 antibody	Naïve or R/R NHL	Phase 1/1b clinical	2015	[146]
Ibrutinib	Bendamustine + rituximab	a nitrogen mustard drug + anti-CD20 antibody	R/R CLL	Phase 3 clinical	2016	[147]
ONO/ GS-4059	Obinutuzumab	Anti-CD20 antibody	ABC-DLBCL	Preclinical	2017	[149]
Ibrutinib	CTL019	Anti-CD19 CAR T	MCL	Preclinical	2016	[152]
Ibrutinib	CD19/ CD3-scFv-Fc	Bispecific antibody	CLL	Preclinical	2018	[155]
Ibrutinib	ACY1215	HDAC6 inhibitor	MCL	Preclinical	2012	[156]
Ibrutinib	Panobinostat	HDAC inhibitor	ABC-DLBCL	Preclinical	2017	[157]
Ibrutinib	Palbociclib	CDK4 inhibitor	MCL	Preclinical	2014	[102]
Ibrutinib	PF-00477736	Chk1 inhibitor	MCL	Preclinical	2018	[158]
Ibrutinib	Bortezomib	Proteasome inhibitor	Bortezomib-sensitive or – resistant DLBCL MCL	Preclinical	2013	[160]
Ibrutinib	Carfilzomib	Proteasome inhibitor	MCL	Preclinical	2014	[161]
Ibrutinib	VS-6063	Focal adhesion kinase inhibitor	MCL	Preclinical	2018	[164]

of acalabrutinib with the PI3K-delta inhibitor ACP-319 significantly reduced CLL tumor proliferation and tumor burden in the peripheral blood and spleen with reduced NF-κB signaling and enhanced expression of BCL-xL and MCL-1 than single-agent therapy [126]. Vistusertib (AZD2014) is an ATP-competitive mTOR inhibitor, which can block the activity of both the mTORC1 (rapamycin-sensitive) and mTORC2 (rapamycin- insensitive) complexes and is highly selective against PI3K superfamily kinases [127]. The combination of ibrutinib and AZD2014 was shown to strongly induce apoptosis in ABC-DLBCL by regulation of 4EBP1 and cap-dependent translation (CDT) as well as Janus kinase (JAK) 3 / signal transducer and activator of transcription (STAT) 3, NF-κB, STAT3, and mTOR pathways [128]. The combination treatment of another mTOR inhibitor everolimus and the second-generation BTK inhibitor PLS-123 significantly induced cell apoptosis, blocked cell cycle

progression and synergistically downregulates activation of BCR, AKT/mTOR, JAK2/STAT3 and MAPK signaling in MCL cell lines *in vitro* and effectively inhibited MCL tumor growth *in vivo* in severe combined immunodeficiency SCID mice. These combinations promise to be attractive therapeutic approaches in patients. However, further investigations are needed on ibrutinib resistant tumor cells.

The combinations of BTK inhibitors with PI3K inhibitors, MEK1/2 inhibitor, ERK1/2 inhibitor, or PIM1 inhibitor have been investigated in BTK inhibitor resistant B lymphoma cells with promising results. The combination of ONO/GS-4059 and idelalisib was investigated in ibrutinib resistant DLBCL cells. The acquired ibrutinib resistant DLBCL cells, which had loss of A20 and BTK C481F mutation, were insensitive to both idelalisib and ONO/GS-4059 as single agents but were significantly inhibited with the combination of both agents [129]. The decrease in p-IκBα by the combination suggested that inhibition of MAPK and NF-κB pathways might be the mechanism that leads to the decreased cell viability seen with combination treatment in this resistant cell line [129]. A clinical trial is currently underway to evaluate the combination of idelalisib and ONO/GS-4059 (NCT02457598) [129]. Activation of the ERK pathway is a very frequent observation in mature B-cell lymphoid tumors [130] and is implicated in the resistance to ibrutinib [85]. Pimasertib is a highly selective and ATP non-competitive MEK1/2 inhibitor and currently being tested in clinical phase 1/2 trials [131]. The combination of pimasertib and ibrutinib induced apoptosis with an increase of cleaved poly ADP ribose polymerase (PARP) and is active in ABC-DLBCL xenografts. MYD88 mutated WM and ABC DLBCL cells with BTK C481S mutation showed persistent activation of PLCγ2-ERK1/2 signaling [132]. Ulixertinib (BVD-523, VRT752271) is a highly selective ERK1/2 inhibitor that is currently under clinical investigation. The combination of ulixertinib with ibrutinib produced higher levels of tumor cell killing than either agent alone, and significantly reduced interleukin 6 (IL-6) and interleukin 10 (IL-10) secretions which are associated with prosurvival signaling pathways [132]. The findings provide rationale for the investigation of ERK1/2 inhibitors in ibrutinib resistant MYD88 driven WM and ABC-DLBCL disease mediated by BTK mutations. As described in the early section, PIM1 inhibitor AZD-1208 may be a good choice to combine with ibrutinib to suppress ibrutinib resistance in ABC-DLBCL cells with mutations in PIM1 through NF-kB pathway [80].

Dual inhibitors have emerged as an attractive strategy by inhibiting the catalytic activity of BTK and other kinases such as PLC- γ2 kinase, Mitogen-Activated Protein Kinase interacting kinase (MNK kinase), PI3Kδ kinase and JAK3. PLS-123 displayed impressive potency against BTK Tyr551 and PLC-γ2 Tyr1217 phosphorylation [133]. It significantly reduced the phosphorylation of the BCR downstream signal pathways such as AKT/mTOR and MAPK [133]. Gene expression profile analysis further suggested that the different selectivity profile of PLS-123 led to significant downregulation of oncogenic gene tyrosine-protein phosphatase non-receptor type 11 (PTPN11) expression [133]. In addition, PLS-123 mediated TME to attenuate lymphoma cell adhesion and migration [133]. MNK kinase is one of the key downstream regulators in the RAF/MEK/ERK signaling pathway and controls protein synthesis via regulating the activity of

eukaryotic translation initiation factor 4E (eIF4E) [134]. Through a structure-based drug design approach, a potent BTK/MNK dual kinase inhibitor (QLX138) was discovered with covalent binding to BTK and non-covalent binding to MNK ability [134]. QLX138 enhanced the antiproliferative and apoptosis efficacies in-vitro against a variety of B-cell lymphoma cells, which respond moderately to BTK inhibitor in-vitro [134]. MDVN1003 is a first-in-class dual inhibitor of BTK and PI3Kδ kinases [135]. MDVN1003 induced cell death of a B-cell lymphoma cell line and it reduced tumor growth in a B-cell lymphoma xenograft model more effectively than either ibrutinib or idelalisib [135]. JAK3 plays an important role in survival of B cells by regulating the activity of STAT3 (the antiapoptotic transcription factors signal transducer and activator of transcription 3), STAT5 and the antiapoptotic PI3K-AKT pathway and its downstream targets [136].

Using diphenylpyrimidine derivatives (DPPYs) as scaffolds, Ge et al. synthesized a new class of DPPY derivatives bearing a variety of the flexible C-2 aniline side chains [136]. Some of the pyrimidine derivatives showed high inhibitory potency of BTK and JAK3. Flow cytometric analysis, and a xenograft model for *in vivo* evaluation indicated the efficacy and low toxicity of 2 derivatives in the treatment of B-cell lymphoma [136]. These primary studies indicate that simultaneous inhibition of BTK and other kinases' activity might be a new therapeutic strategy for B-cell lymphoma and may overcome BTK inhibitor resistance.

Combine BTK Inhibitors With BCL-2 Inhibitors

The BH3-only mimetic Venetoclax® (ABT-199) selectively inactivates BCL-2 and is a promising drug for treatment of BCL2-dependent cancers [137]. The preclinical study shows that the combination of ibrutinib and Venetoclax® displayed strongly synergistic effects in MCL cell lines and primary cells from recurrent MCL patients, mechanistically, by perturbation of p-BTK and p-AKT mediated survival signals and of BCL2 family proteins [138]. A single-group, phase 2 study of the combination was conducted in R/R MCL patients compared with historical controls [139]. The CR rate at week 16 was 42%, which was higher than the historical result of 9% at this time point with ibrutinib monotherapy ($p < .001$) [139]. Seventy-eight percent of the patients with a response were estimated to have an ongoing response at 15 months [139]. The estimated rates of PFS were 75% at 12 months and 57% at 18 months [139]. Minimal residual disease (MRD) clearance was confirmed by flow cytometry and allele-specific oligonucleotide polymerase chain reaction (ASO-PCR), 67% and 38% respectively [139]. The side effects were generally low grade [139]. Additionally, the combination of ibrutinib and venetoclax also synergistically suppressed cell growth in ibrutinib-resistant ABC-DLBCL and FL cells that overexpressed BCL-2 in a preclinical study [140].

Combine BTK Inhibitors With Immunotherapies (Anti-CD20 Antibodies, Anti-CD19 CAR T Cells, CD19/CD3 Bispecific Antibody)

The activity and safety of adding ibrutinib or acalabrutinib to rituximab based therapies (alone, with rituximab-cyclophosphamide, doxorubicin, vincristine, and prednisone (R-CHOP), or with bendamustine) have been evaluated in early phase trials in patients with high-risk CLL, R/R MCL, naïve FL, R/R FL or R/R B-NHL [141–147] (Table 6.4). The encouraging results merit further investigation of the combinations in phase 3 trials in BTK resistant patients. ABC-DLBCL often has low response rate to BTK inhibitors ibrutinib or ONO/GS-4059 [66, 148]. The combination of ibrutinib combined with rituximab did not result in improved efficacy compared with respective monotherapy [149]. To overcome BTK inhibitor's resistance in ABC-DLBCL, the combination of ONO/GS-4059 with obinutuzumab (glycoengineered Type II CD20 antibody) or rituximab was evaluated for ABC-DLBCL in a preclinical study [149]. The combination was significantly better than the respective monotherapy with tumor growth inhibition of 90% for the obinutuzumab combination and 86% for the rituximab combination [149]. This result indicates that the combination of the second-generation inhibitor with rituximab and particularly obinutuzumab may be an effective treatment for resistant B-cell lymphoma.

Besides the combination with the antibody-based therapy, chimeric antigen receptor engineered T cells may be another good choice for the combination. Infusion of anti-CD19 CAR^+ autologous T-cells (CART19, CTL019) into patients with B-cell lymphomas such as CLL and DLBCL leads to dramatic clinical responses [150, 151]. Taking the advantage of the vastly different mechanisms of action of CTL019 and ibrutinib, in a preclinical study, the combination of ibrutinib with CTL019 augmented the antitumor effect compared to single agent and leaded to prolonged remissions in MCL xenografts [152]. Strikingly, a recent study found that anti-CD19 modified CAR-T cells induced 71% ORR in CLL patients after ibrutinib failure [153]. Since ibrutinib has been shown to improve T-cell function in CLL [154], a novel CD19/CD3-scFv-Fc bispecific antibody was developed to work as an adjunct with ibrutinib to target ibrutinib-resistant disease [155]. CD19/CD3-scFv-Fc was shown to have the ability to eliminate ibrutinib resistant CLL cells *in vitro* and *in vivo* [155].

Combine BTK Inhibitors with Inhibitors Targeting Other Cellular Processes

The inhibitors involved in histone deacetylation, cell cycle regulation, protein degradation, cell stress and TME also show promising anti-tumor effects when combined with ibrutinib for resistant lymphoma diseases (Table 6.4). Treatment with ibrutinib plus ACY1215, a selective histone deacetylase 6 (HDAC6) inhibitor,

resulted in a three-fold increase in apoptosis induction in MCL tumor cell lines, pointing to a synergistic effect of BTK and HDAC6 inhibition in MCL [156]. Panobinostat, a non-selective histone deacetylase inhibitor, inhibited MyD88-driven NF-κB activation, and enhanced ibrutinib efficacy in MyD88 mutant ABC-DLBCL [157]. The unrestrained proliferation of relapsed lymphoma cells after ibrutinib treatment suggests that simultaneous targeting of cell cycle regulators may override some mechanisms of resistance [102, 158]. Cyclin-dependent kinase 4 (CDK4) specific inhibitor palbociclib has been shown to prolong early G1 arrest and sensitized resistant MCL cells to ibrutinib killing [102]. Checkpoint kinase 1 (Chk1) inhibitor PF-00477736 also showed a synergistic anti-tumor effect with ibrutinib in-vitro in MCL cell lines that are sensitive or resistant to ibrutinib [158]. The ubiquitin-proteasome system degrades a variety of intracellular proteins, and plays an important role in maintenance of the balance between pro and anti-apoptotic proteins, and signal transduction regulation [159]. Synergistic interactions between ibrutinib and proteasome inhibitor bortezomib (the first approved therapeutic proteasome inhibitor) or carfilzomib (a selective proteasome inhibitor of the 20S proteasome) have been observed in a variety of DLBCL and MCL cells [160, 161]. However, further evaluations are needed for ibrutinib resistant cells. Additionally, heat shock proteins as molecular chaperones are exploited by tumor cells to buffer malignancy-associated cellular stress and facilitate the maturation, activation, and stabilization of many oncoproteins [162]. It was reported that heat shock protein 90 (HSP90) inhibitor AUY922 overcame nonclassical NF-κB signaling and BTK C481S in MCL. Focal adhesion kinase (FAK) functions downstream of integrins and mediate signals from the extracellular matrix to tumor cells to enhance tumor cell proliferation, survival and migration in response to stromal interaction [163]. A recent study shows the role of FAK in bone marrow stroma-mediated enhancement of MCL proliferation and survival and the combined treatment of ibrutinib and defactinib (VS-6063), a FAK inhibitor in ibrutinib resistant MCL cells, was highly synergistic, and overcame the resistance by abrogation of the NF-κB signaling pathway [164].

Conclusion

The BCR signaling pathway plays a crucial role in the development of B-cell lymphomas, providing a rationale to therapeutically target this pathway (Fig. 6.1). Several inhibitors targeting the members of this pathway have been developed and evaluated. Among these agents, BTK inhibitor ibrutinib with impressive clinical response and tolerability was the first to receive FDA approval for the treatment of patients with relapsed MCL and CLL. Ibrutinib has also shown promising activity in WM, FL and ABC-type DLBCL (Table 6.1). Ibrutinib has less kinase targeting specificity. It binds to BTK but also several other kinases. To improve the therapeutic effect, second-generation BTK inhibitors with more selective kinase activity profiles are developed and evaluated in early clinical trials (Table 6.2). With the promising clinical response and safer profile, acalabrutinib was granted Breakthrough

Therapy Designation by the FDA for patients with MCL who have received at least one prior therapy. Since many B-cell lymphoma depends on BCR signaling, the potential utility of BTK inhibitors will be tremendous. However, some patients show PRs or no response to BTK inhibitors at initial treatment and others developed disease progression and drug resistance during ibrutinib treatment. A better understanding of the resistant mechanism will allow accurate molecular classification of patients and assist in designing or choosing targeted therapies unique to that resistant mechanism. Advances in molecular genomics such as RNA-seq and whole genome sequencing have been instrumental in uncovering the ibrutinib resistant mechanisms. These mechanisms include mutational resistance in BTK and in other proteins, chromosomal abnormality, activation of prosurvival pathways, BCL-2 family members mediated resistance, and tumor microenvironment mediated resistance and potential other mechanims that are beyond our discussion in this review (Fig. 6.2 and Table 6.3). The resistant mechanisms of the second-generation BTK inhibitors are less studied and further investigation is needed to compare with ibrutinib resistance. Non-covalent inhibitors of BTK have been developed to bypass C481 mutation in ibrutinib. Extensive preclinical studies of utilization of the inhibitors of alternate kinases other than BTK in the BCR pathway, and the combination therapies of BTK inhibitors with other oncogenic inhibitors, or with inhibitors involved in histone deacetylation, cell cycle regulation, protein degradation, cell stress and TME are encouraging to move on to clinical trials to overcome ibrutinib resistance. Furthermore, the combinations of BTK inhibitors with the novel agents of immunotherapies such as anti-CD20 antibodies, anti-CD19 CAR T cells, CD19/CD3 bispecific antibodies hold great promise for eradicating resistance and achieving better clinical outcomes in patients with B-cell lymphoma.

Acknowledgements This work was supported by the grants from Pediatric Cancer Research Foundation (MSC) and New York Medical College Translational Science Institute, Children Health Translational Research Grant (YC). YC reviewed the literatures, developed the design of the paper and wrote the manuscript. MSC and AB critically revised the manuscript and have approved the final version for publication. The authors would like to thank Erin Morris, RN, and Virginia Davenport, RN for their excellent assistance with the preparation of this manuscript.

Disclosure of Conflict of Interest No potential conflicts of interest were disclosed.

References

1. Campo E, Swerdlow SH, Harris NL, Pileri S, Stein H, Jaffe ES. The 2008 WHO classification of lymphoid neoplasms and beyond: evolving concepts and practical applications. Blood. 2011;117(19):5019–32.
2. Cairo MS, Krailo MD, Morse M, Hutchinson RJ, Harris RE, Kjeldsberg CR, Kadin ME, Radel E, Steinherz LJ, Morris E, Finlay JL, Meadows AT. Long-term follow-up of short intensive multiagent chemotherapy without high-dose methotrexate ('Orange') in children with advanced non-lymphoblastic non-Hodgkin's lymphoma: a children's cancer group report. Leukemia. 2002;16(4):594–600.

3. Cairo MS, Sposto R, Perkins SL, Meadows AT, Hoover-Regan ML, Anderson JR, Siegel SE, Lones MA, Tedeschi-Blok N, Kadin ME, Kjeldsberg CR, Wilson JF, Sanger W, Morris E, Krailo MD, Finlay JL. Burkitt's and Burkitt-like lymphoma in children and adolescents: a review of the Children's Cancer group experience. Br J Haematol. 2003;120(4):660–70.
4. Miles RR, Arnold S, Cairo MS. Risk factors and treatment of childhood and adolescent Burkitt lymphoma/leukaemia. Br J Haematol. 2012;156(6):730–43.
5. Cairo MS, Gerrard M, Sposto R, Auperin A, Pinkerton CR, Michon J, Weston C, Perkins SL, Raphael M, McCarthy K, Patte C, Committee FLIS. Results of a randomized international study of high-risk central nervous system B non-Hodgkin lymphoma and B acute lymphoblastic leukemia in children and adolescents. Blood. 2007;109(7):2736–43.
6. Gerrard M, Cairo MS, Weston C, Auperin A, Pinkerton R, Lambilliote A, Sposto R, McCarthy K, Lacombe MJ, Perkins SL, Patte C. Excellent survival following two courses of COPAD chemotherapy in children and adolescents with resected localized B-cell non-Hodgkin's lymphoma: results of the FAB/LMB 96 international study. Br J Haematol. 2008;141(6):840–7.
7. Patte C, Auperin A, Gerrard M, Michon J, Pinkerton R, Sposto R, Weston C, Raphael M, Perkins SL, McCarthy K, Cairo MS, Committee FLIS. Results of the randomized international FAB/LMB96 trial for intermediate risk B-cell non-Hodgkin lymphoma in children and adolescents: it is possible to reduce treatment for the early responding patients. Blood. 2007;109(7):2773–80.
8. Cairo MS, Sposto R, Gerrard M, Auperin A, Goldman SC, Harrison L, Pinkerton R, Raphael M, McCarthy K, Perkins SL, Patte C. Advanced stage, increased lactate dehydrogenase, and primary site, but not adolescent age (>/= 15 years), are associated with an increased risk of treatment failure in children and adolescents with mature B-cell non-Hodgkin's lymphoma: results of the FAB LMB 96 study. J Clin Oncol. 2012;30(4):387–93.
9. Rickert RC. New insights into pre-BCR and BCR signalling with relevance to B cell malignancies. Nat Rev Immunol. 2013;13(8):578–91.
10. Kraus M, Alimzhanov MB, Rajewsky N, Rajewsky K. Survival of resting mature B lymphocytes depends on BCR signaling via the Igalpha/beta heterodimer. Cell. 2004;117(6):787–800.
11. Havranek O, Xu J, Kohrer S, Wang Z, Becker L, Comer JM, Henderson J, Ma W, Man Chun Ma J, Westin JR, Ghosh D, Shinners N, Sun L, Yi AF, Karri AR, Burger JA, Zal T, Davis RE. Tonic B-cell receptor signaling in diffuse large B-cell lymphoma. Blood. 2017;130(8):995–1006.
12. Martinez N, Almaraz C, Vaque JP, Varela I, Derdak S, Beltran S, Mollejo M, Campos-Martin Y, Agueda L, Rinaldi A, Kwee I, Gut M, Blanc J, Oscier D, Strefford JC, Martinez-Lopez J, Salar A, Sole F, Rodriguez-Peralto JL, Diez-Tascon C, Garcia JF, Fraga M, Sebastian E, Alves J, Menarguez J, Gonzalez-Carrero J, Casado LF, Bayes M, Bertoni F, Gut I, Piris MA. Whole-exome sequencing in splenic marginal zone lymphoma reveals mutations in genes involved in marginal zone differentiation. Leukemia. 2014;28(6):1334–40.
13. Krysiak K, Gomez F, White BS, Matlock M, Miller CA, Trani L, Fronick CC, Fulton RS, Kreisel F, Cashen AF, Carson KR, Berrien-Elliott MM, Bartlett NL, Griffith M, Griffith OL, Fehniger TA. Recurrent somatic mutations affecting B-cell receptor signaling pathway genes in follicular lymphoma. Blood. 2017;129(4):473–83.
14. Corso J, Pan KT, Walter R, Doebele C, Mohr S, Bohnenberger H, Strobel P, Lenz C, Slabicki M, Hullein J, Comoglio F, Rieger MA, Zenz T, Wienands J, Engelke M, Serve H, Urlaub H, Oellerich T. Elucidation of tonic and activated B-cell receptor signaling in Burkitt's lymphoma provides insights into regulation of cell survival. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA. 2016;113(20):5688–93.
15. Burger JA, Wiestner A. Targeting B cell receptor signalling in cancer: preclinical and clinical advances. Nat Rev Cancer. 2018;18(3):148–67.
16. Weber ANR, Bittner Z, Liu X, Dang TM, Radsak MP, Brunner C. Bruton's tyrosine kinase: an emerging key player in innate immunity. Front Immunol. 2017;8:1454.
17. Buhl AM, Cambier JC. Phosphorylation of CD19 Y484 and Y515, and linked activation of phosphatidylinositol 3-kinase, are required for B cell antigen receptor-mediated activation of Bruton's tyrosine kinase. J Immunol. 1999;162(8):4438–46.

18. Vetrie D, Vorechovsky I, Sideras P, Holland J, Davies A, Flinter F, Hammarstrom L, Kinnon C, Levinsky R, Bobrow M, et al. The gene involved in X-linked agammaglobulinaemia is a member of the src family of protein-tyrosine kinases. Nature. 1993;361(6409):226–33.
19. Tsukada S, Saffran DC, Rawlings DJ, Parolini O, Allen RC, Klisak I, Sparkes RS, Kubagawa H, Mohandas T, Quan S, et al. Deficient expression of a B cell cytoplasmic tyrosine kinase in human X-linked agammaglobulinemia. Cell. 1993;72(2):279–90.
20. Mohamed AJ, Nore BF, Christensson B, Smith CI. Signalling of Bruton's tyrosine kinase, Btk. Scand J Immunol. 1999;49(2):113–8.
21. Wahl MI, Fluckiger AC, Kato RM, Park H, Witte ON, Rawlings DJ. Phosphorylation of two regulatory tyrosine residues in the activation of Bruton's tyrosine kinase via alternative receptors. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA. 1997;94(21):11526–33.
22. Mohamed AJ, Yu L, Backesjo CM, Vargas L, Faryal R, Aints A, Christensson B, Berglof A, Vihinen M, Nore BF, Smith CI. Bruton's tyrosine kinase (Btk): function, regulation, and transformation with special emphasis on the PH domain. Immunol Rev. 2009;228(1):58–73.
23. Di Paolo JA, Huang T, Balazs M, Barbosa J, Barck KH, Bravo BJ, Carano RA, Darrow J, Davies DR, DeForge LE, Diehl L, Ferrando R, Gallion SL, Giannetti AM, Gribling P, Hurez V, Hymowitz SG, Jones R, Kropf JE, Lee WP, Maciejewski PM, Mitchell SA, Rong H, Staker BL, Whitney JA, Yeh S, Young WB, Yu C, Zhang J, Reif K, Currie KS. Specific Btk inhibition suppresses B cell- and myeloid cell-mediated arthritis. Nat Chem Biol. 2011;7(1):41–50.
24. Hendriks RW, de Bruijn MF, Maas A, Dingjan GM, Karis A, Grosveld F. Inactivation of Btk by insertion of lacZ reveals defects in B cell development only past the pre-B cell stage. EMBO J. 1996;15(18):4862–72.
25. Vihinen M, Brandau O, Branden LJ, Kwan SP, Lappalainen I, Lester T, Noordzij JG, Ochs HD, Ollila J, Pienaar SM, Riikonen P, Saha BK, Smith CI. BTKbase, mutation database for X-linked agammaglobulinemia (XLA). Nucleic Acids Res. 1998;26(1):242–7.
26. Thomas JD, Sideras P, Smith CI, Vorechovsky I, Chapman V, Paul WE. Colocalization of X-linked agammaglobulinemia and X-linked immunodeficiency genes. Science. 1993;261(5119):355–8.
27. Qiu Y, Kung HJ. Signaling network of the Btk family kinases. Oncogene. 2000;19(49):5651–61.
28. Davis RE, Ngo VN, Lenz G, Tolar P, Young RM, Romesser PB, Kohlhammer H, Lamy L, Zhao H, Yang Y, Xu W, Shaffer AL, Wright G, Xiao W, Powell J, Jiang JK, Thomas CJ, Rosenwald A, Ott G, Muller-Hermelink HK, Gascoyne RD, Connors JM, Johnson NA, Rimsza LM, Campo E, Jaffe ES, Wilson WH, Delabie J, Smeland EB, Fisher RI, Braziel RM, Tubbs RR, Cook JR, Weisenburger DD, Chan WC, Pierce SK, Staudt LM. Chronic active B-cell-receptor signalling in diffuse large B-cell lymphoma. Nature. 2010;463(7277):88–92.
29. Young RM, Staudt LM. Targeting pathological B cell receptor signalling in lymphoid malignancies. Nat Rev Drug Discov. 2013;12(3):229–43.
30. Honigberg LA, Smith AM, Sirisawad M, Verner E, Loury D, Chang B, Li S, Pan Z, Thamm DH, Miller RA, Buggy JJ. The Bruton tyrosine kinase inhibitor PCI-32765 blocks B-cell activation and is efficacious in models of autoimmune disease and B-cell malignancy. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA. 2010;107(29):13075–80.
31. Mathews Griner LA, Guha R, Shinn P, Young RM, Keller JM, Liu D, Goldlust IS, Yasgar A, McKnight C, Boxer MB, Duveau DY, Jiang JK, Michael S, Mierzwa T, Huang W, Walsh MJ, Mott BT, Patel P, Leister W, Maloney DJ, Leclair CA, Rai G, Jadhav A, Peyser BD, Austin CP, Martin SE, Simeonov A, Ferrer M, Staudt LM, Thomas CJ. High-throughput combinatorial screening identifies drugs that cooperate with ibrutinib to kill activated B-cell-like diffuse large B-cell lymphoma cells. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA. 2014;111(6):2349–54.
32. Herman SE, Gordon AL, Hertlein E, Ramanunni A, Zhang X, Jaglowski S, Flynn J, Jones J, Blum KA, Buggy JJ, Hamdy A, Johnson AJ, Byrd JC. Bruton tyrosine kinase represents a promising therapeutic target for treatment of chronic lymphocytic leukemia and is effectively targeted by PCI-32765. Blood. 2011;117(23):6287–96.
33. Cinar M, Hamedani F, Mo Z, Cinar B, Amin HM, Alkan S. Bruton tyrosine kinase is commonly overexpressed in mantle cell lymphoma and its attenuation by Ibrutinib induces apoptosis. Leuk Res. 2013;37(10):1271–7.

34. Advani RH, Buggy JJ, Sharman JP, Smith SM, Boyd TE, Grant B, Kolibaba KS, Furman RR, Rodriguez S, Chang BY, Sukbuntherng J, Izumi R, Hamdy A, Hedrick E, Fowler NH. Bruton tyrosine kinase inhibitor ibrutinib (PCI-32765) has significant activity in patients with relapsed/refractory B-cell malignancies. J Clin Oncol. 2013;31(1):88–94.
35. Wang ML, Rule S, Martin P, Goy A, Auer R, Kahl BS, Jurczak W, Advani RH, Romaguera JE, Williams ME, Barrientos JC, Chmielowska E, Radford J, Stilgenbauer S, Dreyling M, Jedrzejczak WW, Johnson P, Spurgeon SE, Li L, Zhang L, Newberry K, Ou Z, Cheng N, Fang B, McGreivy J, Clow F, Buggy JJ, Chang BY, Beaupre DM, Kunkel LA, Blum KA. Targeting BTK with ibrutinib in relapsed or refractory mantle-cell lymphoma. N Engl J Med. 2013;369(6):507–16.
36. Byrd JC, Furman RR, Coutre SE, Flinn IW, Burger JA, Blum KA, Grant B, Sharman JP, Coleman M, Wierda WG, Jones JA, Zhao W, Heerema NA, Johnson AJ, Sukbuntherng J, Chang BY, Clow F, Hedrick E, Buggy JJ, James DF, O'Brien S. Targeting BTK with ibrutinib in relapsed chronic lymphocytic leukemia. N Engl J Med. 2013;369(1):32–42.
37. Aalipour A, Advani RH. Bruton tyrosine kinase inhibitors: a promising novel targeted treatment for B cell lymphomas. Br J Haematol. 2013;163(4):436–43.
38. Advani RH, Buggy JJ, Sharman JP, Smith SM, Boyd TE, Grant B, Kolibaba KS, Furman RR, Rodriguez S, Chang BY, Sukbuntherng J, Izumi R, Hamdy A, Hedrick E, Fowler NH. Bruton tyrosine kinase inhibitor ibrutinib (PCI-32765) has significant activity in patients with relapsed/refractory B-cell malignancies. J Clin Oncol. 2013;31(1):88–94.
39. Treon SP, Tripsas CK, Meid K, Warren D, Varma G, Green R, Argyropoulos KV, Yang G, Cao Y, Xu L, Patterson CJ, Rodig S, Zehnder JL, Aster JC, Harris NL, Kanan S, Ghobrial I, Castillo JJ, Laubach JP, Hunter ZR, Salman Z, Li J, Cheng M, Clow F, Graef T, Palomba ML, Advani RH. Ibrutinib in previously treated Waldenstrom's macroglobulinemia. N Engl J Med. 2015;372(15):1430–40.
40. Fernandez-Vega I, Quiros LM, Santos-Juanes J, Pane-Foix M, Marafioti T. Bruton's tyrosine kinase (Btk) is a useful marker for Hodgkin and B cell non-Hodgkin lymphoma. Virchows Arch. 2015;466(2):229–35.
41. Hamadani M, Balasubramanian S, Hari PN. Ibrutinib in refractory classic Hodgkin's lymphoma. N Engl J Med. 2015;373(14):1381–2.
42. Sachen KL, Strohman MJ, Singletary J, Alizadeh AA, Kattah NH, Lossos C, Mellins ED, Levy S, Levy R. Self-antigen recognition by follicular lymphoma B-cell receptors. Blood. 2012;120(20):4182–90.
43. Fowler HN, Advani HR, Sharman J, Smith MS, McGreivy J, Kunkel L, Troung V, Zhou C, Boyd TE. The Bruton's tyrosine kinase inhibitor ibrutinib (PCI-32765) is active and tolerated in relapsed follicular lymphoma. Blood. 2012;120:156.
44. Bartlett NL, Costello BA, LaPlant BR, Ansell SM, Kuruvilla JG, Reeder CB, Thye LS, Anderson DM, Krysiak K, Ramirez C, Qi J, Siegel BA, Griffith M, Griffith OL, Gomez F, Fehniger TA. Single-agent ibrutinib in relapsed or refractory follicular lymphoma: a phase 2 consortium trial. Blood. 2018;131(2):182–90.
45. Gopal AK, Schuster SJ, Fowler N, Trotman J, Hess G, Hou JZ, Yacoub A, Lill M, Martin P, Vitolo U, Jurczak W, Morton J, Osmanov D, Gartenberg GJ, Vermeulen J, Balasubramanian S, Wang SS, Deshpande S, Salles GA. Ibrutinib as treatment for Chemoimmunotherapy-resistant Patients with follicular Lymphoma: first results from the open-label, multicenter, phase 2 DAWN study. Blood. 2016;128:1217.
46. Ngo VN, Young RM, Schmitz R, Jhavar S, Xiao W, Lim KH, Kohlhammer H, Xu W, Yang Y, Zhao H, Shaffer AL, Romesser P, Wright G, Powell J, Rosenwald A, Muller-Hermelink HK, Ott G, Gascoyne RD, Connors JM, Rimsza LM, Campo E, Jaffe ES, Delabie J, Smeland EB, Fisher RI, Braziel RM, Tubbs RR, Cook JR, Weisenburger DD, Chan WC, Staudt LM. Oncogenically active MYD88 mutations in human lymphoma. Nature. 2011;470(7332):115–9.
47. Lenz G, Davis RE, Ngo VN, Lam L, George TC, Wright GW, Dave SS, Zhao H, Xu W, Rosenwald A, Ott G, Muller-Hermelink HK, Gascoyne RD, Connors JM, Rimsza LM, Campo

E, Jaffe ES, Delabie J, Smeland EB, Fisher RI, Chan WC, Staudt LM. Oncogenic CARD11 mutations in human diffuse large B cell lymphoma. Science. 2008;319(5870):1676–9.
48. Kraan W, Horlings HM, van Keimpema M, Schilder-Tol EJ, Oud ME, Scheepstra C, Kluin PM, Kersten MJ, Spaargaren M, Pals ST. High prevalence of oncogenic MYD88 and CD79B mutations in diffuse large B-cell lymphomas presenting at immune-privileged sites. Blood Cancer J. 2013;3:e139.
49. Wilson WH, Gerecitano JF, Goy A, de Vos S, Kenkre VP, Barr PM, Blum KA, Shustov AR, Advani RH, Lih J, Williams M, Schmitz R, Yang Y, Pittaluga S, Wright G, Kunkel LA, McGreivy J, Balasubramanian S, Cheng M, Moussa D, Buggy J, Staudt LM. The bruton's tyrosine kinase (BTK) inhibitor, ibrutinib (PCI-32765), has preferential activity in the ABC subtype of relapsed/refractory De Novo Diffuse Large B-Cell Lymphoma (DLBCL): interim results of a multicenter, open-label, phase 2 study. Blood. 2012;120:686.
50. Byrd JC, Brown JR, O'Brien S, Barrientos JC, Kay NE, Reddy NM, Coutre S, Tam CS, Mulligan SP, Jaeger U, Devereux S, Barr PM, Furman RR, Kipps TJ, Cymbalista F, Pocock C, Thornton P, Caligaris-Cappio F, Robak T, Delgado J, Schuster SJ, Montillo M, Schuh A, de Vos S, Gill D, Bloor A, Dearden C, Moreno C, Jones JJ, Chu AD, Fardis M, McGreivy J, Clow F, James DF, Hillmen P. Ibrutinib versus ofatumumab in previously treated chronic lymphoid leukemia. N Engl J Med. 2014;371(3):213–23.
51. Burger JA, Tedeschi A, Barr PM, Robak T, Owen C, Ghia P, Bairey O, Hillmen P, Bartlett NL, Li J, Simpson D, Grosicki S, Devereux S, McCarthy H, Coutre S, Quach H, Gaidano G, Maslyak Z, Stevens DA, Janssens A, Offner F, Mayer J, O'Dwyer M, Hellmann A, Schuh A, Siddiqi T, Polliack A, Tam CS, Suri D, Cheng M, Clow F, Styles L, James DF, Kipps TJ. Ibrutinib as initial therapy for patients with chronic lymphocytic leukemia. N Engl J Med. 2015;373(25):2425–37.
52. Witzig TE, Geyer SM, Ghobrial I, Inwards DJ, Fonseca R, Kurtin P, Ansell SM, Luyun R, Flynn PJ, Morton RF, Dakhil SR, Gross H, Kaufmann SH. Phase II trial of single-agent temsirolimus (CCI-779) for relapsed mantle cell lymphoma. J Clin Oncol. 2005;23(23):5347–56.
53. Ansell SM, Inwards DJ, Rowland KM Jr, Flynn PJ, Morton RF, Moore DF Jr, Kaufmann SH, Ghobrial I, Kurtin PJ, Maurer M, Allmer C, Witzig TE. Low-dose, single-agent temsirolimus for relapsed mantle cell lymphoma: a phase 2 trial in the North Central Cancer treatment group. Cancer. 2008;113(3):508–14.
54. Hess G, Herbrecht R, Romaguera J, Verhoef G, Crump M, Gisselbrecht C, Laurell A, Offner F, Strahs A, Berkenblit A, Hanushevsky O, Clancy J, Hewes B, Moore L, Coiffier B. Phase III study to evaluate temsirolimus compared with investigator's choice therapy for the treatment of relapsed or refractory mantle cell lymphoma. J Clin Oncol. 2009;27(23):3822–9.
55. Dreyling M, Jurczak W, Jerkeman M, Silva RS, Rusconi C, Trneny M, Offner F, Caballero D, Joao C, Witzens-Harig M, Hess G, Bence-Bruckler I, Cho SG, Bothos J, Goldberg JD, Enny C, Traina S, Balasubramanian S, Bandyopadhyay N, Sun S, Vermeulen J, Rizo A, Rule S. Ibrutinib versus temsirolimus in patients with relapsed or refractory mantle-cell lymphoma: an international, randomised, open-label, phase 3 study. Lancet. 2016;387(10020):770–8.
56. Chu Y, Lee S, Shah T, Yin CH, Barth M, Miles RR, Ayello J, Morris E, Harrison L, van de Ven C, Galardy P, Goldman SC, Lim MS, Hermiston M, McAllister-Lucas LM, Giulino-Roth L, Perkins SL, Cairo MS. Ibrutinib significantly inhibited Bruton's tyrosine kinase (BTK) phosphorylation, in-vitro proliferation and enhanced overall survival in a preclinical Burkitt lymphoma (BL) model Oncoimmunology, 2018. Published online: 11 Oct 2018.
57. Chen J, Kinoshita T, Sukbuntherng J, Chang BY, Elias L. Ibrutinib inhibits ERBB receptor tyrosine kinases and HER2-amplified breast Cancer Cell growth. Mol Cancer Ther. 2016;15(12):2835–44.
58. Barf T, Covey T, Izumi R, van de Kar B, Gulrajani M, van Lith B, van Hoek M, de Zwart E, Mittag D, Demont D, Verkaik S, Krantz F, Pearson PG, Ulrich R, Kaptein A. Acalabrutinib (ACP-196): a covalent Bruton tyrosine kinase inhibitor with a differentiated selectivity and in vivo potency profile. J Pharmacol Exp Ther. 2017;363(2):240–52.

59. Patel V, Balakrishnan K, Bibikova E, Ayres M, Keating MJ, Wierda WG, Gandhi V. Comparison of Acalabrutinib, a selective Bruton tyrosine kinase inhibitor, with Ibrutinib in chronic lymphocytic leukemia cells. Clin Cancer Res. 2017;23(14):3734–43.
60. Covey T, Barf T, Gulrajani M, Krantz F, Lith BV, Bibikova E, van de Kar B, Zwart ED, Hamdy A, Izumi R, Kaptein A. ACP-196: a novel covalent Bruton's tyrosine kinase (Btk) inhibitor with improved selectivity and in vivo target coverage in chronic lymphocytic leukemia (CLL) patients. Cancer Res. 2015;75(15 Supplement):2596.
61. Byrd JC, Harrington B, O'Brien S, Jones JA, Schuh A, Devereux S, Chaves J, Wierda WG, Awan FT, Brown JR, Hillmen P, Stephens DM, Ghia P, Barrientos JC, Pagel JM, Woyach J, Johnson D, Huang J, Wang X, Kaptein A, Lannutti BJ, Covey T, Fardis M, McGreivy J, Hamdy A, Rothbaum W, Izumi R, Diacovo TG, Johnson AJ, Furman RR. Acalabrutinib (ACP-196) in relapsed chronic lymphocytic leukemia. N Engl J Med. 2016;374(4):323–32.
62. Wang M, Rule S, Zinzani PL, Goy A, Casasnovas O, Smith SD, Damaj G, Doorduijn J, Lamy T, Morschhauser F, Panizo C, Shah B, Davies A, Eek R, Dupuis J, Jacobsen E, Kater AP, Le Gouill S, Oberic L, Robak T, Covey T, Dua R, Hamdy A, Huang X, Izumi R, Patel P, Rothbaum W, Slatter JG, Jurczak W. Acalabrutinib in relapsed or refractory mantle cell lymphoma (ACE-LY-004): a single-arm, multicentre, phase 2 trial. Lancet. 2018;391(10121):659–67.
63. Yasuhiro T, Yoshizawa T, Daub H, Weber C, Narita M, Kawabata K. ONO-WG-307, a novel, potent and selective inhibitor of Bruton's tyrosine kinase (Btk), results in sustained inhibition of the ERK, AKT and PKD signaling pathways. Cancer Res. 2012;72(suppl 8). Abstract 2021
64. Kozaki R, Hutchinson C, Sandrine J, Dyer MJS. Kinome reprogramming in DLBCL by the BTKspecific inhibitor ONO4059 highlights synergistic combinations for clinical application. Haematologica. 2014;99(S1):137–8.
65. Kozaki R, Yoshizawa T, Tohda S, Yasuhiro T, Hotta S, Ariza Y, Ueda Y, Narita M, Kawabata K. Development of a bruton's tyrosine kinase (btk) inhibitor, ONOWG307: efficacy in ABCDLBCL xenograft model potential treatment for Bcell malignancies. Blood. 2011;118(21):3731.
66. Walter HS, Rule SA, Dyer MJ, Karlin L, Jones C, Cazin B, Quittet P, Shah N, Hutchinson CV, Honda H, Duffy K, Birkett J, Jamieson V, Courtenay-Luck N, Yoshizawa T, Sharpe J, Ohno T, Abe S, Nishimura A, Cartron G, Morschhauser F, Fegan C, Salles G. A phase 1 clinical trial of the selective BTK inhibitor ONO/GS-4059 in relapsed and refractory mature B-cell malignancies. Blood. 2016;127(4):411–9.
67. Tam C, Grigg AP, Opat S, Ku M, Gilbertson M, Anderson MA, Seymour JF, Ritchie DS, Dicorleto C, Dimovski B, Hedrick E, Yang J, Wang L, Luo L, Xue L, Roberts AW. The BTK inhibitor, Bgb-3111, is safe, tolerable, and highly active in patients with relapsed/ refractory B-cell malignancies: initial report of a phase 1 first-in-human trial. Blood. 2015;126(23):832.
68. Li N, Sun Z, Liu Y, Guo M, Zhang Y, Zhou D, Zhang B, Su D, Zhang S, Han J, Gao Y, Guo Y, Wang Z, Wei M, Luo L, Wang L. BGB-3111 is a novel and highly selective Bruton's tyrosine kinase (BTK) inhibitor. Cancer Res. 2015;75(15):2597.
69. Zhang SQ, Smith SM, Zhang SY, Lynn Wang Y. Mechanisms of ibrutinib resistance in chronic lymphocytic leukaemia and non-Hodgkin lymphoma. Br J Haematol. 2015;170(4):445–56.
70. Maddocks KJ, Ruppert AS, Lozanski G, Heerema NA, Zhao W, Abruzzo L, Lozanski A, Davis M, Gordon A, Smith LL, Mantel R, Jones JA, Flynn JM, Jaglowski SM, Andritsos LA, Awan F, Blum KA, Grever MR, Johnson AJ, Byrd JC, Woyach JA. Etiology of Ibrutinib therapy discontinuation and outcomes in patients with chronic lymphocytic leukemia. JAMA Oncol. 2015;1(1):80–7.
71. Komarova NL, Burger JA, Wodarz D. Evolution of ibrutinib resistance in chronic lymphocytic leukemia (CLL). Proc Natl Acad Sci USA. 2014;111(38):13906–11.
72. Woyach JA, Furman RR, Liu TM, Ozer HG, Zapatka M, Ruppert AS, Xue L, Li DH, Steggerda SM, Versele M, Dave SS, Zhang J, Yilmaz AS, Jaglowski SM, Blum KA, Lozanski A, Lozanski G, James DF, Barrientos JC, Lichter P, Stilgenbauer S, Buggy JJ, Chang BY, Johnson AJ, Byrd JC. Resistance mechanisms for the Bruton's tyrosine kinase inhibitor ibrutinib. N Engl J Med. 2014;370(24):2286–94.

73. Albitar A, Ma W, De Dios I, Estrella J, Farooqui M, Wiestner A, Albitar M. High sensitivity testing shows multiclonal mutations in patients with CLL treated with BTK inhibitor and lack of mutations in Ibrutinib-naive patients. Blood. 2015;126:716.
74. Cheng S, Guo A, Lu P, Ma J, Coleman M, Wang YL. Functional characterization of BTK(C481S) mutation that confers ibrutinib resistance: exploration of alternative kinase inhibitors. Leukemia. 2015;29(4):895–900.
75. Furman RR, Cheng S, Lu P, Setty M, Perez AR, Guo A, Racchumi J, Xu G, Wu H, Ma J, Steggerda SM, Coleman M, Leslie C, Wang YL. Ibrutinib resistance in chronic lymphocytic leukemia. N Engl J Med. 2014;370(24):2352–4.
76. Sharma S, Galanina N, Guo A, Lee J, Kadri S, Van Slambrouck C, Long B, Wang W, Ming M, Furtado LV, Segal JP, Stock W, Venkataraman G, Tang WJ, Lu P, Wang YL. Identification of a structurally novel BTK mutation that drives ibrutinib resistance in CLL. Oncotarget. 2016;7(42):68833–41.
77. Fama R, Bomben R, Rasi S, Dal Bo M, Ciardullo C, Monti S, Rossi F, D'Agaro T, Zucchetto A, Gattei V, Gaidano G, Rossi D. Ibrutinib-naive chronic lymphocytic leukemia lacks Bruton tyrosine kinase mutations associated with treatment resistance. Blood. 2014;124(25):3831–3.
78. Lenz G, Balasubramanian S, Goldberg J, Rizo A, Schaffer M, Phelps C, Rule S, Dreyling MH. Sequence variants in patients with primary and acquired resistance to ibrutinib in the phase 3 MCL3001 (RAY) trial. J Clin Oncol. 2016;34(15_suppl):7570.
79. Alvarado Y, Giles FJ, Swords RT. The PIM kinases in hematological cancers. Expert Rev Hematol. 2012;5(1):81–96.
80. Kuo HP, Ezell SA, Hsieh S, Schweighofer KJ, Cheung LW, Wu S, Apatira M, Sirisawad M, Eckert K, Liang Y, Hsu J, Chen CT, Beaupre D, Chang BY. The role of PIM1 in the ibrutinib-resistant ABC subtype of diffuse large B-cell lymphoma. Am J Cancer Res. 2016;6(11):2489–501.
81. Treon SP, Xu L, Yang G, Zhou Y, Liu X, Cao Y, Sheehy P, Manning RJ, Patterson CJ, Tripsas C, Arcaini L, Pinkus GS, Rodig SJ, Sohani AR, Harris NL, Laramie JM, Skifter DA, Lincoln SE, Hunter ZR. MYD88 L265P somatic mutation in Waldenstrom's macroglobulinemia. N Engl J Med. 2012;367(9):826–33.
82. Hunter ZR, Xu L, Yang G, Zhou Y, Liu X, Cao Y, Manning RJ, Tripsas C, Patterson CJ, Sheehy P, Treon SP. The genomic landscape of Waldenstrom macroglobulinemia is characterized by highly recurring MYD88 and WHIM-like CXCR4 mutations, and small somatic deletions associated with B-cell lymphomagenesis. Blood. 2014;123(11):1637–46.
83. Xu L, Tsakmaklis N, Yang G, Chen JG, Liu X, Demos M, Kofides A, Patterson CJ, Meid K, Gustine J, Dubeau T, Palomba ML, Advani R, Castillo JJ, Furman RR, Hunter ZR, Treon SP. Acquired mutations associated with ibrutinib resistance in Waldenstrom macroglobulinemia. Blood. 2017;129(18):2519–25.
84. Treon SP, Xu L, Hunter Z. MYD88 mutations and response to Ibrutinib in Waldenstrom's Macroglobulinemia. N Engl J Med. 2015;373(6):584–6.
85. Cao Y, Hunter ZR, Liu X, Xu L, Yang G, Chen J, Patterson CJ, Tsakmaklis N, Kanan S, Rodig S, Castillo JJ, Treon SP. The WHIM-like CXCR4(S338X) somatic mutation activates AKT and ERK, and promotes resistance to ibrutinib and other agents used in the treatment of Waldenstrom's Macroglobulinemia. Leukemia. 2015;29(1):169–76.
86. Dimopoulos MA, Trotman J, Tedeschi A, Matous JV, Macdonald D, Tam C, Tournilhac O, Ma S, Oriol A, Heffner LT, Shustik C, Garcia-Sanz R, Cornell RF, de Larrea CF, Castillo JJ, Granell M, Kyrtsonis MC, Leblond V, Symeonidis A, Kastritis E, Singh P, Li J, Graef T, Bilotti E, Treon S, Buske C. Ibrutinib for patients with rituximab-refractory Waldenstrom's macroglobulinaemia (iNNOVATE): an open-label substudy of an international, multicentre, phase 3 trial. Lancet Oncol. 2017;18(2):241–50.
87. Wu C, de Miranda NF, Chen L, Wasik AM, Mansouri L, Jurczak W, Galazka K, Dlugosz-Danecka M, Machaczka M, Zhang H, Peng R, Morin RD, Rosenquist R, Sander B, Pan-Hammarstrom Q. Genetic heterogeneity in primary and relapsed mantle cell lymphomas: impact of recurrent CARD11 mutations. Oncotarget. 2016;7(25):38180–90.

88. Zhang L, Nomie K, Zhang S, Liu Y, Guo H, Huang S, Wang J, Lopez E, Zhang H, Lorence EA, Merolle M, Balaji S, Ahmed M, Jiang C, Wang L, Wang M. Molecular pathways associated with Ibrutinib resistance in mantle Cell Lymphoma. Blood. 2017;130:2738.
89. Burger JA, Landau DA, Taylor-Weiner A, Bozic I, Zhang H, Sarosiek K, Wang L, Stewart C, Fan J, Hoellenriegel J, Sivina M, Dubuc AM, Fraser C, Han Y, Li S, Livak KJ, Zou L, Wan Y, Konoplev S, Sougnez C, Brown JR, Abruzzo LV, Carter SL, Keating MJ, Davids MS, Wierda WG, Cibulskis K, Zenz T, Werner L, Dal Cin P, Kharchencko P, Neuberg D, Kantarjian H, Lander E, Gabriel S, O'Brien S, Letai A, Weitz DA, Nowak MA, Getz G, Wu CJ. Clonal evolution in patients with chronic lymphocytic leukaemia developing resistance to BTK inhibition. Nat Commun. 2016;7:11589.
90. Kadri S, Lee J, Fitzpatrick C, Galanina N, Sukhanova M, Venkataraman G, Sharma S, Long B, Petras K, Theissen M, Ming M, Kobzev Y, Kang W, Guo A, Wang W, Niu N, Weiner H, Thirman M, Stock W, Smith SM, Nabhan C, Segal JP, Lu P, Wang YL. Clonal evolution underlying leukemia progression and Richter transformation in patients with ibrutinib-relapsed CLL. Blood Adv. 2017;1(12):715–27.
91. Thompson PA, O'Brien SM, Wierda WG, Ferrajoli A, Stingo F, Smith SC, Burger JA, Estrov Z, Jain N, Kantarjian HM, Keating MJ. Complex karyotype is a stronger predictor than del(17p) for an inferior outcome in relapsed or refractory chronic lymphocytic leukemia patients treated with ibrutinib-based regimens. Cancer. 2015;121(20):3612–21.
92. Moyo TK, Wilson CS, Moore DJ, Eischen CM. Myc enhances B-cell receptor signaling in precancerous B cells and confers resistance to Btk inhibition. Oncogene. 2017;36(32):4653–61.
93. Rubio-Moscardo F, Blesa D, Mestre C, Siebert R, Balasas T, Benito A, Rosenwald A, Climent J, Martinez JI, Schilhabel M, Karran EL, Gesk S, Esteller M. Characterization of 8p21.3 chromosomal deletions in B-cell lymphoma: TRAIL-R1 and TRAIL-R2 as candidate dosage-dependent tumor suppressor genes. Blood. 2005;106(9):3214–22.
94. Rinaldi A, Mian M, Kwee I, Rossi D, Deambrogi C, Mensah AA, Forconi F, Spina V, Cencini E, Drandi D, Ladetto M, Santachiara R, Marasca R, Gattei V, Cavalli F, Zucca E, Gaidano G, Bertoni F. Genome-wide DNA profiling better defines the prognosis of chronic lymphocytic leukaemia. Br J Haematol. 2011;154(5):590–9.
95. Chapiro E, Leporrier N, Radford-Weiss I, Bastard C, Mossafa H, Leroux D, Tigaud I, De Braekeleer M, Terre C, Brizard F, Callet-Bauchu E, Struski S, Veronese L, Fert-Ferrer S, Taviaux S, Lesty C, Davi F, Merle-Beral H, Bernard OA, Sutton L, Raynaud SD, Nguyen-Khac F. Gain of the short arm of chromosome 2 (2p) is a frequent recurring chromosome aberration in untreated chronic lymphocytic leukemia (CLL) at advanced stages. Leuk Res. 2010;34(1):63–8.
96. Turner JG, Dawson J, Sullivan DM. Nuclear export of proteins and drug resistance in cancer. Biochem Pharmacol. 2012;83(8):1021–32.
97. Blum KA. B-cell receptor pathway modulators in NHL. Hematology Am Soc Hematol Educ Program. 2015;2015:82–91.
98. Hayden MS, Ghosh S. Shared principles in NF-kappaB signaling. Cell. 2008;132(3):344–62.
99. Cildir G, Low KC, Tergaonkar V. Noncanonical NF-kappaB signaling in health and disease. Trends Mol Med. 2016;22(5):414–29.
100. Rahal R, Frick M, Romero R, Korn JM, Kridel R, Chan FC, Meissner B, Bhang HE, Ruddy D, Kauffmann A, Farsidjani A, Derti A, Rakiec D, Naylor T, Pfister E, Kovats S, Kim S, Dietze K, Dorken B, Steidl C, Tzankov A, Hummel M, Monahan J, Morrissey MP, Fritsch C, Sellers WR, Cooke VG, Gascoyne RD, Lenz G, Stegmeier F. Pharmacological and genomic profiling identifies NF-kappaB-targeted treatment strategies for mantle cell lymphoma. Nat Med. 2014;20(1):87–92.
101. Werner M, Hobeika E, Jumaa H. Role of PI3K in the generation and survival of B cells. Immunol Rev. 2010;237(1):55–71.
102. Chiron D, Di Liberto M, Martin P, Huang X, Sharman J, Blecua P, Mathew S, Vijay P, Eng K, Ali S, Johnson A, Chang B, Ely S, Elemento O, Mason CE, Leonard JP, Chen-Kiang S. Cell-cycle reprogramming for PI3K inhibition overrides a relapse-specific C481S BTK

mutation revealed by longitudinal functional genomics in mantle cell lymphoma. Cancer Discov. 2014;4(9):1022–35.
103. Ma J, Lu P, Guo A, Cheng S, Zong H, Martin P, Coleman M, Wang YL. Characterization of ibrutinib-sensitive and -resistant mantle lymphoma cells. Br J Haematol. 2014;166(6):849–61.
104. Zhang L, Nomie K, Zhang S, Liu Y, Guo H, Huang S, Jeffrey Wang J, Lopez E, Zhang H, Lorence EA, Merolle M, Balaji S, Ahmed M, Jiang C, Wang L, Wang M. Molecular pathways associated with Ibrutinib resistance in mantle Cell Lymphoma. Blood. 2017;130:2738.
105. Jain N, Sehgal L, Shuttleworth SJ, Samaniego F. Targeting PI3 pathway in ibrutinib resistant diffuse large B cell lymphoma. Cancer Res. 2017;77(13 Supplement)
106. Paulus A, Akhtar S, Yousaf H, Manna A, Paulus SM, Bashir Y, Caulfield TR, Kuranz-Blake M, Chitta K, Wang X, Asmann Y, Hudec R, Springer W, Ailawadhi S, Chanan-Khan A. Waldenstrom macroglobulinemia cells devoid of BTK(C481S) or CXCR4(WHIM-like) mutations acquire resistance to ibrutinib through upregulation of Bcl-2 and AKT resulting in vulnerability towards venetoclax or MK2206 treatment. Blood Cancer J. 2017;7(5):e565.
107. Tsujimoto Y, Finger LR, Yunis J, Nowell PC, Croce CM. Cloning of the chromosome breakpoint of neoplastic B cells with the t(14;18) chromosome translocation. Science. 1984;226(4678):1097–9.
108. Ashkenazi A, Fairbrother WJ, Leverson JD, Souers AJ. From basic apoptosis discoveries to advanced selective BCL-2 family inhibitors. Nat Rev Drug Discov. 2017;16(4):273–84.
109. Deng J, Isik E, Fernandes SM, Brown JR, Letai A, Davids MS. Bruton's tyrosine kinase inhibition increases BCL-2 dependence and enhances sensitivity to venetoclax in chronic lymphocytic leukemia. Leukemia. 2017;31(10):2075–84.
110. Brocco F, Burg HT, Fernandes S, Tam CS, Forconi F, Guerra RM, Bird G, Walensky LD, Brown JR, Kater AP, Eldering E. Dissecting the role of individual Bcl-2 members in response and resistance to Ibrutinib or Venetoclax in CLL. Blood. 2017;130:262.
111. Kuo H-P, Crowley R, Xue L, Schweighofer KJ, Cheung LW, Hsieh S, Eckert K, Versele M, Chang BY. Combination of Ibrutinib and BCL-2 or SYK inhibitors in Ibrutinib resistant ABC-subtype of diffuse large B-Cell lymphoma. Blood. 2014;124:505.
112. Stacey DW. Cyclin D1 serves as a cell cycle regulatory switch in actively proliferating cells. Curr Opin Cell Biol. 2003;15(2):158–63.
113. Bea S, Valdes-Mas R, Navarro A, Salaverria I, Martin-Garcia D, Jares P, Gine E, Pinyol M, Royo C, Nadeu F, Conde L, Juan M, Clot G, Vizan P, Di Croce L, Puente DA, Lopez-Guerra M, Moros A, Roue G, Aymerich M, Villamor N, Colomo L, Martinez A, Valera A, Martin-Subero JI, Amador V, Hernandez L, Rozman M, Enjuanes A, Forcada P, Muntanola A, Hartmann EM, Calasanz MJ, Rosenwald A, Ott G, Hernandez-Rivas JM, Klapper W, Siebert R, Wiestner A, Wilson WH, Colomer D, Lopez-Guillermo A, Lopez-Otin C, Puente XS, Campo E. Landscape of somatic mutations and clonal evolution in mantle cell lymphoma. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA. 2013;110(45):18250–5.
114. Mohanty A, Sandoval N, Das M, Pillai R, Chen L, Chen RW, Amin HM, Wang M, Marcucci G, Weisenburger DD, Rosen ST, Pham LV, Ngo VN. CCND1 mutations increase protein stability and promote ibrutinib resistance in mantle cell lymphoma. Oncotarget. 2016;7(45):73558–72.
115. Son B, Lee S, Youn H, Kim E, Kim W, Youn B. The role of tumor microenvironment in therapeutic resistance. Oncotarget. 2017;8(3):3933–45.
116. Saba NS, Liu D, Herman SE, Underbayev C, Tian X, Behrend D, Weniger MA, Skarzynski M, Gyamfi J, Fontan L, Melnick A, Grant C, Roschewski M, Navarro A, Bea S, Pittaluga S, Dunleavy K, Wilson WH, Wiestner A. Pathogenic role of B-cell receptor signaling and canonical NF-kappaB activation in mantle cell lymphoma. Blood. 2016;128(1):82–92.
117. Zhao X, Lwin T, Silva A, Shah B, Tao J, Fang B, Zhang L, Fu K, Bi C, Li J, Jiang H, Meads MB, Jacobson T, Silva M, Distler A, Darville L, Han Y, Rebatchouk D, Di Liberto M, Moscinski LC, Koomen JM, Dalton WS, Shain KH, Wang M, Sotomayor E. Unification of de novo and acquired ibrutinib resistance in mantle cell lymphoma. Nat Commun. 2017;8:14920.
118. Byrd JC, Smith S, Wagner-Johnston N, Sharman J, Chen AI, Advani R, Augustson B, Marlton P, Renee Commerford S, Okrah K, Liu L, Murray E, Penuel E, Ward AF, Flinn IW. First-in-

human phase 1 study of the BTK inhibitor GDC-0853 in relapsed or refractory B-cell NHL and CLL. Oncotarget. 2018;9(16):13023–35.
119. Fabian CA, Reiff SD, Guinn D, Neuman L, Fox JA, Wilson W, Byrd JC, Woyach JA, Johnson AJ. SNS-062 demonstrates efficacy in chronic lymphocytic leukemia in vitro and inhibits C481S mutated Bruton tyrosine kinase. Cancer Res. 2017;77(13 supplement):1207.
120. Johnson AR, Kohli PB, Katewa A, Gogol E, Belmont LD, Choy R, Penuel E, Burton L, Eigenbrot C, Yu C, Ortwine DF, Bowman K, Franke Y, Tam C, Estevez A, Mortara K, Wu J, Li H, Lin M, Bergeron P, Crawford JJ, Young WB. Battling Btk mutants with noncovalent inhibitors that overcome Cys481 and Thr474 mutations. ACS Chem Biol. 2016;11(10):2897–907.
121. Reiff SD, Guinn D, Mantel R, Smith L, Cheney C, Johnson AJ. Evaluation of the novel Bruton's tyrosine kinase (BTK) inhibitor GDC-0853 in chronic lymphocytic leukemia (CLL) with wild type or C481S mutated BTK. J Clin Oncol. 2016;34(15 supplement):7530.
122. Paul J, Soujon M, Wengner AM, Zitzmann-Kolbe S, Sturz A, Haike K, Keng Magdalene KH, Tan SH, Lange M, Tan SY, Mumberg D, Lim ST, Ziegelbauer K, Liu N. Simultaneous inhibition of PI3Kdelta and PI3Kalpha induces ABC-DLBCL regression by blocking BCR-dependent and -independent activation of NF-kappaB and AKT. Cancer Cell. 2017;31(1):64–78.
123. Scuoppo C, Jiguang W, Persaud M, Mittan S, Pasqualucci L, Rabadan R, Grandori C, Dalla-Favera R. Repurposing Dasatinib for Ibrutinib-resistant diffuse large B-cell lymphoma. Blood. 2017;130:3843.
124. Jones R, Axelrod MJ, Tumas D, Quéva C, Julie Di Paolo J. Combination effects of B cell receptor pathway inhibitors (Entospletinib, ONO/GS-4059, and Idelalisib) and a BCL-2 inhibitor in primary CLL cells. Blood. 2015;126(23):1749.
125. Morschhauser F, Danilov AV, Hodson DJ, Salles GA, Starodub A, Mitra S, Yang Y, Walter H, Fegan C. Preliminary results of A phase 1B study of Tirabrutinib (GS-4059/ONO-4059) in combination with entospletinib in patients with B-cell malignancies. Hematol Oncol. 2017;35(S2)
126. Niemann CU, Mora-Jensen HI, Dadashian EL, Krantz F, Covey T, Chen SS, Chiorazzi N, Izumi R, Ulrich R, Lannutti BJ, Wiestner A, Herman SEM. Combined BTK and PI3Kdelta inhibition with Acalabrutinib and ACP-319 improves survival and tumor control in CLL mouse model. Clin Cancer Res. 2017;23(19):5814–23.
127. Pike KG, Malagu K, Hummersone MG, Menear KA, Duggan HM, Gomez S, Martin NM, Ruston L, Pass SL, Pass M. Optimization of potent and selective dual mTORC1 and mTORC2 inhibitors: the discovery of AZD8055 and AZD2014. Bioorg Med Chem Lett. 2013;23(5):1212–6.
128. Ezell SA, Mayo M, Bihani T, Tepsuporn S, Wang S, Passino M, Grosskurth SE, Collins M, Parmentier J, Reimer C, Byth KF. Synergistic induction of apoptosis by combination of BTK and dual mTORC1/2 inhibitors in diffuse large B cell lymphoma. Oncotarget. 2014;5(13):4990–5001.
129. Yahiaoui A, Meadows SA, Sorensen RA, Cui ZH, Keegan KS, Brockett R, Chen G, Queva C, Li L, Tannheimer SL. PI3Kdelta inhibitor idelalisib in combination with BTK inhibitor ONO/GS-4059 in diffuse large B cell lymphoma with acquired resistance to PI3Kdelta and BTK inhibitors. PLoS One. 2017;12(2):e0171221.
130. Platanias LC. Map kinase signaling pathways and hematologic malignancies. Blood. 2003;101(12):4667–79.
131. Zhao Y, Adjei AA. The clinical development of MEK inhibitors. Nat Rev Clin Oncol. 2014;11(7):385–400.
132. Chen JG, Liu X, Munshi M, Xu L, Tsakmaklis N, Demos MG, Kofides A, Guerrera ML, Chan GG, Patterson CJ, Meid K, Gustine J, Dubeau T, Severns P, Castillo JJ, Hunter ZR, Wang J, Buhrlage SJ, Gray NS, Treon SP, Yang G. BTK(Cys481Ser) drives ibrutinib resistance via ERK1/2 and protects BTK(wild-type) MYD88-mutated cells by a paracrine mechanism. Blood. 2018;131(18):2047–59.
133. Ding N, Li X, Shi Y, Ping L, Wu L, Fu K, Feng L, Zheng X, Song Y, Pan Z, Zhu J. Irreversible dual inhibitory mode: the novel Btk inhibitor PLS-123 demonstrates promising anti-tumor activity in human B-cell lymphoma. Oncotarget. 2015;6(17):15122–36.

134. Wu H, Hu C, Wang A, Weisberg EL, Chen Y, Yun CH, Wang W, Liu Y, Liu X, Tian B, Wang J, Zhao Z, Liang Y, Li B, Wang L, Wang B, Chen C, Buhrlage SJ, Qi Z, Zou F, Nonami A, Li Y, Fernandes SM, Adamia S, Stone RM, Galinsky IA, Wang X, Yang G, Griffin JD, Brown JR, Eck MJ, Liu J, Gray NS, Liu Q. Discovery of a BTK/MNK dual inhibitor for lymphoma and leukemia. Leukemia. 2016;30(1):173–81.
135. Alfaro J, Perez de Arce F, Belmar S, Fuentealba G, Avila P, Ureta G, Flores C, Acuna C, Delgado L, Gaete D, Pujala B, Barde A, Nayak AK, Upendra TVR, Patel D, Chauhan S, Sharma VK, Kanno S, Almirez RG, Hung DT, Chakravarty S, Rai R, Bernales S, Quinn KP, Pham SM, McCullagh E. Dual inhibition of Bruton's Tyrosine Kinase and Phosphoinositide-3-Kinase p110delta as a therapeutic approach to treat non-Hodgkin's B cell malignancies. J Pharmacol Exp Ther. 2017;361(2):312–21.
136. Ge Y, Wang C, Song S, Huang J, Liu Z, Li Y, Meng Q, Zhang J, Yao J, Liu K, Ma X, Sun X. Identification of highly potent BTK and JAK3 dual inhibitors with improved activity for the treatment of B-cell lymphoma. Eur J Med Chem. 2018;143:1847–57.
137. Davids MS. Targeting BCL-2 in B-cell lymphomas. Blood. 2017;130(9):1081–8.
138. Zhao X, Bodo J, Sun D, Durkin L, Lin J, Smith MR, Hsi ED. Combination of ibrutinib with ABT-199: synergistic effects on proliferation inhibition and apoptosis in mantle cell lymphoma cells through perturbation of BTK, AKT and BCL2 pathways. Br J Haematol. 2015;168(5):765–8.
139. Tam CS, Anderson MA, Pott C, Agarwal R, Handunnetti S, Hicks RJ, Burbury K, Turner G, Di Iulio J, Bressel M, Westerman D, Lade S, Dreyling M, Dawson SJ, Dawson MA, Seymour JF, Roberts AW. Ibrutinib plus Venetoclax for the treatment of mantle-cell lymphoma. N Engl J Med. 2018;378(13):1211–23.
140. Kuo HP, Ezell SA, Schweighofer KJ, Cheung LWK, Hsieh S, Apatira M, Sirisawad M, Eckert K, Hsu SJ, Chen CT, Beaupre DM, Versele M, Chang BY. Combination of Ibrutinib and ABT-199 in diffuse large B-cell lymphoma and follicular lymphoma. Mol Cancer Ther. 2017;16(7):1246–56.
141. Burger JA, Keating MJ, Wierda WG, Hartmann E, Hoellenriegel J, Rosin NY, de Weerdt I, Jeyakumar G, Ferrajoli A, Cardenas-Turanzas M, Lerner S, Jorgensen JL, Nogueras-Gonzalez GM, Zacharian G, Huang X, Kantarjian H, Garg N, Rosenwald A, O'Brien S. Safety and activity of ibrutinib plus rituximab for patients with high-risk chronic lymphocytic leukaemia: a single-arm, phase 2 study. Lancet Oncol. 2014;15(10):1090–9.
142. Wang ML, Lee H, Chuang H, Wagner-Bartak N, Hagemeister F, Westin J, Fayad L, Samaniego F, Turturro F, Oki Y, Chen W, Badillo M, Nomie K, DeLa Rosa M, Zhao D, Lam L, Addison A, Zhang H, Young KH, Li S, Santos D, Medeiros LJ, Champlin R, Romaguera J, Zhang L. Ibrutinib in combination with rituximab in relapsed or refractory mantle cell lymphoma: a single-Centre, open-label, phase 2 trial. Lancet Oncol. 2016;17(1):48–56.
143. Fowler N, Nastoupil L, de Vos S, Knapp M, Flinn IW, Chen R, Advani RH, Bhatia S, Martin P, Mena R, Suzuki S, Beaupre DM, Neuenburg JK, Palomba ML. Ibrutinib plus rituximab in treatment-naive Patients with follicular Lymphoma: results from a multicenter, phase 2 study. Blood. 2015;126:470.
144. Fowler NH, Coleman M, Stevens DA, Smith SM, Venugopal P, Martin P, Phillips TJ, Agajanian R, Stephens DM, Izumi R, Cheung J, Slatter JG, Yin M, Hiremath M, Hunder NNH, Christian B, Acalabrutinib alone or in combination with rituximab (R) in follicular lymphoma (FL). J Clin Oncol, 2018. 36(suppl; abstr 7549).
145. Younes A, Thieblemont C, Morschhauser F, Flinn I, Friedberg JW, Amorim S, Hivert B, Westin J, Vermeulen J, Bandyopadhyay N, de Vries R, Balasubramanian S, Hellemans P, Smit JW, Fourneau N, Oki Y. Combination of ibrutinib with rituximab, cyclophosphamide, doxorubicin, vincristine, and prednisone (R-CHOP) for treatment-naive patients with CD20-positive B-cell non-Hodgkin lymphoma: a non-randomised, phase 1b study. Lancet Oncol. 2014;15(9):1019–26.
146. Maddocks K, Christian B, Jaglowski S, Flynn J, Jones JA, Porcu P, Wei L, Jenkins C, Lozanski G, Byrd JC, Blum KA. A phase 1/1b study of rituximab, bendamustine, and ibrutinib in patients with untreated and relapsed/refractory non-Hodgkin lymphoma. Blood. 2015;125(2):242–8.

147. Chanan-Khan A, Cramer P, Demirkan F, Fraser G, Silva RS, Grosicki S, Pristupa A, Janssens A, Mayer J, Bartlett NL, Dilhuydy MS, Pylypenko H, Loscertales J, Avigdor A, Rule S, Villa D, Samoilova O, Panagiotidis P, Goy A, Mato A, Pavlovsky MA, Karlsson C, Mahler M, Salman M, Sun S, Phelps C, Balasubramanian S, Howes A, Hallek M. Ibrutinib combined with bendamustine and rituximab compared with placebo, bendamustine, and rituximab for previously treated chronic lymphocytic leukaemia or small lymphocytic lymphoma (HELIOS): a randomised, double-blind, phase 3 study. Lancet Oncol. 2016;17(2):200–11.
148. Wilson WH, Young RM, Schmitz R, Yang Y, Pittaluga S, Wright G, Lih CJ, Williams PM, Shaffer AL, Gerecitano J, de Vos S, Goy A, Kenkre VP, Barr PM, Blum KA, Shustov A, Advani R, Fowler NH, Vose JM, Elstrom RL, Habermann TM, Barrientos JC, McGreivy J, Fardis M, Chang BY, Clow F, Munneke B, Moussa D, Beaupre DM, Staudt LM. Targeting B cell receptor signaling with ibrutinib in diffuse large B cell lymphoma. Nat Med. 2015;21(8):922–6.
149. Yasuhiro T, Sawada W, Klein C, Kozaki R, Hotta S, Yoshizawa T. Anti-tumor efficacy study of the Bruton's tyrosine kinase (BTK) inhibitor, ONO/GS-4059, in combination with the glycoengineered type II anti-CD20 monoclonal antibody obinutuzumab (GA101) demonstrates superior in vivo efficacy compared to ONO/GS-4059 in combination with rituximab. Leuk Lymphoma. 2017;58(3):699–707.
150. Porter DL, Levine BL, Kalos M, Bagg A, June CH. Chimeric antigen receptor-modified T cells in chronic lymphoid leukemia. N Engl J Med. 2011;365(8):725–33.
151. Neelapu SS, Locke FL, Bartlett NL, Lekakis LJ, Miklos DB, Jacobson CA, Braunschweig I, Oluwole OO, Siddiqi T, Lin Y, Timmerman JM, Stiff PJ, Friedberg JW, Flinn IW, Goy A, Hill BT, Smith MR, Deol A, Farooq U, McSweeney P, Munoz J, Avivi I, Castro JE, Westin JR, Chavez JC, Ghobadi A, Komanduri KV, Levy R, Jacobsen ED, Witzig TE, Reagan P, Bot A, Rossi J, Navale L, Jiang Y, Aycock J, Elias M, Chang D, Wiezorek J, Go WY. Axicabtagene ciloleucel CAR T-cell therapy in refractory large B-cell lymphoma. N Engl J Med. 2017;377(26):2531–44.
152. Ruella M, Kenderian SS, Shestova O, Fraietta JA, Qayyum S, Zhang Q, Maus MV, Liu X, Nunez-Cruz S, Klichinsky M, Kawalekar OU, Milone M, Lacey SF, Mato A, Schuster SJ, Kalos M, June CH, Gill S, Wasik MA. The addition of the BTK inhibitor Ibrutinib to anti-CD19 chimeric antigen receptor T cells (CART19) improves responses against mantle cell lymphoma. Clin Cancer Res. 2016;22(11):2684–96.
153. Turtle CJ, Hay KA, Hanafi LA, Li D, Cherian S, Chen X, Wood B, Lozanski A, Byrd JC, Heimfeld S, Riddell SR, Maloney DG. Durable molecular remissions in chronic lymphocytic Leukemia treated with CD19-specific chimeric antigen receptor-modified T cells after failure of Ibrutinib. J Clin Oncol. 2017;35(26):3010–20.
154. Dubovsky JA, Beckwith KA, Natarajan G, Woyach JA, Jaglowski S, Zhong Y, Hessler JD, Liu T-M, Chang BY, Larkin KM, Stefanovski MR, Chappell DL, Frissora FW, Smith LL, Smucker KA, Flynn JM, Jones JA, Andritsos LA, Maddocks K, Lehman AM, Furman R, Sharman J, Mishra A, Caligiuri MA, Satoskar AR, Buggy JJ, Muthusamy N, Johnson AJ, Byrd JC. Ibrutinib is an irreversible molecular inhibitor of ITK driving a Th1-selective pressure in T lymphocytes. Blood. 2013;122(15):2539–49.
155. Robinson HR, Qi J, Cook EM, Nichols C, Dadashian EL, Underbayev C, Herman SEM, Saba NS, Keyvanfar K, Sun C, Ahn IE, Baskar S, Rader C, Wiestner A. A CD19/CD3 bispecific antibody for effective immunotherapy of chronic lymphocytic leukemia in the ibrutinib era. Blood. 2018;132:521–32.
156. Sahakian E, Rock-Klotz J, Shah BD, Powers J, Cultrera JL, Deng S, Woods DM, Nguyen M, Cheng F, Wang H, Perez-Villarroel P, Lienlaf M, Knox T, Chen-Kiang S, Villagra A, Tao J, Pinilla-Ibarz J, Jones SS, Sotomayor EM. Combination of ACY1215, a selective histone Deacetylase 6 (HDAC6) inhibitor with the Bruton tyrosine kinase (BTK) inhibitor, Ibrutinib, represents a novel therapeutic strategy in mantle cell lymphoma (MCL). Blood. 2012;120:1660.
157. Mondello P, Brea EJ, De Stanchina E, Toska E, Chang AY, Fennell M, Seshan V, Garippa R, Scheinberg DA, Baselga J, Wendel HG, Younes A. Panobinostat acts synergistically with ibrutinib in diffuse large B cell lymphoma cells with MyD88 L265 mutations. JCI Insight. 2017;2(6):e90196.

158. Restelli V, Lupi M, Vagni M, Chila R, Bertoni F, Damia G, Carrassa L. Combining Ibrutinib with Chk1 inhibitors synergistically targets mantle Cell Lymphoma Cell lines. Target Oncol. 2018;13(2):235–45.
159. Bedford L, Lowe J, Dick LR, Mayer RJ, Brownell JE. Ubiquitin-like protein conjugation and the ubiquitin-proteasome system as drug targets. Nat Rev Drug Discov. 2011;10(1):29–46.
160. Dasmahapatra G, Patel H, Dent P, Fisher RI, Friedberg J, Grant S. The Bruton tyrosine kinase (BTK) inhibitor PCI-32765 synergistically increases proteasome inhibitor activity in diffuse large-B cell lymphoma (DLBCL) and mantle cell lymphoma (MCL) cells sensitive or resistant to bortezomib. Br J Haematol. 2013;161(1):43–56.
161. Axelrod M, Ou Z, Brett LK, Zhang L, Lopez ER, Tamayo AT, Gordon V, Ford RJ, Williams ME, Pham LV, Weber MJ, Wang ML. Combinatorial drug screening identifies synergistic co-targeting of Bruton's tyrosine kinase and the proteasome in mantle cell lymphoma. Leukemia. 2014;28(2):407–10.
162. Trepel J, Mollapour M, Giaccone G, Neckers L. Targeting the dynamic HSP90 complex in cancer. Nat Rev Cancer. 2010;10(8):537–49.
163. Mitra SK, Schlaepfer DD. Integrin-regulated FAK-Src signaling in normal and cancer cells. Curr Opin Cell Biol. 2006;18(5):516–23.
164. Rudelius M, Rosenfeldt MT, Leich E, Rauert-Wunderlich H, Solimando AG, Beilhack A, Ott G, Rosenwald A. Inhibition of focal adhesion kinase overcomes resistance of mantle cell lymphoma to ibrutinib in the bone marrow microenvironment. Haematologica. 2018;103(1):116–25.
165. Byrd JC, Harrington B, O'Brien S, Jones JA, Schuh A, Devereux S, Chaves J, Wierda WG, Awan FT, Brown JR, Hillmen P, Stephens DM, Ghia P, Barrientos JC, Pagel JM, Woyach J, Johnson D, Huang J, Wang X, Kaptein A, Lannutti BJ, Covey T, Fardis M, McGreivy J, Hamdy A, Rothbaum W, Izumi R, Diacovo TG, Johnson AJ, Furman RR. Acalabrutinib (ACP-196) in relapsed chronic lymphocytic leukemia. N Engl J Med. 2016;374(4):323–32.
166. Cosson A, Chapiro E, Bougacha N, Lambert J, Herbi L, Cung HA, Algrin C, Keren B, Damm F, Gabillaud C, Brunelle-Navas MN, Davi F, Merle-Beral H, Le Garff-Tavernier M, Roos-Weil D, Choquet S, Uzunov M, Morel V, Leblond V, Maloum K, Lepretre S, Feugier P, Lesty C, Lejeune J, Sutton L, Landesman Y, Susin SA, Nguyen-Khac F. Gain in the short arm of chromosome 2 (2p+) induces gene overexpression and drug resistance in chronic lymphocytic leukemia: analysis of the central role of XPO1. Leukemia. 2017;31(7):1625–9.
167. Li J, Wang X, Xie Y, Ying Z, Liu W, Ping L, Zhang C, Pan Z, Ding N, Song Y, Zhu J. The mTOR kinase inhibitor everolimus synergistically enhances the anti-tumor effect of the Bruton's tyrosine kinase (BTK) inhibitor PLS-123 on mantle cell lymphoma. Int J Cancer. 2018;142(1):202–13.
168. Gaudio E, Tarantelli C, Kwee I, Barassi C, Bernasconi E, Rinaldi A, Ponzoni M, Cascione L, Targa A, Stathis A, Goodstal S, Zucca E, Bertoni F. Combination of the MEK inhibitor pimasertib with BTK or PI3K-delta inhibitors is active in preclinical models of aggressive lymphomas. Ann Oncol. 2016;27(6):1123–8.
169. Patel VK, Lamothe B, Ayres ML, Gay J, Cheung JP, Balakrishnan K, Ivan C, Morse J, Nelson M, Keating MJ, Wierda WG, Marszalek JR, Gandhi V. Pharmacodynamics and proteomic analysis of acalabrutinib therapy: similarity of on-target effects to ibrutinib and rationale for combination therapy. Leukemia. 2018;32(4):920–30.

Chapter 7
Resistance to Checkpoint Blockade Inhibitors and Immunomodulatory Drugs

Anthony N. Audino and Mitchell S. Cairo

Abstract Cancer therapy has evolved from surgery and radiation to multi-agent chemotherapy, and although we have seen decreased mortality and increased cure rates, most of this therapy has continued to focus on the tumor itself, and not on the tumor microenvironment. Various cells within the tumor microenvironment have been implicated in leading to resistance to immune therapy. Through a complex system of steps, T-cells become activated after presentation of a specific antigen. Because continuous T-cell activation can lead to lymphoproliferation and unwanted autoimmunity, the human T-cell immune system has evolved into a process of checks-and-balances, referred to as immune checkpoints, that allows for co-inhibitory receptors to inhibit T-cell activation. Through the use of check point inhibitors, we have seen patients with cancers refractory to multiple treatments have durable responses, and in some, long term remissions. Some of the most studied inhibitors include Programmed Cell Death Protein 1 (PD-1) and Cytotoxic T Lymphocyte-Associated Antigen 4 (CTLA-4), although more have been identified. As we continue to explore possible treatment options for cancer, we must also be diligent in preemptively investigating how and why some patients will become resistant to these treatments, and what, if any, actions can be taken to circumvent this resistance.

Keywords Checkpoint blockade inhibitors, PD-1, CTLA-4 · Lymphoma · Resistance

A. N. Audino (✉)
Department of Pediatric Hematology/Oncology/BMT, Nationwide Children's Hospital, The Ohio State University, Columbus, OH, USA
e-mail: anthony.audino@nationwidechildrens.org

M. S. Cairo
Departments of Pediatrics, Medicine, Pathology, Microbiology and Immunology, Cell Biology and Anatomy, New York Medical College, Valhalla, NY, USA
e-mail: Mitchell_Cairo@nymc.edu

A. C. Xavier, M. S. Cairo (eds.), *Resistance to Targeted Therapies in Lymphomas*, Resistance to Targeted Anti-Cancer Therapeutics 21,
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-24424-8_7

Abbreviations

APC	Antigen Presenting Cells
ASCT	Autologous Stem Cell Transplant
BV	Brentuximab Vedotin
CAF	Cancer Associated Fibroblasts
COG	Children's Oncology Group
CTLA-4	Cytotoxic T-Lymphocyte Associated Antigen-4
FDA	Food and Drug Administration
HL	Hodgkin Lymphoma
HSC	Hematopoietic Stem Cells
ICAM	Intracellular Activation Motifs
ICOS+	Inducible Costimulatory
IDO	Indoleamine 2, 3-Droxygenase
ITAM	Immunoreceptor Tyrosine Based Activation Motifs
LAG-3	Lymphocyte Activation Gene 3
MDSC	Myeloid Derived Suppressor Cells
MHC	Major Histocompatibility Complex
MHC I	Major Histocompatibility Complex Class I
MHC II	Major Histocompatibility Complex Class II
NSCLC	Non-small Cell Lung Cancer
ORR	Objective Response Rate
OS	Overall Survival
PD-1	Programmed Cell Death Protein 1
PD-L1	Programmed Cell Death Ligand 1
PD-L2	Programmed Cell Death Ligand 2
PFS	Progressive Free Survival
R/R	Relapsed/Refractory
TAM	Tumor Associated Macrophages
TCR	T-Cell Receptors
TIM-3	T-cell Immunoglobulin Mucin 3
Treg	Regulatory T-cells

Introduction

Cancer therapy has evolved over the last several decades from surgery and radiation to multi-agent chemotherapy, and although we have seen decreased mortality and increased cure rates, most of this therapy has continued to focus on the tumor itself, and not on the tumor microenvironment. As cancer therapy continues to advance, the cancer scientific community has begun to recognize that this microenvironment plays an active role in tumor development and progression, via recruitment of other cell through the release of signals and chemokines [1]. With this knowledge, many have speculated that the tumor microenvironment may play a role in resistance to

certain therapies, such as immune checkpoint blockade, and a reason why some patients may not have a continued durable response. Due to this, new therapies that focus on targeting the tumor microenvironment, in addition to the tumor itself, may be lead to better outcomes.

The tumor microenvironment is a dynamic milieu of immune cells that interact with each other and with the tumor, providing an atmosphere of chronic inflammation where the tumor can continue to grow and thrive [2]. Various cells within the tumor microenvironment have been implicated in leading to resistance to immune therapy, including regulatory T-cells (Treg), myeloid derived suppressor cells (MDSC), tumor associated macrophages (TAM) and cancer associated fibroblasts (CAF) [3, 4]. Various tumors, including Hodgkin lymphoma (HL), distinguished by the presence of Reed-Sternberg cells, can produce chemo-attractants that not only select for the infiltration of Treg cells instead of T-helper or T-effector cells, but also reprogram tumor infiltrating T-cells to less active Treg cells [5]. The Treg cells have the ability to suppress effector T-cells by secreting their own inhibitory cytokines, such as IL-10, IL-35, and transforming growth factor β [6]. The presence of MDSCs within the tumor microenvironment has not only been implicated in decreasing efficacy of checkpoint inhibitors, but also in leading to tumor cell invasion, metastases, and promoting angiogenesis [6]. MDSC also express Indoleamine 2,3-dioxygenase (IDO), which promotes naïve T-cells into Treg cells [3]. TAMs have been shown to directly suppress T-cell function response via their expression of suppressor ligands, such as programmed death-ligand 1 (PD-L1) [7]. They are also known to secrete certain chemokines that suppress T-effector function directly and indirectly with the recruitment of Treg cells [7]. Finally, CAF can affect the success of therapy by directly excluding T-cells into the microenvironment via production of chemokines, or by impeding the entry of T effector cells into the microenvironment by producing an extracellular matrix that the cells cannot physically enter [1, 3].

This review will focus on the components of immune cell regulation within the tumor microenvironment and potential mechanisms of resistance to immune checkpoint blockade.

T-Cell Lymphocyte Physiology

T-lymphocytes, initially derived from pluripotent hematopoietic stem cells, transverse the thymus gland in order to start the T-cell maturation process. This process consists of the addition of cell surface markers and rearrangement of a series of germline genes which encode the T-cell receptor (TCR) [6, 8]. Initially, T-lymphocytes will express both CD4 and CD8, but ultimately the majority of T-cells will differentiate into either CD4 or CD8 T-cells as they migrate through the thymus prior to entering the peripheral blood circulation [9]. CD4 cells, also known as T-helper cells, typically interact with major histocompatibility complex class II (MHC II) molecules while CD8 lymphocytes, known as cytotoxic T-cells, interact

with major histocompatibility complex class I (MHC I) molecules on the surface of antigen presenting cells (APC) [10, 11].

T-Cell Receptor

The TCR is a molecule that resides on the surface of the T-lymphocyte. The TCR recognizes antigens or peptides that are presented by an APC via the major histocompatibility complex (MHC). The majority of TCRs consist as a complex of a heterodimer of α and β chains. The complex itself has a large extracellular domain, but only a short intracellular domain that is not able to produce an adequate signal transduction. It is therefore noncovalently bound to another complex known as CD3 on the cell surface. CD3 is a co-receptor made up of four units that contain intracellular activation motifs (ICAM) [8]. Another unit considered to be part of the CD3 complex, Zeta (ζ), consists of a short extracellular domain and longer intracellular domain, also containing ICAM. Assembly of all these components, which takes place in the endoplasmic reticulum, is required to produce a stable complex that can be exported to the cell surface. In addition to the TCR, other co-receptors are needed in order to establish proper binding. Helper T-cells will have a CD4 co-receptor as part of the complex, while cytotoxic T-cells will have a CD8 co-receptor [12]. It is these CD4 and CD8 co-receptors which help the TCR recognize peptides that are presented by the APC via the MHC. It is this recognition that begins the process of T-cell activation.

T-Cell Activation

Activation of T-cells is a process that requires multiple steps. The first step of this process requires an interaction between the T-cell receptor and the antigen being presented via the MHC molecule. This process is very specific in regards to T-cells, meaning that MHC I molecules will only be recognized by CD8+ T-cells and MHC II molecules will be recognized by CD4+ T-cells. It is this interaction that causes a downstream affect via several kinases and phosphatases, such as Lck, FYN, CD45 and Zap70, which ultimately leads to the phosphorylation of immunoreceptor tyrosine based activation motifs within the cytoplasm of T-cells [8, 13] (Fig. 7.1). The second step in the process requires stimulation of co-receptors, such as CD28. The ligands of the CD28 co-receptor, B7–1 and B7–2, are expressed on the APC as well as stromal cells [6, 14]. It is the second step in this process that it is needed in order to make the T-cells fully functional and not anergic. The binding of CD28 with B7–1 and B7–2 has been shown to be required to promote T-cell activation, clonal expansion and acquisition of effector functions [15]. Once the T-cell has recognized the specific antigen signal, the last step in activation process takes place. In the last

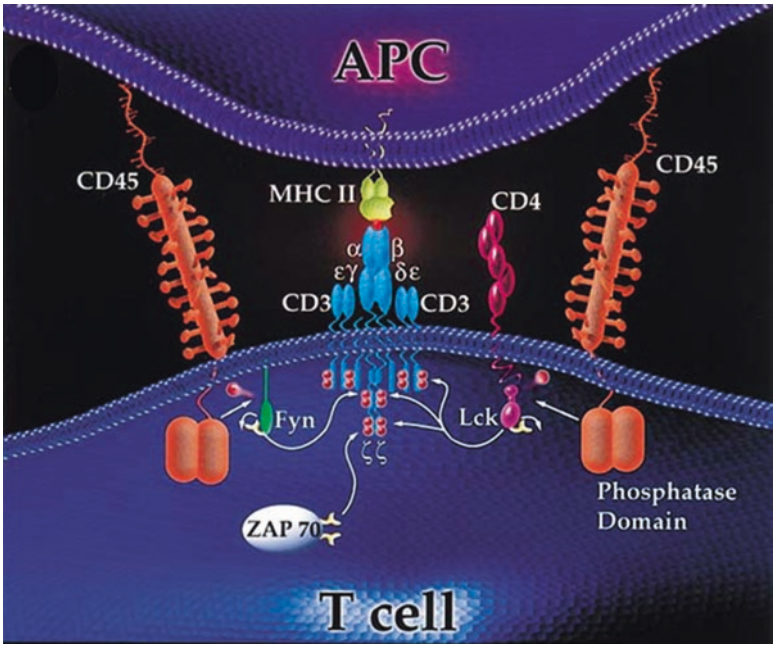


Fig. 7.1 T-cell activation. The role of the TCR/CD3 complex and the CD4 receptor in the initiation of early protein tyrosine phosphorylation. On binding to the peptide/MHC complex, the earliest recognizable event is activation of the Src-kinases, Lck and Fyn. This requires removal of a C-terminal phosphate *(red dot)* by the tyrosine phosphatase, CD45. This allows the kinase to unfold and to phosphorylate ITAM motifs (*blue rectangles* in the intracellular domains of CD3δ, ϵ, γ, and ζ). Tandem ITAM phosphorylations are required for the recruitment of ZAP-70, which attaches by a pair of SH2 domains (yellow half circles) [13]

step, cytokines (IL-2, IL-7, IL-15) produced by the APC induce the T-cell into functional activation.

T-Cell Inhibition

Because continuous T-cell activation can lead to lymphoproliferation and unwanted autoimmunity, which would be detrimental to the host, the human T-cell immune system has evolved into a process of checks-and-balances, referred to as immune checkpoints, that allows for co-inhibitory receptors to inhibit T-cell activation [15]. Some of the most studied inhibitors include programmed cell death protein 1 (PD-1) and cytotoxic T lymphocyte-associated antigen 4 (CTLA-4), although there are more than twenty that have been identified, including lymphocyte activation gene 3 (LAG-3), T-cell immunoglobulin mucin 3 (TIM-3), VISTA, KIR, TIGIT, BTLA and CD39 (Fig. 7.2 and Table 7.1) [15, 16].

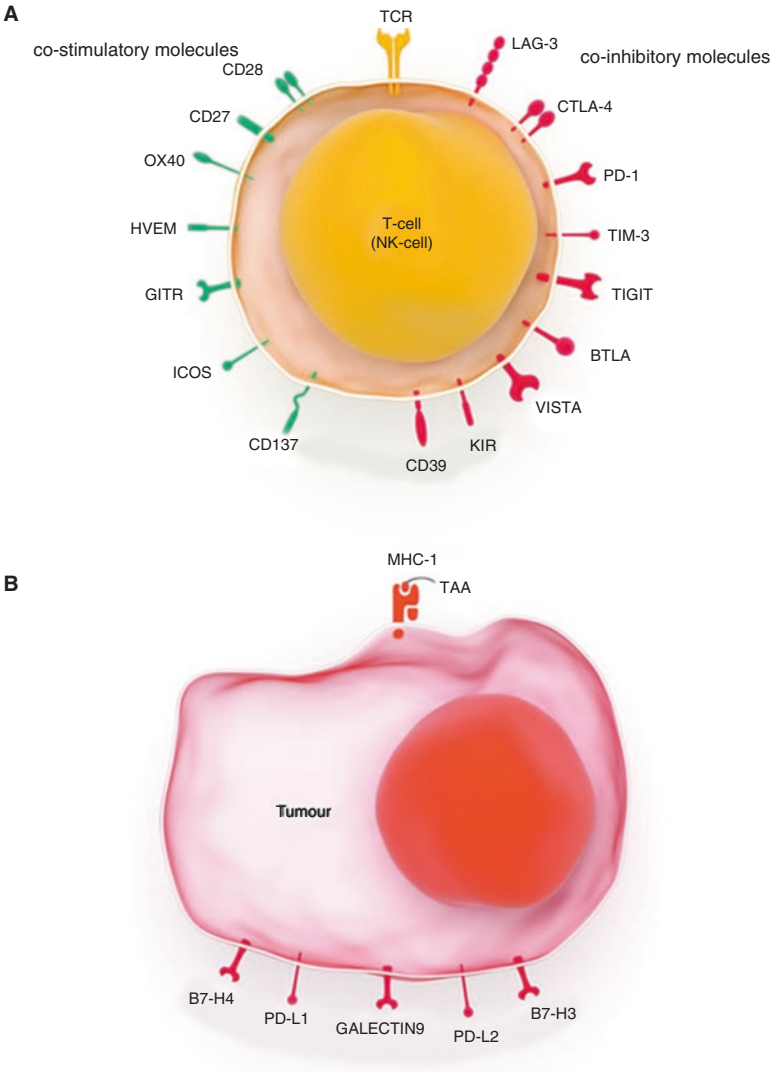


Fig. 7.2 Co-stimulatory and co-inhibitory molecules on T-cells (**a**) and co-inhibitory ligands on tumor cells (**b**). Potential targets of ICI on lymphocytes and tumor cells. (**a**) Activated T-cells (and natural killer cells to a certain extent) express multiple co-stimulatory and co-inhibitory checkpoint molecules on their surface, all of which are potential targets for immunomodulation by checkpoint agonists (co-stimulatory molecules) or inhibitors (co-inhibitory molecules). (**b**) Tumor cells evade the host immune system by expressing ligands for co-inhibitory checkpoint molecules on T cells, hence targeting these ligands leads to inactivation of inhibitory pathways and reactivation of tumor-specific T cells. TCR: T-cell receptor; MHC-I: major histocompatibility complex I; TAA: tumor-associated antigen; LAG-3: lymphocyte-activation gene 3; CTLA-4: cytotoxic T-lymphocyte-associated protein 4; PD-1: programmed cell death protein 1; TIM-3: T-cell immunoglobulin and mucin-domain containing-3; TIGIT: T-cell immunoreceptor with Ig and ITIM domains; BTLA: B- and T-lymphocyte attenuator; VISTA: V-domain immunoglobulin suppressor of T-cell activation; KIR: killer cell immunoglobulin-like receptor; ICOS: inducible T-cell co-stimulator; GITR: glucocorticoid-induced TNFR-related protein; HVEM: Herpesvirus entry mediator, PD-L1: programmed death-ligand 1; PD-L2: programmed death-ligand 2 [16]

Table 7.1 FDA approved checkpoint inhibitors [6, 16, 22–25, 27, 29–32, 34, 37, 40, 43, 45, 46, 64, 65]

	Target	Year approved	Indication	Efficacy	Side effects (Grade 3/4)
Ipilimumab	CTLA-4	2011	Unresectable or metastatic melanoma; expanded to pediatric patients ≥12 years of age in 2017	Meta-analysis of 10 prospective studies of 1861 patients; 3 year survival rate of 22% with some having 10 year durable response	Pruritus, mucositis, immune mediated colitis, diarrhea, hepatotoxicity, endocrinopathies.
Nivolumab	PD-1	2014	Metastatic melanoma, NSCLC, lymphoma, renal cell carcinoma, head and neck squamous cancers, hepatocellular carcinoma, metastatic DNA mismatch repair-deficient or microsatellite instability-high colorectal cancer	Melanoma: ORR of 40% and 1 year OS 72.9% Hodgkin lymphoma: ORR ranging from 63–75%	Rash, pruritis, fatigue, diarrhea, nausea, pyrexia, colitis, hepatotoxicity, hypothyroid, arthralgia, dyspnea
Ipilimumab + Nivolumab	CTLA-4/ PD-1	2015	Metastatic melanoma	3 year OS 58%	Diarrhea, hepatotoxicity
Pembrolizumab	PD-1	2017	Metastatic melanoma, PD-L1+ NSCLC, head and neck squamous cancers	Melanoma: 2 year OS 55% Hodgkin Lymphoma: ORR 65%, with 16% CR and 48% PR	Fatigue, dyspnea, nausea, vomiting, diarrhea, and rash
Atezolizumab	PD-L1	2016	Urothelial cell carcinoma, NSCLC	Urothelial cell: ORR 28% NSCLC: Longer PFS	Infusion-related reaction, pneumonia, hypoxia, fatigue, anemia, musculoskeletal pain, hepatotoxicity, dysphagia, and arthralgia, pneumonitis, hepatitis, colitis, and thyroid disease

(continued)

Table 7.1 (continued)

	Target	Year approved	Indication	Efficacy	Side effects (Grade 3/4)
Avelumab	PD-L1	2017	Metastatic Merkle cell carcinoma	Previous treatment: ORR 33% (11.4% CR and 21.6% PR) Treatment naïve: ORR 60% (13.8% CR and 48.3% PR)	Infusion-related reaction, pneumonitis, colitis, hepatitis, adrenal insufficiency, hypo- and hyperthyroidism, diabetes mellitus, and nephritis
Durvalumab	PD-L1	2017	Urothelial cell carcinoma, NSCLC	Pre-treatment NSCLC: ORR 28%, longer PFS	Infection, pneumonitis, hepatitis, colitis, thyroid disease, adrenal insufficiency, and diabetes

CTLA-4, cytotoxic T lymphocyte-associated antigen 4; PD-1, programmed cell death protein 1; PD-L1, programmed cell death protein ligand; ORR, objective response rate; NSCLC, non-small cell lung cancer; PFS, progression-free survival; CR, complete response; PR, partial response

Check Point Inhibitors

CTLA-4

The first report of CTLA-4 being present on activated T-cells was in 1987 by Brunet and colleagues [17]. It was not until 1996 that Brunet et al. demonstrated that CTLA-4 blocking monoclonal antibodies were active in animal tumor models [18]. Initially, due to its similarities to CD28, CTLA-4 was thought to participate in the stimulation process of T-cells, but it was verified a few years later that it instead had the opposite role and functioned as an inhibitor to T-cell activation [15, 19]. Further investigation revealed that CTLA-4 induced T-cells enter an anergic state, as if the second step of T-cell activation had not occurred [19].

CTLA-4 is expressed on activated T-cells and competes with CD28, as they both share the common ligand, B7–1 [5]. It has been shown that the affinity and avidity for B7–1 in CTLA-4 is greater than CD28 [15, 20]. The interaction between B7–1 and CTLA-4 allows for the downregulation of T-cell activation, which in a normal host, results in the prevention of autoimmunity and tissue damage [15, 16, 21]. CTLA-4 induces T-cell inactivation of two distinct mechanisms. First, CTLA-4 competitively binds with B7–1 and B7–2, resulting in decreased ability for CD28 to interact with these ligands, and therefore allowing for stimulation of anti-tumor T-cells (Fig. 7.3a). Secondly, CTLA-4 has been shown to inhibit various intracellular

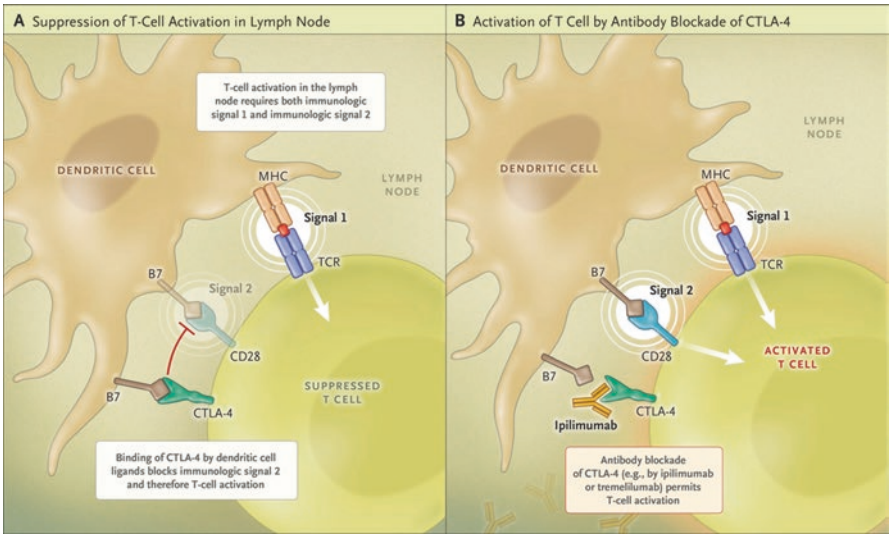


Fig. 7.3 Mechanism of T-cell activation through TCR and inhibition through CTLA-4 (**a**) and blockade by antibodies to CTLA-4 (**b**). Two immunologic signals are required for T-cell activation in the lymph node: stimulation of the T-cell receptor (TCR) by the MHC (immunologic signal 1), and stimulation of CD28 by the B7 costimulatory molecules (immunologic signal 2). However, binding of the B7 costimulatory molecules to CTLA-4 blocks immunologic signal 2, and therefore blocks T-cell activation. Antibody blockade of CTLA-4, for example, by ipilimumab, derepresses signaling by CD28, permitting T-cell activation [63]

signaling pathways, including NF-kB, AP1, MAPK, ERK and c-Jun NH2 terminal kinase signaling, leading to compromised Interleukin 2 (IL-2) production [15, 20].

From a clinical standpoint, CTLA-4, sometimes referred to as "the godfather of checkpoint inhibitors", was the first checkpoint inhibitor ulitized [21]. The first studies revolved around patients with melanoma. One of the first agents, ipilimumab, administered alone or combined with other agents, such as a glycoprotein 100 peptide vaccine or dacarbazine, showed an objective response in patients with metastatic melanoma, leading to significantly longer overall survival (OS). Unfortunately, Grade 3 and Grade 4 adverse events were seen in as many as 15–56% of patients [22–25]. Their initial responses were encouraging, and as these patients were followed years out from their treatment, a durable response was noted in in approximately 20% of patients treated with this drug *vs.* placebo [6, 23].

As with melanoma, the first checkpoint inhibitor that was used in HL was also ipilimumab. This was initially done as a phase 1 study in fourteen patients who had relapsed or refractory (R/R) disease and had failed an allogeneic stem cell transplant. With a single dose, 2 of the 14 patients achieved complete remission (CR) [5, 16, 26]. This led to further research in larger studies. Further Phase 1/2 studies, combining ipilimumab with Brentuximab vedotin (BV) in eighteen R/R HL patients, showed an objective response rate (ORR) of 72%, with 50% of these patients being

in CR [16, 27]. Finally, in 2011, 15 years after the discovery that CTLA-4 blocking antibodies were successful in animal tumor models, the US Food and Drug Administration (FDA) approved ipilimumab as the first inhibitory checkpoint inhibitor in the treatment of Stage IV melanoma (Fig. 7.3b).

PD-1

PD-1 was identified shortly after CTLA-4 in 1992, and demonstrated inhibition to T-cells during long term antigen exposure or during times of inflammatory response or infection [15, 21, 24]. PD-1 has two main ligands that bind with it, PD-L1 and programmed death ligand 2 (PD-L2) (Fig. 7.4a). PD-L1 has been shown to be expressed in various cells, including hematopoietic cells, peripheral tissues and malignant cells, while PD-L2 seems to be exclusively associated with hematopoietic cells, including dendritic cells, macrophages and mast cells [15, 16, 21]. While CTLA-4 is induced early on in the activation process, PD-1 has been shown to be induced at the later effector phase, therefore protecting cells in the periphery. PD-1 accomplishes this by generating a signal to prevent phosphorylation of intracellular signals, reducing the activation of the T-cell [16, 28]. This is a common mechanism used by tumor cells to evade the immune system [6, 15].

Clinically, there are several PD-1 blocking antibodies under investigation for various tumor types (Fig. 7.4b). In 2016, the FDA approved pembrolizumab (an anti-PD-1 checkpoint inhibitor) for melanoma, after two pivotal studies, KEYNOTE-001 and KEYNOTE-002 [29]. The first study, KEYNOTE-001, a phase

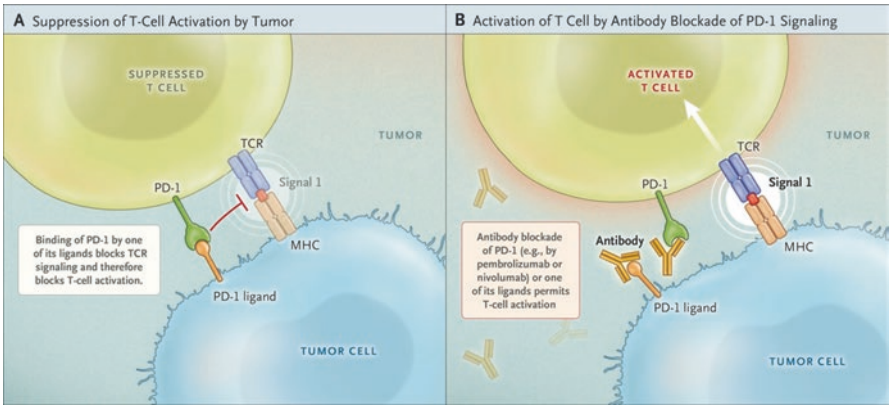


Fig. 7.4 Suppression of T-Cell activation through TCR by PD-1 binding to PD-1 Ligand (**a**) and activation of T-Cell by inhibitory PD-1 by antibody blockade (**b**). During long-term antigen exposure, such as occurs in the tumor milieu, the programmed death 1 (PD-1) inhibitor receptor is expressed by T-cells (**a**); it suppresses the effect of the TCR on T-cell activation. Blockade of PD-1 or its ligand (**b**) (e.g., by pembrolizumab or nivolumab) derepresses TCR signaling, thereby permitting T-cell activation [63]

I study, looked at 411 patients with advanced melanoma. Pembrolizumab showed a durable response in 34% of treated patients after 18 months. This response was maintained in 81% of patients, and median OS was over 2 years [30]. This was followed by KEYNOTE-002 which consisted of patients who had disease progression while being treated or after being treated with ipilimumab. This study compared pembrolizumab versus standard chemotherapy. The pembrolizumab arm showed superiority over standard chemotherapy with longer duration of response as well as lower number of Grade 3 and Grade 4 adverse events [31]. Finally, another study, KEYNOTE-006, comparing ipilimumab *vs*. pembrolizumab, again showed superiority of the latter, concluding that the new standard of care for advanced melanoma should be pembrolizumab [32].

As PD-1 blocking antibodies were being tested in patients with melanoma, studies were also being done in patients with R/R classical HL. Several of the first studies were done using pembrolizumab [33]. KEYNOTE-013 [34] was a Phase 1b study looking at the use of pembrolizumab in classical HL patients who had already failed treatment with BV. Thirty-one total patients were enrolled onto the study. The majority of the patients had already failed an autologous stem cell transplant (ASCT) and greater than four lines of previous therapy. Patients were given pembrolizumab on a biweekly schedule until disease progression was noted. Results revealed an ORR of 65%, with 16% of patients reaching CR and 48% of patients reaching a partial response. The progression free survival (PFS) and OS were 69% and 100% at 24 weeks, and almost half of the responders had a durable response at 1 year follow-up (Fig. 7.5a–e) [34].

The follow-up Phase 2 study, KEYNOTE-087, showed similar results [35]. This larger study had a total of 210 enrolled patients. These patients were split into 3 cohorts determined by their progression (cohort 1: patients who had failed ASCT and BV; cohort 2: patients who had failed salvage therapy *plus* BV but were ineligible for ASCT; cohort 3: patients who had failed ASCT but did not receive BV). Patients in this study received a higher dose of medication (200 mg versus 100 mg) and it was given every 3 weeks. The ORR in this study was 69%, with 22.4% of patients achieving CR [35].

Following the success of pembrolizumab, other PD-1 inhibitors have undergone investigation. A Phase 1 study, CheckMate 039, was one of the first studies to look at nivolumab as a possible agent in refractory hematologic malignancies [36]. This study had a total of 23 heavily pretreated patients, most of which had already failed ASCT and BV. Patients received therapy every 3 weeks. The ORR for this group was a rather impressive 87%, with 17% of patients achieving CR, 70% of patients achieving PR and the remainder of patients having stable disease [36].

The follow-up nivolumab study was a Phase 2 study, CheckMate 205, which also studied R/R HL patients [37]. This study enrolled 243 patients that were split into 3 cohorts based on exposure to BV (cohort 1: patients who had never received BV; cohort 2: patients who received BV only after ASCT; cohort 3: patients who received BV both before and after ASCT). Patients received therapy biweekly. Results showed an ORR ranging from 63–75% between all of the groups with a median PFS of 14.7 months [37].

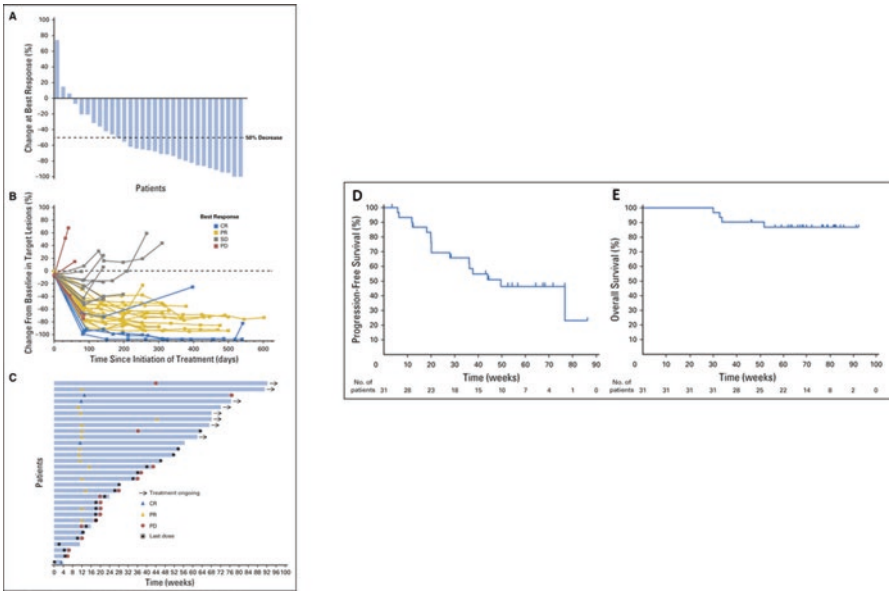


Fig. 7.5 Response to Pembrolizumab in adults with relapsed/refractory cHL waterfall maximal change (**a**); change from baseline in each Patient (**b**); response duration (**c**); probability of PFS (**d**) and OS (**e**) in adults with relapse/refractory cHL treated with Pembrolizumab. Response to treatment. (**a**) Maximum percentage change from baseline in target lesions. (**b**) Change from baseline in target lesions. (**c**) Treatment exposure and response duration. Three patients had a formal response assessment before the protocol-required time point of 12 weeks. One patient only received one dose of pembrolizumab, discontinued treatment because of toxicity at 4 weeks, and had nonprotocol scans to assess response, which showed CR. The other two patients had nonprotocol scans to confirm the clinical impression of progressive disease before the 12 week time point. Abbreviations: CR, complete response; PD, progressive disease; PR, partial response; SD, stable disease [34]

Due to the overall success of these trials, in May of 2016, nivolumab was approved by the FDA for patients with relapsed classical HL and patients who progressed following ASCT and BV. Also, due to the high response rate and overall safe side effect profile, studies have expanded to the younger patients, including pediatric and adolescent and young adults with R/R HL. The Children's Oncology Group (COG) is now enrolling patients as young as 5 years of age and up to 30 years of age on a risk adapted phase 2 study that is using nivolumab and BV followed by BV and bendamustine for patients with R/R CD30 positive classical HL (NCT02927769) [38].

Combined Checkpoint Blockade Therapy

Due to the success of CTLA-4 and PD-1 inhibitors as monotherapy, researchers began to investigate possible approaches using a combination of both these inhibitors. In one of the first studies, CheckMate 069, 142 untreated melanoma patients

were randomized to combined therapy with ipilimumab and nivolumab *versus* ipilimumab alone. This study showed a significantly greater PFS and as well as ORR in the group who received combination therapy *versus* monotherapy [39]. This study went on to show a 2 year OS of 64% in the combination group versus 54% in the monotherapy group [40].

The next study went one step further with 3 cohorts where patients received combination therapy with nivolumab and ipilimumab, nivolumab alone or ipilimumab alone [40]. Results of this study revealed that in patients with advanced melanoma, a significantly longer 3 year OS in the combination group of 58%, versus 52% and 34% in the nivolumab and ipilimumab groups, respectively (Fig. 7.6) [40].

PD-L1

Shortly after studies using PD-1 inhibitors started showing promise, other possible checkpoint inhibitors started to be investigated. As discussed previously, PD-L1, a known ligand for PD-1, is expressed by various cells, including hematopoietic cells, peripheral tissues and malignant cells. Overexpression of PD-L1 and PD-L2 has been associated with alterations in chromosome 9p.24.1, and these alterations have been identified in the malignant Reed-Sternberg cells of classical HL [20, 41, 42]. Similar alterations have been found in primary mediastinal B cell lymphoma and diffuse large B cell lymphoma [20]. Roemer et al. used a 9p24.1 fluorescent in situ hybridization assay to determine incidence of alterations in patients with classical HL. Their results showed that almost all patients had some type of alteration in the PD-L1 and PD-L2 loci, with the majority consisting of copy gain and amplification [42]. They also found that the highest level of expression, ones with amplification, seemed to have a higher incidence in patients with advanced disease, whereas early stage disease had less amplification. Further investigation showed a difference in patient outcome based on percent amplification. By dividing patients into 3 groups, early stage-favorable, early stage-unfavorable and advanced stage, based on clinical features and percent amplification, they identified a significant decrease in PFS related to an increased percent amplification. This led to their speculation that a possible change in treatment may be the addition PD-L1 blockade to standard therapy in these patients [42].

When PD-L1 binds to PD-1, it results in the T-cell entering an exhausted state, making it unavailable to be targeted by T-cells, therefore promoting cancer growth. One of the first PD-L1 immune checkpoint inhibitors approved for bladder cancer was atezolizumab [28]. This checkpoint inhibitor gained FDA approval following a study of 310 patients with inoperable, locally advanced or metastatic urothelial cancer that had failed platinum therapy. In this study, the ORR was 28% for those patients who expressed ≥5% PD-L1 positive tumor infiltrating immune cells [43].

A few months after being approved by the FDA for bladder cancer, atezolizumab was then approved for non-small cell lung cancer (NSCLC) [43]. In a Phase 3 trial

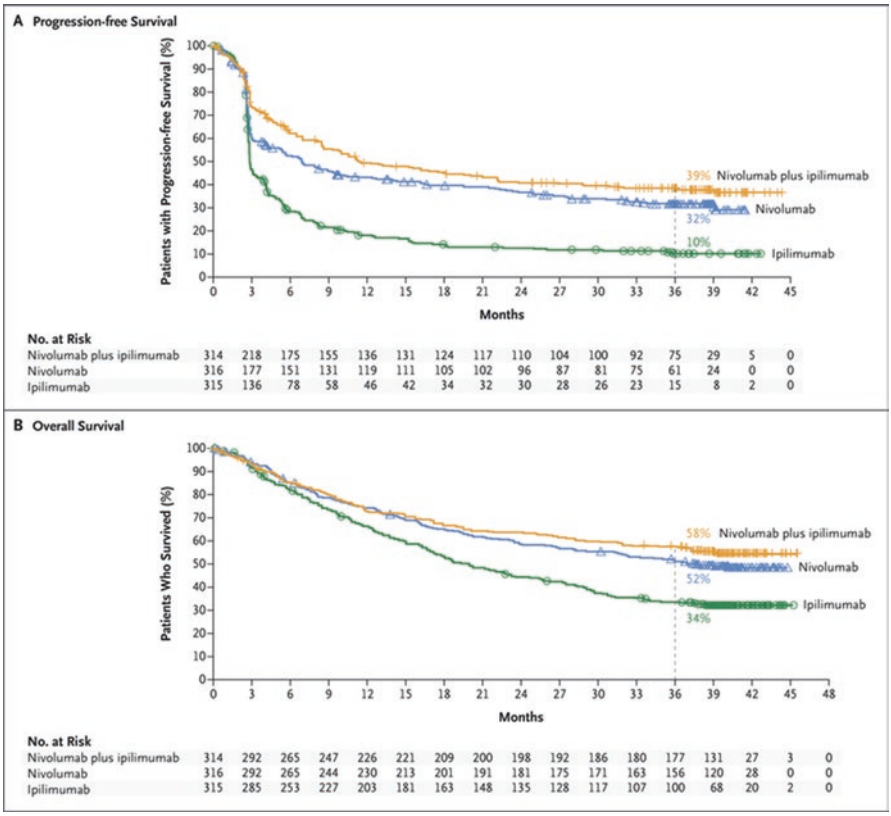


Fig. 7.6 Probability of PFS (**a**) and OS (**b**) in patients with advanced melanoma treated with ipilimumab, nivolumab or both. (**a**) Shows the Kaplan–Meier estimates of progression-free survival as assessed by the investigator. Patients were followed for a minimum of 36 months (dashed line). The median progression-free survival was 11.5 months (95% CI, 8.7–19.3) in the nivolumab-plus-ipilimumab group and 6.9 months (95% CI, 5.1–9.7) in the nivolumab group, as compared with 2.9 months (95% CI, 2.8–3.2) in the ipilimumab group. The rate of progression-free survival at 2 years was 43% in the nivolumab-plus-ipilimumab group and 37% in the nivolumab group, as compared with 12% in the ipilimumab group. The 3 year rate of progression-free survival was 39% in the nivolumab-plus-ipilimumab group and 32% in the nivolumab group, as compared with 10% in the ipilimumab group. (**b**) Shows the Kaplan–Meier estimates of overall survival. The median overall survival was not reached in the nivolumab-plus-ipilimumab group and was 37.6 months (95% CI, 29.1 to not reached) in the nivolumab group and 19.9 months (95% CI, 16.9–24.6) in the ipilimumab group. The overall survival rate at 2 years was 64% in the nivolumab-plus-ipilimumab group and 59% in the nivolumab group, as compared with 45% in the ipilimumab group. The 3 year rate of overall survival was 58% in the nivolumab-plus-ipilimumab group and 52% in the nivolumab group, as compared with 34% in the ipilimumab group. Symbols (tick marks, triangles, and circles) indicate censored data [40]

comparing atezolizumab *versus* docetaxel, there was a significant improvement in OS in the atezolizumab arm (13.8 months *versus* 9.6 months, P = 0.0003). The atezolizumab group was also shown to have less severe side effects than the docetaxel group [44]. Further Phase 3 studies compared the addition of atezolizumab to standard platinum based therapy *versus* standard therapy alone, and preliminary results are in favor of the addition of atezolizumab, which demonstrated longer survival (8.3 months *versus* 6.8 months, P < 0.0001) [45].

Finally, avelumab, another PD-L1 inhibitor, has been studied in multiple tumors. A previous Phase 1b study in patients with advanced stage lung cancer showed an ORR in 12% of patients as well as stable disease in 38% [45]. This inhibitor has also been studied in metastatic Merkel cell carcinoma, a rare neuroendocrine cancer originating from the skin. Two cohorts were studied – Cohort A: those patients who had failed prior therapy; Cohort B: chemotherapy-naïve patients. In cohort A, an ORR was seen in 33% of patients (11.4% with CR and 21.6% with PR) with approximately 74% of these patients having a durable response over 1 year. Cohort B had a greater ORR with 60% of patients seeing a response, 13.8% with CR and 48.3% with PR [46].

Resistance to Checkpoint Blockade

With the addition of checkpoint inhibitors as a possible treatment options for refractory/relapsed cancers, the scientific community has been reinvigorated in finding possible cures for some of the most difficult cancers to treat. Early studies have shown overall promising results in patients, with some patients even achieving a CR, something that could not be done with standard therapy. Unfortunately, although initial responses were positive in some patients, a number of patients did not seem to benefit at all from the same therapy. In some of the early melanoma studies, up to 60% of patients never benefited from treatment with a checkpoint inhibitor [2, 47, 48]. In addition, in those who did respond initially, up to 25% developed relapsed disease that no longer responded to the therapy [48]. Currently, studies are underway to determine why checkpoint inhibitors may benefit some patients, but not others, even though they have the same presumed cancer. Those who never benefited are thought to have a certain profile that may indicate a primary resistance, which may contain a component of adaptive immune resistance, while those with initial response and later loss of this response may have developed possible genetic mutations leading to an acquired resistance to treatment. Resistance to PD-1 checkpoint inhibitors can be due to both extrinsic and intrinsic factors relating to the tumor.

Extrinsic Factors

Lack of Tumor Infiltrating T-Cells

The basis of PD-1 immune checkpoint inhibitors treating tumor cells is that there are functional T-cells present within the tumor microenvironment in order to carry out the cytotoxic effects needed to destroy tumor cells. Recent studies have shown that some tumor microenvironments, especially at times of relapse, are lacking these ever important T-cells [2, 48, 49]. Interestingly, it was demonstrated by Zaretzky et al. that the T-cells, although present and abundant, were only present at the tumor margins, and not within the tumor itself, making them less effective in exerting cytotoxic activity [49]. Another recent study concluded that pre-existing $CD8^+$ T-cells were essential in anti-PD-1 therapy. This study showed that those patients whose pre-treatment tumor cells had a larger number of $CD8^+$ T-cells as well as PD-1/PD-L1 expression, both in the margins and within the tumor microenvironment, had the most tumor regression [50]. This has led to some investigators proposing different strategies for use of immune checkpoint inhibitors based on type of tumor microenvironment (whether tumors are $PD\text{-}L1^+$ and if they have tumor infiltrating $CD8^+$ T-cells) [51].

Others have also reported the significance of tumor infiltrating T-cells in the success of checkpoint blockade. One such study showed that sufficient T-cell infiltration, and not necessarily PD-L1 expression, was essential for an adequate response to checkpoint inhibition [52]. Due to this, they went on to postulate and show certain techniques that could be used in order to increase the population of infiltrating T-cells into the tumor microenvironment. By using the basis of previous studies that showed tumors can suppress chemokine production, Tang et al. have demonstrated that targeting LIGHT (also known as tumor necrosis factor superfamily member 14) can increase lymphocyte infiltration by activating lympotoxin β receptor (LTβR) signaling (Fig. 7.7). The activation of LTβR then induces the production of chemokines and adhesion molecules in tumor tissues which ultimately attract lymphocytes to the tumor [52]. They theorized that this technique could overcome checkpoint inhibitor resistance in some cases.

Still others have shown that it may not only be the quantity of tumor infiltrating T cells that are present, but also the type. A recent publication has shown that Anti-PD-1 and Anti-CTLA-4 checkpoint inhibitors use distinct cellular mechanisms, resulting in induction of different types of T-cells. While both these targeting agents induce subsets of exhausted-like CD8 T-cells, only CTLA-4 blockade induces the expansion of inducible costimulatory ($ICOS^+$) Th1-like CD4 T-cells [53]. This data was eloquently demonstrated by using immunogenic MC38 colorectal tumors from mice treated with anti-CTLA-4 and anti-PD-1 (Fig. 7.8). Interestingly, Wei et al. went on to demonstrate that the tumor infiltrating $ICOS^+$ CD4 T cells that were induced by anti-CTLA-4 and anti-PD- 1 had separate and distinct transcriptional responses, with only 3 being shared among the top 15 cellular pathways. While anti-PD-1 seemed to modulate mitochondrial and oxidative phosphorylation pathways, anti-CTLA-4 modulated pathways which involved cell cycle regulation (Fig. 7.9).

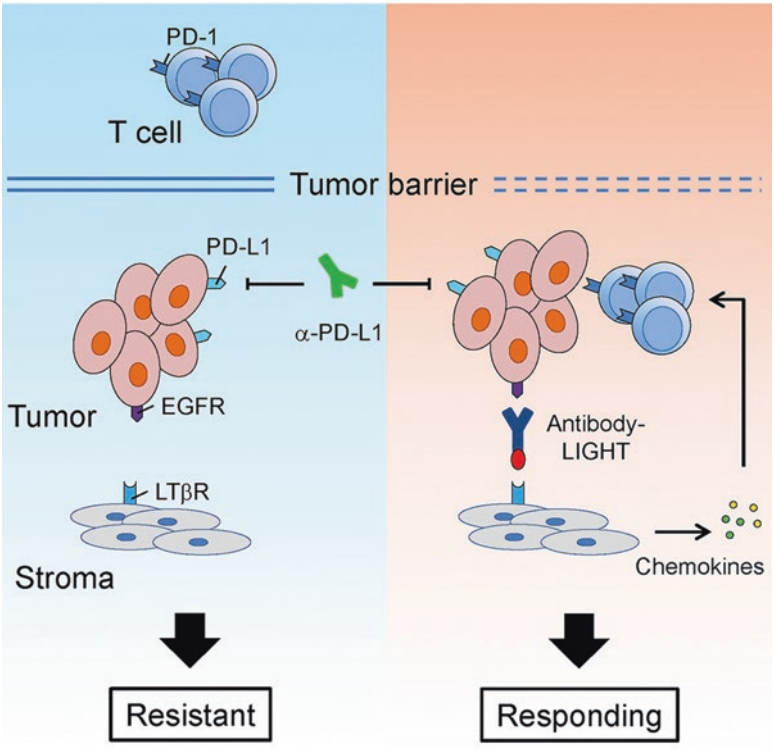


Fig. 7.7 Targeting non-T cell-inflamed tumor tissues by antibody-guided LIGHT. Targeting tumors with tumor necrosis factor superfamily member LIGHT activates lymphotoxin β-receptor signaling, leading to the production of chemokines that recruit massive numbers of T cells [52]

T-Cell Exhaustion

As stated earlier, the main function of PD-1 is to inhibit T-cells during long term antigen exposure or during times of inflammatory response or infection [15, 21, 24]. Chronic exposure to specific antigens can result in T-cell exhaustion, and more specifically, the level of expression of PD-1 signaling has been shown to define the level of exhaustion [47]. In the presence of exhausted T-cells, the PD-1^{high} phenotype appears to affect the efficacy of PD-1 inhibitors, making them resistant to this treatment. In contrast, exhausted T-cells in the presence of the PD-1^{low} or PD-$1^{intermediate}$ phenotype appear to respond to therapy, indicating that these cells can be "reinvigorated" and induced from their exhausted state in order to function against tumor cells [2, 47]. T-cells have also been shown to express other inhibitory immune checkpoints, such as LAG-3, TIM-3 and CTLA-4 possibly leading to severe exhaustion [6, 47]. Finally, the use of PD-1 independent pathways, such as release of IDO or adenosine from tumor cells has been shown to suppress T-cell function during treatment with PD-1 checkpoint inhibitors [6, 47].

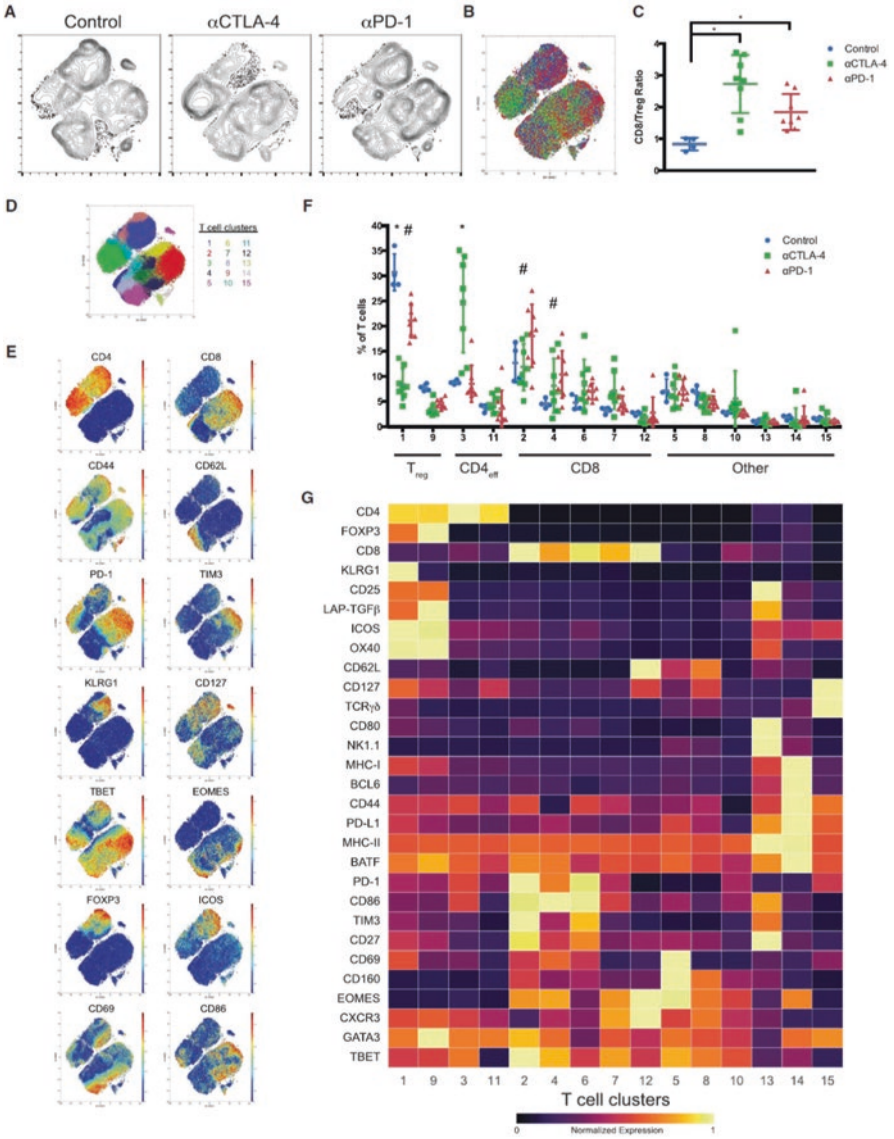


Fig. 7.8 Identification of checkpoint-blockade-responsive MC38 tumor-infiltrating T-cell populations. (**a**) Density t-SNE plots of an equal number of CD3ε$^+$ MC38 tumor-infiltrating T-cells from each treatment group; (**b**) overlaid t-SNE plot displaying equal number of events from each treatment group (control, blue; anti-CTLA-4, green; anti-PD-1, red); (**c**) plot of CD8/T_{reg} ratios displayed on a per-mouse basis with mean ± SD ($p < 0.05$, unpaired t test); (**d**) t-SNE plot of MC38 infiltrating T-cells overlaid with color-coded clusters; (**e**) t-SNE plot of infiltrating T-cells overlaid with the expression of selected markers; (**f**) frequency of T-cell clusters displayed on a per-mouse basis with mean ± SD (∗, control *versus* anti-CTLA-4; #, control *versus* anti-PD-1; $p < 0.05$, Dunnett's multiple comparison). T-cell compartments are denoted including CD8, T_{reg}, and CD4 effector ($CD4_{eff}$) and (**g**) heatmap displaying normalized marker expression of each T-cell cluster. Representative data from three independent experiments is shown [53]

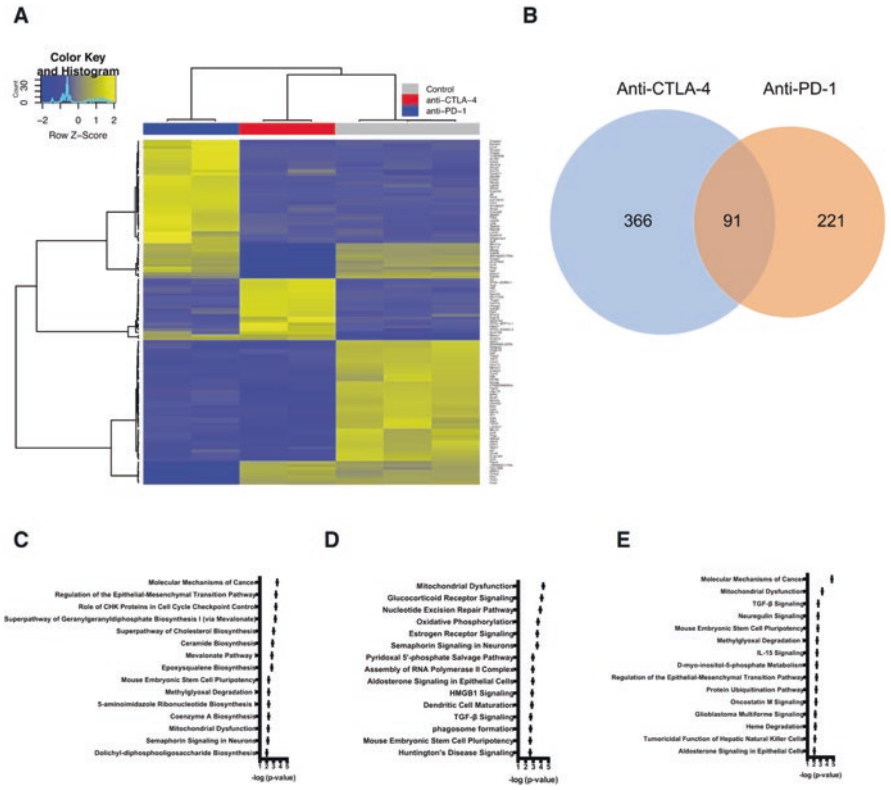


Fig. 7.9 Differential Transcriptional Regulation in MC38 Tumor-Infiltrating CD4 T Cells following Anti-CTLA-4 and Anti-PD-1. (**a**) RNaseq analysis of FACS sorted MC38 tumor infiltrating activated ICOS$^+$ CD4 T-cells. Heatmap of genes with significant differential mRNA expression identified by negative bionomial generalized linear models with likelihood ratio tests, comparing both treatment and control groups. Genes and samples are organized by two-way hierarchical clustering; (**b**) Venn diagram of genes identified as modulated significantly by only one or both anti-CTLA-4 and anti-PD-1 as determined by negative binomial generalized linear models with Wald tests, comparing each treatment to control samples. A 1% FDR cutoff was used for both statistical models; (**c**) The top 15 pathways modulated by anti-CTLA-4 compared to control identified by Ingenuity pathway analysis (IPA) of RNaseq expression analysis; (**d**) The top 15 pathways modulated by anti-PD-1 compared to control identified by IPA; (**e**) The top 15 pathways modulated by anti-CTLA-4 versus anti-PD-1 blockade as identified by IPA [53]

Innate Anti-PD-1 Resistance (IPRES) Signatures

Within the tumor microenvironment, there consists a milieu of cells, including other immune cells, stromal cells and an extracellular matrix [2]. It is these cells that help protect the tumor cell from being recognized as foreign. Twenty-six transcriptomic signatures, referred to as IPRES signatures, have been described as being related to PD-1/PD-L1 resistance [54]. These 26 signatures have been shown to express genes which are related to angiogenesis, wound healing, mesenchymal transition, cell adhesion, and extracellular matrix remodeling [2, 6, 54].

Intrinsic Factors

The cornerstone of PD-1 checkpoint inhibitors is the reactivation of T-cells and their ultimate recognition of tumor cell antigens, resulting in destruction of tumor cells. In order to evade this process, tumors have developed mechanisms of neoantigen loss, or total lack of antigen presentation.

Tumor Immunogenicity

Recent data has shown a correlation between immunogenic mutations and response to checkpoint inhibitors. Specifically, tumors with 5–10 somatic mutations per mega-base of DNA have shown the most response to anti-PD-1 therapy. This is in contrast to tumors, especially those with between 0.1–1 somatic mutation per mega-base of DNA, which have shown almost no response to therapy [55]. Tumors such as melanoma, renal cell carcinoma and non-small cell lung cancer, have shown a high immunogenic mutation load [56]. One study examined somatic nonsynonymous mutation burden in patients with NSCLC and its relation to PD-1 blockade [57]. Rivzi et al. concluded that those patients with a higher median number of nonsynonymous mutations were more likely to have a durable response. 73% of the patients with a high nonsynonymous burden experienced durable clinical benefits as compared to 13% with a low number of mutations. Rivzi et al. went on to demonstrate that both ORR was better, 63% versus 0% and PFS was better, 14.5 months versus 3.7 months, in this group (Fig. 7.10). It has also been demonstrated that some tumors can acquire the ability to decrease the number of neoantigens being presented, thus leading to decreased recognition by T-cells. One such study showed that in relapsed NSCLC patients, the loss of 7–18 putative mutation associated antigens lead to clones resistant to PD-1 therapy [58]. The peptides produced by these neoantigens promoted T-cell expansion in autologous T-cell cultures, thus loss of these peptides affected immune response [58].

Mutations of β-2-Microglobulin (β2M)

In addition to a quantitative loss of neoantigens, another mechanism of resistance is the loss of antigen presenting components, such as β2M, needed for presentation of the antigen to the T-cell. It has been well established that β2M is essential in the formation and transport of the MHC – I molecule to the surface of the presentation cell. Through its interactions with its alpha chain components, it allows for stability of the MHC I molecule during presentation of an antigen [59]. With a mutation of β2M, the end result is lack of antigen presentation, and ultimately lack of recognition by cytotoxic T-cells, allowing the tumor cell to evade apoptosis [6]. A recent study focusing on classical HL showed that of 108 tumor samples, 79% had decreased or absent expression of β2M/MHC I complex and concluded that those patients with a decrease in β2M/MHC I complex had a shorter PFS [60].

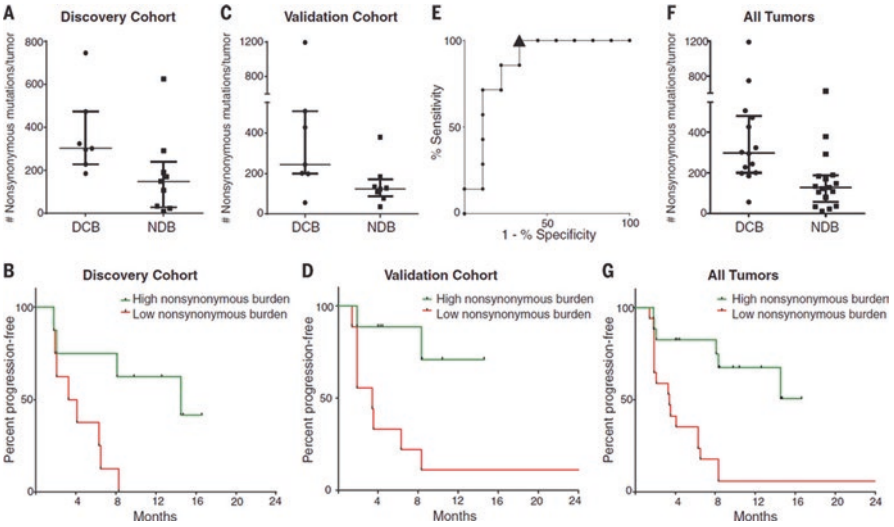


Fig. 7.10 Nonsynonymous mutation burden associated with clinical benefit of anti–PD-1 therapy. (**a**) Nonsynonymous mutation burden in tumors from patients with DCB (n = 7) or with NDB (n = 9) (median 302 versus 148, Mann-Whitney P = 0.02); (**b**) PFS in tumors with higher nonsynonymous mutation burden (n = 8) compared to tumors with lower nonsynonymous mutation burden (n = 8) in patients in the discovery cohort (HR 0.19, 95% CI 0.05–0.70, log-rank P = 0.01); (**c**) Nonsynonymous mutation burden in tumors with DCB (n = 7) compared to those with NDB (n = 8) in patients in the validation cohort (median 244 versus 125, Mann-Whitney P = 0.04); (**d**) PFS in tumors with higher nonsynonymous mutation burden (n = 9) compared to those with lower nonsynonymous mutation burden (n = 9) in patients in the validation cohort (HR 0.15, 95% CI 0.04–0.59, log-rank P = 0.006); (**e**) ROC curve for the correlation of nonsynonymous mutation burden with DCB in discovery cohort. AUC is 0.86 (95% CI 0.66–1.05, null hypothesis test P = 0.02). Cut-off of ≥178 nonsynonymous mutations is designated by triangle and (**f**) Nonsynonymous mutation burden in patients with DCB (n = 14) compared to those with NDB (n = 17) for the entire set of sequenced tumors (median 299 versus 127, Mann-Whitney P = 0.0008); (**g**) PFS in those with higher nonsynonymous mutation burden (n = 17) compared to those with lower nonsynonymous mutation burden (n = 17) in the entire set of sequenced tumors (HR 0.19, 95% CI 0.08–0.47, log-rank P = 0.0004). In (**a**), (**c**), and (**f**), median and interquartile ranges of total nonsynonymous mutations are shown, with individual values for each tumor shown with dots [57]

Mutation of Janus Kinase 1 and 2 (JAK1 and JAK2)

Another method of tumor escape exists with mutations of JAK1 and JAK2. In a recent publication by Zaretzky et al. [49], they examined 4 biopsy samples from diagnosis and relapse of melanoma patients who had initial response to PD-1 therapy, followed by relapse of disease. In 2 of these samples, it was noted that there was a loss of function mutation in JAK1 and JAK2. It has previously been well established that Interferons produced by tumor specific T-cells can recognize certain antigens, such as PD-L1 on tumor cells, resulting in an anti-tumor effect by cytotoxic T-cells [54]. By acquiring loss of function mutations in JAK1 and JAK2, the end result is decreased response to interferon gamma, resulting in decreased PD-L1 antigens and thus allows for tumor proliferation [48, 49].

Expression of CD73 and Production of Adenosine

CD73 expression has been identified in several types of cancer, including colon cancer, melanoma and leukemia, and has also been linked to poor prognosis in triple negative breast cancer [61]. Recent studies have shown that CD73 leads to a downstream production of adenosine, which ultimately leads to tumor-induced immune suppression via activation of A_{2A} receptors on T cells [62]. While therapy targeted against CD73 has not shown much effect, new studies looking at Adenosine Receptor 2A Blockade are showing an increase in the efficacy of immune therapy with PD-1 inhibitors. Beavis et al. showed that a dual blockade with PD-1 and A_{2A} enhanced expression of interferon-gamma by $CD8^+$ T cells leading to growth inhibition of tumors [62]. Because there are several A_{2A} antagonists that have undergone safety studies in other diseases, such as Parkinson's disease, it is possible that studies using them in combination therapy with checkpoint inhibitors may not be far away.

Conclusion

Cancer therapy has evolved over the last several decades and we have been fortunate to observe advancements in immunotherapy leading to successes in the treatment and cure of several cancers. While there remain some cancers that relapse or are refractory to therapy, there continues to be advancements in the field of tumor immunity with the development of novel drugs with different mechanisms of action, one such mechanism being the use of checkpoint inhibitor blockade. Through the use of such drugs, we have seen patients with cancers refractory to multiple treatments have durable responses, and in some, even go into a complete long term remissions. While this has been exciting, there has been a realization that not everybody will have this same response, and even those who do initially, may not have a continued durable response. As we continue to explore possible treatment options for cancer, we must also be diligent in preemptively investigating how and why some patients will become resistant to these treatments, and what, if any, actions can be taken to circumvent this resistance.

Acknowledgement This work was supported in part from the Pediatric Cancer Research Foundation and St. Baldrick's Foundation. The authors would like to thank Virginia Davenport, RN and Erin Morris, RN in their assistance in the preparation of this manuscript.

Disclosure of Conflict of Interest No potential conflicts of interest were disclosed.

References

1. Yuan Y, Jiang YC, Sun CK, Chen QM. Role of the tumor microenvironment in tumor progression and the clinical applications (review). Oncol Rep. 2016;35(5):2499–515.
2. Wang Q, Wu X. Primary and acquired resistance to PD-1/PD-L1 blockade in cancer treatment. Int Immunopharmacol. 2017;46:210–9.

3. Joyce JA, Fearon DT. T cell exclusion, immune privilege, and the tumor microenvironment. Science. 2015;348(6230):74–80.
4. Hui L, Chen Y. Tumor microenvironment: sanctuary of the devil. Cancer Lett. 2015;368(1):7–13.
5. Vardhana S, Younes A. The immune microenvironment in Hodgkin lymphoma: T cells, B cells, and immune checkpoints. Haematologica. 2016;101(7):794–802.
6. Sharma P, Hu-Lieskovan S, Wargo JA, Ribas A. Primary, adaptive, and acquired resistance to cancer immunotherapy. Cell. 2017;168(4):707–23.
7. Noy R, Pollard JW. Tumor-associated macrophages: from mechanisms to therapy. Immunity. 2014;41(1):49–61.
8. Orkin SH, Nathan DG. Nathan and Oski's hematology of infancy and childhood, vol. xxvi. 7th ed. Philadelphia: Saunders/Elsevier; 2009. p. 1841.
9. Rothenberg EV, Taghon T. Molecular genetics of T cell development. Annu Rev Immunol. 2005;23:601–49.
10. Grossi CE, Favre A, Giunta M, Corte G. T cell differentiation in the thymus. Cytotechnology. 1991;5(Suppl 1):113–6.
11. Viret C, Janeway CA Jr. MHC and T cell development. Rev Immunogenet. 1999;1(1):91–104.
12. Veillette A, Bookman MA, Horak EM, Bolen JB. The CD4 and CD8 T cell surface antigens are associated with the internal membrane tyrosine-protein kinase p56lck. Cell. 1988;55(2):301–8.
13. Nel AE. T-cell activation through the antigen receptor. Part 1: signaling components, signaling pathways, and signal integration at the T-cell antigen receptor synapse. J Allergy Clin Immun. 2002;109(5):758–70.
14. Colombo MP, Piconese S. Regulatory-T-cell inhibition versus depletion: the right choice in cancer immunotherapy. Nat Rev Cancer. 2007;7(11):880–7.
15. Intlekofer AM, Thompson CB. At the bench: preclinical rationale for CTLA-4 and PD-1 blockade as cancer immunotherapy. J Leukoc Biol. 2013;94(1):25–39.
16. Hude I, Sasse S, Engert A, Brockelmann PJ. The emerging role of immune checkpoint inhibition in malignant lymphoma. Haematologica. 2017;102(1):30–42.
17. Brunet JF, Denizot F, Luciani MF, Roux-Dosseto M, Suzan M, Mattei MG, et al. A new member of the immunoglobulin superfamily—CTLA-4. Nature. 1987;328(6127):267–70.
18. Leach DR, Krummel MF, Allison JP. Enhancement of antitumor immunity by CTLA-4 blockade. Science. 1996;271(5256):1734–6.
19. Auchincloss H, Turka LA. CTLA-4: not all costimulation is stimulatory. J Immunol. 2011;187(7):3457–8.
20. Menter T, Tzankov A. Mechanisms of immune evasion and immune modulation by lymphoma cells. Front Oncol. 2018;8:54.
21. Pardoll DM. The blockade of immune checkpoints in cancer immunotherapy. Nat Rev Cancer. 2012;12(4):252–64.
22. Hodi FS, O'Day SJ, McDermott DF, Weber RW, Sosman JA, Haanen JB, et al. Improved survival with ipilimumab in patients with metastatic melanoma. N Engl J Med. 2010;363(8):711–23.
23. Maio M, Grob JJ, Aamdal S, Bondarenko I, Robert C, Thomas L, et al. Five-year survival rates for treatment-naive patients with advanced melanoma who received ipilimumab plus dacarbazine in a phase III trial. J Clin Oncol. 2015;33(10):1191–6.
24. Ribas A. Tumor immunotherapy directed at PD-1. N Engl J Med. 2012;366(26):2517–9.
25. Robert C, Thomas L, Bondarenko I, O'Day S, Weber J, Garbe C, et al. Ipilimumab plus dacarbazine for previously untreated metastatic melanoma. N Engl J Med. 2011;364(26):2517–26.
26. Bashey A, Medina B, Corringham S, Pasek M, Carrier E, Vrooman L, et al. CTLA4 blockade with ipilimumab to treat relapse of malignancy after allogeneic hematopoietic cell transplantation. Blood. 2009;113(7):1581–8.
27. Diefenbach CS, Hong FX, Cohen JB, Robertson MJ, Ambinder RF, Fenske TS, et al. Preliminary safety and efficacy of the combination of Brentuximab Vedotin and Ipilimumab in relapsed/refractory Hodgkin lymphoma: a trial of the ECOG-ACRIN Cancer research group (E4412). Blood. 2015;126:23.
28. Oiseth SJ, Aziz Mohamed S. Cancer immunotherapy: a brief review of the history, possibilities, and challenges ahead. J Cancer Metastasis Treat. 2017;3:250–61.

29. Robert C, Schachter J, Long GV, Arance A, Grob JJ, Mortier L, et al. Pembrolizumab versus Ipilimumab in Advanced Melanoma. N Engl J Med. 2015;372(26):2521–32.
30. Ribas A, Wolchok JD, Robert C, Kefford R, Hamid O, Daud A, et al. Updated clinical efficacy of the anti-Pd-1 monoclonal antibody Pembrolizumab (Mk-3475) in 411 patients with Melanoma. Eur J Cancer. 2015;51:E24–E.
31. Ribas A, Puzanov I, Dummer R, Schadendorf D, Hamid O, Robert C, et al. Pembrolizumab versus investigator-choice chemotherapy for ipilimumab-refractory melanoma (KEYNOTE-002): a randomised, controlled, phase 2 trial. Lancet Oncol. 2015;16(8):908–18.
32. Schachter J, Ribas A, Long GV, Arance A, Grob JJ, Mortier L, et al. Pembrolizumab versus ipilimumab for advanced melanoma: final overall survival results of a multicentre, randomised, open-label phase 3 study (KEYNOTE-006). Lancet. 2017;390(10105):1853–62.
33. Goodman A, Patel SP, Kurzrock R. PD-1-PD-L1 immune-checkpoint blockade in B-cell lymphomas. Nat Rev Clin Oncol. 2017;14(4):203–20.
34. Armand P, Shipp MA, Ribrag V, Michot JM, Zinzani PL, Kuruvilla J, et al. Programmed death-1 blockade with Pembrolizumab in patients with classical Hodgkin lymphoma after Brentuximab Vedotin failure. J Clin Oncol. 2016;34(31):3733–9.
35. Chen L, Flies DB. Molecular mechanisms of T cell co-stimulation and co-inhibition. Nat Rev Immunol. 2013;13(4):227–42.
36. Ansell SM, Lesokhin AM, Borrello I, Halwani A, Scott EC, Gutierrez M, et al. PD-1 blockade with nivolumab in relapsed or refractory Hodgkin's lymphoma. N Engl J Med. 2015;372(4):311–9.
37. Armand P, Engert A, Younes A, Fanale M, Santoro A, Zinzani PL, et al. Nivolumab for relapsed/refractory classic Hodgkin lymphoma after failure of autologous hematopoietic cell transplantation: extended follow-up of the multicohort single-arm phase II CheckMate 205 trial. J Clin Oncol. 2018;36(14):1428–39.
38. ClinicalTrials.gov. Risk-based, Response-adapted, Phase II Open-label Trial of Nivolumab + Brentuximab Vedotin (N + Bv) for Children, Adolescents, and Young Adults With Relapsed/Refractory (R/R) CD30 + Classic Hodgkin Lymphoma (cHL) After Failure of First-line Therapy, Followed by Brentuximab + Bendamustine (Bv + B) for Participants With a Suboptimal Response (CheckMate 744: CHECKpoint Pathway and Nivolumab Clinical Trial Evaluation) [cited 2018 October 7, 2016]. Available from: https://clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/show/NCT02927769.
39. Postow MA, Chesney J, Pavlick AC, Robert C, Grossmann K, McDermott D, et al. Nivolumab and ipilimumab versus ipilimumab in untreated melanoma. N Engl J Med. 2015;372(21):2006–17.
40. Wolchok JD, Chiarion-Sileni V, Gonzalez R, Rutkowski P, Grob JJ, Cowey CL, et al. Overall survival with combined Nivolumab and Ipilimumab in advanced melanoma. New Engl J Med. 2017;377(14):1345–56.
41. Michot JM, Lazarovici J, Ghez D, Danu A, Ferme C, Bigorgne A, et al. Challenges and perspectives in the immunotherapy of Hodgkin lymphoma. Eur J Cancer. 2017;85:67–77.
42. Roemer MG, Advani RH, Ligon AH, Natkunam Y, Redd RA, Homer H, et al. PD-L1 and PD-L2 genetic alterations define classical Hodgkin lymphoma and predict outcome. J Clin Oncol. 2016;34(23):2690–7.
43. Bellmunt J, Powles T, Vogelzang NJ. A review on the evolution of PD-1/PD-L1 immunotherapy for bladder cancer: the future is now. Cancer Treat Rev. 2017;54:58–67.
44. Rittmeyer A, Barlesi F, Waterkamp D, Park K, Ciardiello F, von Pawel J, et al. Atezolizumab versus docetaxel in patients with previously treated non-small-cell lung cancer (OAK): a phase 3, open-label, multicentre randomised controlled trial. Lancet. 2017;389(10066):255–65.
45. Heigener DF, Reck M. Advanced non-small cell lung cancer: the role of PD-L1 inhibitors. J Thorac Dis. 2018;10(Suppl 13):S1468–S73.
46. Shirley M. Avelumab: a review in metastatic Merkel cell carcinoma. Target Oncol. 2018;13(3):409–16.
47. O'Donnell JS, Long GV, Scolyer RA, Teng MW, Smyth MJ. Resistance to PD1/PDL1 checkpoint inhibition. Cancer Treat Rev. 2017;52:71–81.

48. O'Donnell JS, Smyth MJ, Teng MW. Acquired resistance to anti-PD1 therapy: checkmate to checkpoint blockade? Genome Med. 2016;8(1):111.
49. Zaretsky JM, Garcia-Diaz A, Shin DS, Escuin-Ordinas H, Hugo W, Hu-Lieskovan S, et al. Mutations associated with acquired resistance to PD-1 blockade in melanoma. N Engl J Med. 2016;375(9):819–29.
50. Tumeh PC, Harview CL, Yearley JH, Shintaku IP, Taylor EJ, Robert L, et al. PD-1 blockade induces responses by inhibiting adaptive immune resistance. Nature. 2014;515(7528):568–71.
51. Teng MW, Ngiow SF, Ribas A, Smyth MJ. Classifying cancers based on T-cell infiltration and PD-L1. Cancer Res. 2015;75(11):2139–45.
52. Tang H, Wang Y, Chlewicki LK, Zhang Y, Guo J, Liang W, et al. Facilitating T cell infiltration in tumor microenvironment overcomes resistance to PD-L1 blockade. Cancer Cell. 2016;29(3):285–96.
53. Wei SC, Levine JH, Cogdill AP, Zhao Y, Anang NAS, Andrews MC, et al. Distinct cellular mechanisms underlie anti-CTLA-4 and anti-PD-1 checkpoint blockade. Cell. 2017;170(6):1120–33 e17.
54. Bai J, Gao Z, Li X, Dong L, Han W, Nie J. Regulation of PD-1/PD-L1 pathway and resistance to PD-1/PD-L1 blockade. Oncotarget. 2017;8(66):110693–707.
55. Schumacher TN, Schreiber RD. Neoantigens in cancer immunotherapy. Science. 2015;348(6230):69–74.
56. Jenkins RW, Barbie DA, Flaherty KT. Mechanisms of resistance to immune checkpoint inhibitors. Br J Cancer. 2018;118(1):9–16.
57. Rizvi NA, Hellmann MD, Snyder A, Kvistborg P, Makarov V, Havel JJ, et al. Cancer immunology. Mutational landscape determines sensitivity to PD-1 blockade in non-small cell lung cancer. Science. 2015;348(6230):124–8.
58. Anagnostou V, Smith KN, Forde PM, Niknafs N, Bhattacharya R, White J, et al. Evolution of Neoantigen landscape during immune checkpoint blockade in non-small cell lung Cancer. Cancer Discov. 2017;7(3):264–76.
59. Li L, Dong M, Wang XG. The implication and significance of Beta 2 microglobulin: a conservative multifunctional regulator. Chin Med J. 2016;129(4):448–55.
60. Roemer MG, Advani RH, Redd RA, Pinkus GS, Natkunam Y, Ligon AH, et al. Classical Hodgkin lymphoma with reduced beta2M/MHC class I expression is associated with inferior outcome independent of 9p24.1 status. Cancer Immunol Res. 2016;4(11):910–6.
61. Loi S, Pommey S, Haibe-Kains B, Beavis PA, Darcy PK, Smyth MJ, et al. CD73 promotes anthracycline resistance and poor prognosis in triple negative breast cancer. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA. 2013;110(27):11091–6.
62. Beavis PA, Milenkovski N, Henderson MA, John LB, Allard B, Loi S, et al. Adenosine receptor 2A blockade increases the efficacy of anti-PD-1 through enhanced antitumor T-cell responses. Cancer Immunol Res. 2015;3(5):506–17.
63. Ribas A. Releasing the brakes on Cancer immunotherapy. N Engl J Med. 2015;373(16):1490–2.
64. Hargadon KM, Johnson CE, Williams CJ. Immune checkpoint blockade therapy for cancer: an overview of FDA-approved immune checkpoint inhibitors. Int Immunopharmacol. 2018;62:29–39.
65. Postow MA, Sidlow R, Hellmann MD. Immune-related adverse events associated with immune checkpoint blockade. N Engl J Med. 2018;378(2):158–68.

Chapter 8
Resistance to Bispecific T-Cell Engagers and Bispecific Antibodies

Stacy L. Cooper and Patrick A. Brown

Abstract Bispecific antibodies are an emerging novel therapeutic construct used to treat a variety of cancers. These drugs utilize a small fusion protein to link two single-chain antibodies, allowing for simultaneous binding of two different epitopes. Bispecific T-cell engagers (BiTE) are a subset of bispecific antibodies that bind the target antigen on the cancer cell while simultaneously binding a patient's endogenous T-cell. By bringing these two cells in close proximity, the patient's own immune system can be redirected to attack the cancer cell. Several mechanisms of resistance to these drugs exist, including extramedullary escape, loss of the target antigen, and inadequate endogenous immune response.

Keywords Bispecific antibodies · BiTE · Blinatumomab · Non-Hodgkin lymphoma · Acute lymphoblastic leukemia

Abbreviations

B-ALL	B Acute Lymphoblastic Leukemia
BiTE	Bi-Specific Antigen Receptor T-Cells
CAR-T	Chimeric Antigen Receptor T-cells
CNS	Central Nervous System
CR	Complete Response Rate
CRS	Cytokine Release Syndrome
DLBCL	Diffuse Large B-Cell Lymphoma
EM	Extramedullary
EFS	Event-Free Survival
FDA	Food and Drug Administration

S. L. Cooper (✉) · P. A. Brown
Division of Pediatric Oncology, Department of Oncology, Johns Hopkins University School of Medicine, Baltimore, MD, USA
e-mail: scoope30@jhmi.edu; pbrown2@jhmi.edu

A. C. Xavier, M. S. Cairo (eds.), *Resistance to Targeted Therapies in Lymphomas*, Resistance to Targeted Anti-Cancer Therapeutics 21,
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-24424-8_8

HL	Hodgkin Lymphoma
MCH	Major Histocompatibility Complex
MLL	Mixed Lineage Leukemia
NHL	Non-Hodgkin Lymphoma
NK	Natural Killer
ORR	Overall Response Rate
OS	Overall Survival
PD-L1	Programmed Death Ligand 1
PD-1	Programmed Death Protein 1
R/R	Relapsed/Refractory
scFv	Single-chain Fragment Variable
TCR	T-Cell Receptor
Treg	Regulatory T-Cell

Introduction to Bispecific Antibodies and Bispecific T-Cell Engagers (BiTE)

Bispecific antibodies are novel therapeutic constructs able to recognize and concurrently bind two separate epitopes. Bispecific T-cell engagers (BiTEs) are a specific subset of bispecific antibodies that link the single-chain fragment variable (scFv) of a monoclonal antibody against the tumor antigen with a scFv from a monoclonal antibody directed against CD3 to bind an effector T cell. These two scFV are connected by a small linker protein that allows the fragments unrestricted rotation. By bringing the endogenous T-cell in close contact with the tumor cell, this allows the patient's own immune system to be redirected to attack the tumor cells through the recruitment and activation of polyclonal T-cells. Simultaneous binding of the T-cell and the tumor cell to the BiTE results in T-cell activation, manifested by upregulation of CD25 and CD69, as well as secretion of activating cytokines such as IL-2, IL-4, IL-6, IL-10, IFN-y and TNF-α. This temporary cytolytic synapse produces tumor cell death through perforin/granzyme-induced apoptosis. While both antibody fragments must be bound to cause cell death, this process is not dependent on the tumor antigen specificity of the T-cells, nor does it require costimulatory molecules [1]. Importantly, this antibody construct therefore allows this response to be independent of major histocompatibility complex (MHC), costimulatory molecules or T-cell receptor (TCR recognition) requirements, which are common escape mechanisms for many other antibody therapies [2, 3].

Blinatumomab

Blinatumomab is a BiTE composed of two single-chain antibodies, with murine anti-CD3 on its C terminus and human anti-CD19 on its N terminus, covalently linked by a flexible peptide, thus simultaneously binding the patient's CD3+

endogenous T-cells as well as the CD19+ cells expressed by the malignant clone. CD19 is an attractive target for B-lineage hematologic malignancies, given its specificity for B-cells and near universal expression in these neoplasms. Its relatively small size compared to monoclonal antibodies, only 55kDa, allows for the target-effector cells to be brought into close proximity, and is also thought to improve penetration into lymphomatous regions of disease [4]. Once both cells are bound, T-cell mediated cytotoxicity occurs via perforin and granzyme release, forming channels within the cell membrane of the tumor cell through which granzyme passes to activated intracellular caspases and cause cell death via apoptosis. Following this cell death, the T-cell disengages from the blinatumomab-B cell complex and is able to target another malignant cell. Blinatumomab's low effector to target cell ratio ensures that the same T-cell can be redirected to lyse multiple malignant CD19+ cells [5]. The amount of disease burden at the initiation of therapy with blinatumomab has consistently been shown to be an important prognostic factor, with patients with >50% bone marrow blasts having significantly worse outcomes. This finding suggests that the ratio of effector to target cells is an important factor in optimal response [3].

Immunologic profiling of patients enrolled in the initial studies if blinatumomab for relapsed/refractory B-ALL was used to study the endogenous T-cell response to blinatumomab induced cytotoxic killing of the target cell. The peripheral blood T-cells in these patients were shown to consistently drop within hours of initiation of blinatumomab, with subsequent recovery to half baseline levels within 3 days and fully back to baseline by day 9. In many patients, this increase in T lymphocytes continued, reaching a mean maximal expansion by day 17 of treatment. This included polyclonal expansion of both CD4+ and CD8+ T-cells, with the greatest relative increase seen in effector memory T-cells (T_{EM}) and terminally differentiated memory cells (T_{EMRA}) cells. This temporary reallocation of the peripheral T-cells after initiation of blinatumomab appeared to be secondary to release of cytokines, specifically IL-2, IL-6, IL-10, IFN-y and TNFα [6].

Blinatumomab is generally well tolerated, with fever, headache and peripheral edema as the most common adverse events; and anemia, thrombocytopenia and hypokalemia as most common serious adverse events [7]. Two rare but serious side effects, cytokine release syndrome (CRS) and neurologic sequelae are usually reversible and manageable with supportive care [8]. Cytokine release syndrome is a potentially serious side effect related to a systemic inflammatory response, and manifests with fever, headache, and malaise and can progress to hypotension and multi-organ dysfunction. It is usually able to be managed with intravenous fluid resuscitation and the use of tocilizumab, an antibody targeting the IL-6 receptor, with severe refractory cases requiring the use of corticosteroids. Neurologic sequelae are another potential serious side effect of blinatumomab, manifesting with the entire spectrum of neurologic signs and symptoms, from headache and confusion to seizure and coma. It is managed with supportive care, as tocilizumab is not effective, with steroids are indicated in more severe, refractory cases that require intervention. Both CRS and neurotoxicity almost always resolve without any residual side effects [9].

The initial phase 1 studies of blinatumomab were performed with adult patients with R/R B-cell non-Hodgkin lymphoma (NHL), and demonstrated that the drug was safe and feasible to give, with the potential for efficacy particularly in patients with diffuse large B cell lymphoma (DLBCL) [10]. In a phase 2 study of blinatumomab in adults with heavily pre-treated R/R DLBCL, twenty-one evaluable patients had an overall response rate (ORR) of 43%, with complete response (CR) in 19%. Notably, three of the four complete responses were durable, long-term responses in the absence of any additional treatment [11].

Much of the subsequent clinical experience with blinatumomab has been with patients with pre-B acute lymphoblastic leukemia (B-ALL), another hematologic malignancy that almost always expresses CD19. The first phase 2 study in adults with R/R B-ALL enrolled 36 patients, with 69% achieving CR/CRi, almost all of which were MRD negative remissions [12]. A multi-institutional, phase 3 trial in adults with R/R B-ALL enrolled more than 400 patients, randomized to either blinatumomab alone or standard cytotoxic chemotherapy, with the patients receiving blinatumomab having significantly higher rates of CR, event free survival (EFS) and overall survival (OS) [7]. The first phase 1/2 study of blinatumomab in pediatric patients with R/R B-ALL showed a similar side effect profile with a CR rate of 40% [13]. Most recently, a single arm, phase 2 trial treated 118 adults with B-ALL who achieved an MRD positive (> 0.1%) CR, and demonstrated that blinatumomab therapy in these patients achieved MRD negativity in 78%, with 54% relapse-free survival at 18 months [14].

Based on these clinical trials, blinatumomab was first approved by the US Food and Drug Administration (FDA) in 2014 for adults with R/R Philadelphia chromosome negative B-ALL, and expanded in 2018 to include adults and children with B-ALL in first or second complete morphologic remission with MRD > 0.1% [15].

Clinical trials for blinatumomab are currently underway for several other CD19+ hematologic malignancies, including R/R indolent B cell NHL (NCT02961881), maintenance therapy after achieving CR after upfront DLBCL therapy (NCT03023878), maintenance therapy after autologous transplant for R/R DLBCL (NCT03072771), maintenance therapy after allogeneic transplant for R/R NHL (NCT NCT02807883), and in combination with lenalidomide for B-cell NHL (NCT02568553).

Other BiTE/Bispecific Antibodies Used in Lymphoma

Several other bispecific antibodies are currently in development for lymphoma. AFM11 is a tetravalent bispecific CD19/CD3 tandem antibody (TandAb), a molecule that is similar BiTE but with two bindings sites each for CD19 and CD3, which is thought to improve its potency over traditional BiTE molecules. Clinical trials are currently underway to study this drug in R/R NHL and B-ALL (NCT02106091 and NCT02848911, respectively) [16].

CD30 is a surface marker expressed in Hodgkin lymphoma (HL), and thus another promising target antigen for antibody directed therapy. Several bispecific

antibodies targeting CD30 have been studied since the 1990s with some promising efficacy in early trials, although manufacturing challenges halted their development [17, 18]. One of these, AFM13, is a bispecific anti-CD30/CD16A antibody that binds natural killer (NK) cells to mediate lysis of HL cells. In a phase 1 dose escalation study of 26 adults with heavily pre-treated R/R HL, AFM13 was found to be well tolerated, with 61% of achieving at least stable disease [19]. An ongoing phase 1b clinical trial is ongoing in adults with R/R HL that combines AFM13 with a PD-1 inhibitor in an attempt to augment its efficacy (NCT02665650).

Other bispecific antibodies currently in development for patients with NHL include RG6026 (which targets CD20/TCB) [20], mosunetuzumab (which targets CD3/CD19) [21], RO7082859 (which targets CD3/CD20, NCT03075696), and REGN1979 (which targets CD3/CD20, NCT02651662).

Mechanisms of Resistance and Relapse to BiTE and Bispecific Antibodies

While the mechanisms of resistance to bispecific antibodies and BiTE have yet to be fully elucidated, several major pathways have been identified. As discussed earlier in the chapter, the mechanism of action of bispecific antibodies is independent of MHC requirements, costimulatory molecules or TCR recognition, thus eliminating three common escape mechanisms seen in many other antibody-based therapies [2]. Of note, anti-mouse antibodies have never been detected in patients who have received bispecific antibodies, making this only a theoretical mechanism of resistance [22].

As blinatumomab is the bispecific antibody with the greatest clinical experience thus far, the understanding of resistance to BiTE and bispecific antibodies in general extends mainly from knowledge of the mechanisms known to affect blinatumomab. Therefore, the remainder of this discussion will primarily focus on the experience of resistance to blinatumomab.

Approximately half of all R/R B-ALL patients treated with blinatumomab are initially refractory, with half of the responders eventually relapsing through secondary mechanisms [23]. While not yet completely understood, three major pathways have been identified for this resistance: compartmental escape through extramedullary sites, loss of target antigen, and inadequate endogenous T-cell response.

Compartmental Escape to Extramedullary Sites

The central nervous system (CNS) and testes have long been identified as sanctuary sites that allow malignant cells to be protected from systemic chemotherapy. As a result of tumor microenvironment factors in these areas, overt or occult disease in these sites could allow for protection and immunity from the systemic blinatumomab.

In the long-term follow up studies of the phase 2 trial of blinatumomab in adult R/R B-ALL, two of the 21 evaluable patients who relapsed did so with extramedullary disease (one CNS, one testicular) [24]. Additionally, studies of patients treated with blinatumomab have shown that both a history of extramedullary B-ALL as well as active extramedullary B-ALL at the time of initiation of blinatumomab have been shown to be associated with poor outcomes [25].

In a retrospective analysis of a single center's 65 adult patients treated with blinatumomab for R/R B-ALL, among those patients who initially responded to blinatumomab but later relapsed, 40% relapsed with EM disease. Among those patients who were refractory to blinatumomab, 40% had extramedullary disease at the time of progression, including 5 patients with combined bone marrow and extramedullary involvement at the time of initiation of blinatumomab who had documented complete marrow remission at the end of the first cycle but with progression of the EM involvement [25].

Studies of blinatumomab in NHL provide further evidence for blinatumomab's decreased extramedullary efficacy, as the drug has been less effective in this patient population when to patients with B-ALL. However, interestingly, patients with mature B-NHL show improved outcomes with higher drug dosages used when compared to the dosages typically used in B-ALL, with only 1/15 patients achieving a CR at 15 ug/m^2/day, but 8/35 patients achieving CR when the dose was escalated to 60 ug/m^2/day [10]. This was confirmed with another study demonstrating that the 15 ug/m^2/day dose of blinatumomab was able to achieve CR in the bone marrow disease in patients with stage IV NHL, but a dose escalation to 60 ug/m^2/day was required for remission response in areas of nodal disease [26].

While the mechanism for this sanctuary site escape is not yet known, it is postulated that it could be secondary to poor extramedullary site penetration by T-cells and/or blinatumomab, as well as extramedullary microenvironmental factors that inhibit the action of the drug.

Loss of Target Antigen

Evolution of the malignant clone to cease expression of the target antigen is another mechanism of resistance to these antibodies. In patients treated with blinatumomab, loss of the CD19 target antigen has been reported, but is rare, occurring in approximately 10–20% of patients. In one of the largest retrospective reviews of 84 adult patients with R/R B-ALL treated with blinatumomab, surface marker expression was analyzed using flow cytometry and found that the overwhelming majority (92%) of non-responders and relapsed patients continued to express CD19 at high levels. Of the 38 refractory patients, only one patient lost CD19 expression after treatment, with two additional patients having a decrease in CD19 expression. Of the 30 patients who eventually relapsed after initial CR, four patients lost CD19 expression in their relapsed clone [23]. Consistent with this, in the initial phase 1/2 study of blinatumomab in pediatric patients with R/R B-ALL, 22% of the patients (5/70) experienced CD19 negative relapse or progression [27].

Two major pathways are proposed for antigen loss as a mechanism of resistance, with much of the data extrapolated from relapse after chimeric antigen receptor T-cell therapy (CAR-T) in R/R B-ALL. This modality of immunotherapy is similar to BiTE, but uses the patient's autologous T-cells that have been genetically engineered to express a chimeric antigen receptor to bind the tumor antigen. CD19+ CAR-T cells are the construct with the greatest clinical experience, and share many features of mechanism of action, side effects and pathways of relapse with blinatumomab.

One mechanism for CD19 negative escape is specific loss of the CD19 target antigen from the malignant B-cells. Studies of relapse after CAR-T therapy have found evidence that this epitope loss can be secondary to deletions as well as de novo frameshift mutations in the CD19 gene, as well as alternative splicing of the CD19 mRNA [28]. One study of adult patients with CD19 negative relapses after blinatumomab therapy identified another novel mechanism of CD19 loss, as one patient with CD19 negative relapse was found to have leukemia cells without mutation or deletion within the CD19 gene, and full length CD19 mRNA was identified. The team therefore hypothesized the resistance was secondary to abnormal trafficking of the antigen, and were able to identify an abnormal glycosylation of the blasts, which was traced to an abnormality in CD81 that prevented normal processing of CD19 within the Golgi complex [29]. Thus, many different mechanisms can potentially lead to loss of the CD19 antigen itself on the lymphoblasts.

The second mechanism for CD19 negative relapse is lineage switch, whereby the lymphoblasts are able to undergo alternate differentiation into myeloblasts that do not express CD19. While this was not demonstrated in the initial phase studies of blinatumomab, it has since been reported. This phenomenon is most well known in patients with MLL-rearranged leukemia, which is hypothesized to stem from a very early progenitor with lymphomyeloid differentiation potential, which allows for the switch from lymphoid to myeloid lineage when selective chemotherapy pressure is applied [30, 31].

However, while lineage switch is most commonly described as a mechanism of resistance in patients with MLL-rearranged leukemia, it has also been reported after blinatumomab therapy even in cases of patients without this MLL rearrangement [32]. Additionally, new evidence is emerging based on studies of subclones in pre-B ALL treated with CD19+ CAR-T, suggesting that lineage switch results from plasticity of the malignant cells, rather than clonal pressure [33].

Suboptimal T-Cell Response to BiTE

One mechanism of resistance that is unique to BiTE that does not affect other bispecific antibodies involves a poor response from the patient's endogenous T-cells. As the cytotoxicity of BiTE relies on tumor lysis mediated by the patient's immune system, suboptimal activation and expansion of these T-cells is becoming increasingly recognized as a major mechanism of resistance to this class of drugs.

The association between T-cell expansion and blinatumomab response has been well documented. The first evidence for this came from a phase 2 study of blinatumomab in 36 adult patients with R/R B-ALL, with response defined by morphologic CR. At the end of the first cycle, those who responded showed an increase in peripheral blood CD4+ and CD8+ T-cells by an average of 243% and 245% above baseline, compared to the non-responders whose CD4+ and CD8+ T cells remained at baseline at the end of the cycle. Consistent with this, responders also showed higher peak serum concentration of IFN-y, IL-6 and IL-10 [34]. Long term follow-up of these patients revealed a significantly more robust T-cell expansion in the ten long term survivors when compared to those who relapsed. Analysis of the T-cell kinetics demonstrated expansion of CD3+T cells in cycle 1 of those with survival more than 30 months, decreased but demonstrable T-cell expansion in those with initial CR but survival inferior to 30 months, and no evidence of T-cell expansion in patients refractory to blinatumomab. A similar trend was seen with CD3+ T_{EM} cells, which are particularly important for blinatumomab-mediated cytotoxicity [35].

Another immune factor that predicts response to blinatumomab is the percentage of regulatory T-cells (Tregs), immune cells that function to down-regulate effector T-cell responses. Studies in patients with solid tumors have consistently demonstrated high levels of intratumoral Tregs correlated with poor prognosis [36–38]. When T-cell subsets were analyzed in 42 adult patients with R/R B-ALL who received blinatumomab, no differences were seen in absolute number of total T-cells, or subsets of CD4+ and CD8+ T-cells. However, patients that were refractory to blinatumomab demonstrated a significantly higher percentage of Tregs in the peripheral blood when compared to patients who responded to blinatumomab. Subsequent *in vitro* experiments demonstrated that when Tregs were depleted from the samples from these non-responders, both CD4+ and CD8+ cells had increased proliferation [39].

Immune checkpoints are a complex system of inhibitory and stimulatory signals that allow for self-tolerance and prevention autoimmunity, as well as to limit the damage to nearby normal tissues when responding to a pathogen. Programmed Death Ligand 1 (PD-L1) and its receptor, Programmed Death Protein 1 (PD-1), are two critical checkpoint inhibitors that have been shown to have an emerging role in cancer immunotherapy. Binding of PD-L1 to PD-1 on T-cells results in inhibition of T-cell function, and lack of an immune response [40].

Upregulation of PD-L1 has been shown to result in T-cell dysfunction and inhibition of the adaptive immune response, and is becoming increasingly recognized as a pathway of immune evasion for BiTEs. In solid tumors as well as hematologic malignancies, high expression of PD-L1 has been associated with poor prognosis [41]. Antibodies targeting PD-1 and PD-L1 are thus promising targets for immunotherapy, as a way of bypassing this mechanism of resistance. Several of these have been approved by the FDA, including nivolumab (PD-1 inhibitor) in 2014, atezolizumab (PD-L1 inhibitor) in 2016, pembrolizumab (PD-1 inhibitor) in 2017, and durvalumab (PD-L1 inhibitor) in 2017.

The earliest report supporting this theory of T-cell mediated resistance to blinatumomab involved an adult patient with primary refractory B-ALL treated with

blinatumomab after several failed attempts at induction with conventional chemotherapy. With 30% bone marrow blasts in his marrow prior to starting blinatumomab, he was found to be refractory to blinatumomab as well, with 60% CD19+ blasts after the first cycle. Immunohistochemistry performed before and after blinatumomab demonstrated an increase in both PD-1 expression by marrow lymphocytes (5% positive *vs.* 15% positive) as well as PD-L1 by the tumor cells (2% positive *vs.* 40% positive). After treatment with blinatumomab, the patient's peripheral blood CD3+ T cells were collected and incubated with the patient's blasts, and compared to co-culture of the blasts with healthy donor T-cells, the endogenous T cells were found to have significant decrease in cell lysis (8.5% *vs.* 93.6%), with a concomitant decrease in the levels of IFN-y produced by the patient's T-cells compared to those from a healthy donor [42].

Another study screened the immunologic co-signaling molecules on ten CD19+ primary ALL cell lines as compared to normal bone marrow samples, to determine the stimulatory and inhibitory profiles of B lymphoblasts. PD-L1 had significantly higher expression on the lymphoblasts, with CD86 as the most pronounced marker of activation on these cells. Specifically, samples from patients refractory to blinatumomab were found to have higher expression of PD-L1 when compared to responders to blinatumomab and controls, with higher markers of T-cell exhaustion, such as PD-1 and TIM3, on the T-cells of these patients when compared to healthy donor controls. Based on these findings, peripheral blood mononuclear cells from healthy donors and leukemia patients were co-cultured with the patient's blasts and blinatumomab, with the presence and absence of antibodies against PDL-1 and/or CTLA-4. Proliferation of the T-cells was markedly increased with the addition of antibodies against PD-L1 alone, and with both PD-L1 and CTLA-4. This *in vivo* data led to the first report combining blinatumomab with checkpoint inhibition in a patient, when a 12 year-old girl with refractory ALL was refractory to blinatumomab monotherapy, with 45% marrow blasts at the end of the first cycle. Pembrolizumab, a PD-1 inhibitor, was added to her next cycle of blinatumomab, which was well tolerated and without significant toxicity. Marrow evaluation at the end of this cycle showed a morphologic CR, with the patient still alive at the time of manuscript publication [43].

Conclusions and Future Directions

BiTE and bispecific antibodies are a promising therapeutic platform for treating hematologic malignancies. The major mechanisms of resistance include extramedullary escape, loss of the target antigen, and for those antibodies relying on T-cell engagement, suboptimal response by the patient's endogenous T-cells. More research is needed to better understand the mechanisms of resistance to these forms of immunotherapy, and ways to overcome them. There is already some promising progress being made in this arena. To address the extramedullary escape, additional research is needed to determine the optimal dose for targeting tumor cells outside of

the bone marrow. These studies will also be augmented by ongoing research into the microenvironment of leukemias and lymphomas, to determine the differences and any therapeutic implications between the bone marrow niche and the extramedullary compartment. Regarding target antigen loss, there is robust research being done to determine ways to minimize this, including simultaneous targeting of several target antigens, as seen with early studies of bivalent CAR-T cells that target both CD19+ and CD22 [44]. And finally, in terms of augmenting the patient's endogenous T-cell response to BiTE, larger studies are ongoing to test whether the addition of checkpoint inhibitors can enhance the efficacy of this therapy (NCT02879695).

Disclosure of Conflict of Interest No potential conflicts of interest were disclosed by SC. P.B. has received medical writing support from Amgen for an unrelated manuscript.

References

1. Suryadevara CM, Gedeon PC, Sanchez-Perez L, Verla T, Alvarez-Breckenridge C, Choi BD, et al. Are BiTEs the "missing link" in cancer therapy? Oncoimmunology. 2015;4(6):e1008339.
2. Goebeler ME, Bargou R. Blinatumomab: a CD19/CD3 bispecific T cell engager (BiTE) with unique anti-tumor efficacy. Leuk Lymphoma. 2016;57(5):1021–32.
3. Benjamin JE, Stein AS. The role of blinatumomab in patients with relapsed/refractory acute lymphoblastic leukemia. Ther Adv Hematol. 2016;7(3):142–56.
4. Loffler A, Kufer P, Lutterbuse R, Zettl F, Daniel PT, Schwenkenbecher JM, et al. A recombinant bispecific single-chain antibody, CD19 × CD3, induces rapid and high lymphoma-directed cytotoxicity by unstimulated T lymphocytes. Blood. 2000;95(6):2098–103.
5. Hoffmann P, Hofmeister R, Brischwein K, Brandl C, Crommer S, Bargou R, et al. Serial killing of tumor cells by cytotoxic T cells redirected with a CD19-/CD3-bispecific single-chain antibody construct. Int J Cancer. 2005;115(1):98–104.
6. Klinger M, Brandl C, Zugmaier G, Hijazi Y, Bargou RC, Topp MS, et al. Immunopharmacologic response of patients with B-lineage acute lymphoblastic leukemia to continuous infusion of T cell-engaging CD19/CD3-bispecific BiTE antibody blinatumomab. Blood. 2012;119(26):6226–33.
7. Kantarjian H, Stein A, Gokbuget N, Fielding AK, Schuh AC, Ribera JM, et al. Blinatumomab versus chemotherapy for advanced acute lymphoblastic leukemia. N Engl J Med. 2017;376(9):836–47.
8. Barrett DM, Teachey DT, Grupp SA. Toxicity management for patients receiving novel T-cell engaging therapies. Curr Opin Pediatr. 2014;26(1):43–9.
9. Jain T, Litzow MR. No free rides: management of toxicities of novel immunotherapies in ALL, including financial. Hematology Am Soc Hematol Educ Program. 2018;2018(1):25–34.
10. Goebeler ME, Knop S, Viardot A, Kufer P, Topp MS, Einsele H, et al. Bispecific T-cell engager (BiTE) antibody construct blinatumomab for the treatment of patients with relapsed/refractory non-Hodgkin lymphoma: final results from a phase I study. J Clin Oncol. 2016;34(10):1104–11.
11. Viardot A, Goebeler ME, Hess G, Neumann S, Pfreundschuh M, Adrian N, et al. Phase 2 study of the bispecific T-cell engager (BiTE) antibody blinatumomab in relapsed/refractory diffuse large B-cell lymphoma. Blood. 2016;127(11):1410–6.
12. Topp MS, Gokbuget N, Zugmaier G, Klappers P, Stelljes M, Neumann S, et al. Phase II trial of the anti-CD19 bispecific T cell-engager blinatumomab shows hematologic and molecular remissions in patients with relapsed or refractory B-precursor acute lymphoblastic leukemia. J Clin Oncol. 2014;32(36):4134–40.

13. von Stackelberg A, Locatelli F, Zugmaier G, Handgretinger R, Trippett TM, Rizzari C, et al. Phase I/phase II study of blinatumomab in pediatric patients with relapsed/refractory acute lymphoblastic leukemia. J Clin Oncol. 2016;34(36):4381–9.
14. Gokbuget N, Dombret H, Bonifacio M, Reichle A, Graux C, Faul C, et al. Blinatumomab for minimal residual disease in adults with B-cell precursor acute lymphoblastic leukemia. Blood. 2018;131(14):1522–31.
15. Tam C, Grigg AP, Opat S, Ku M, Gilbertson M, Anderson MA, et al. The BTK inhibitor, Bgb-3111, is safe, tolerable, and highly active in patients with relapsed/ refractory B-cell malignancies: initial report of a phase 1 first-in-human trial. Blood. 2015;126:23.
16. Reusch U, Duell J, Ellwanger K, Herbrecht C, Knackmuss SH, Fucek I, et al. A tetravalent bispecific TandAb (CD19/CD3), AFM11, efficiently recruits T cells for the potent lysis of CD19(+) tumor cells. MAbs. 2015;7(3):584–604.
17. Hartmann F, Renner C, Jung W, da Costa L, Tembrink S, Held G, et al. Anti-CD16/CD30 bispecific antibody treatment for Hodgkin's disease: role of infusion schedule and costimulation with cytokines. Clin Cancer Res. 2001;7(7):1873–81.
18. Borchmann P, Schnell R, Fuss I, Manzke O, Davis T, Lewis LD, et al. Phase 1 trial of the novel bispecific molecule H22×Ki-4 in patients with refractory Hodgkin lymphoma. Blood. 2002;100(9):3101–7.
19. Rothe A, Sasse S, Topp MS, Eichenauer DA, Hummel H, Reiners KS, et al. A phase 1 study of the bispecific anti-CD30/CD16A antibody construct AFM13 in patients with relapsed or refractory Hodgkin lymphoma. Blood. 2015;125(26):4024–31.
20. Bacac M, Colombetti S, Herter S, Sam J, Perro M, Chen S, et al. CD20-TCB with obinutuzumab pretreatment as next-generation treatment of hematologic malignancies. Clin Cancer Res. 2018;24(19):4785–97.
21. Budde LE, Sehn LH, Assouline S, Flinn IW, Isufi I, Yoon S-S, et al. Mosunetuzumab, a full-length bispecific CD20/CD3 antibody, displays clinical activity in relapsed/refractory B-cell non-Hodgkin lymphoma (NHL): interim safety and efficacy results from a phase 1 study. Blood. 2018;132(Suppl 1):399.
22. Topp MS, Kufer P, Gokbuget N, Goebeler M, Klinger M, Neumann S, et al. Targeted therapy with the T-cell-engaging antibody blinatumomab of chemotherapy-refractory minimal residual disease in B-lineage acute lymphoblastic leukemia patients results in high response rate and prolonged leukemia-free survival. J Clin Oncol. 2011;29(18):2493–8.
23. Jabbour E, Dull J, Yilmaz M, Khoury JD, Ravandi F, Jain N, et al. Outcome of patients with relapsed/refractory acute lymphoblastic leukemia after blinatumomab failure: no change in the level of CD19 expression. Am J Hematol. 2018;93(3):371–4.
24. Topp MS, Gokbuget N, Zugmaier G, Degenhard E, Goebeler ME, Klinger M, et al. Long-term follow-up of hematologic relapse-free survival in a phase 2 study of blinatumomab in patients with MRD in B-lineage ALL. Blood. 2012;120(26):5185–7.
25. Aldoss I, Song J, Stiller T, Nguyen T, Palmer J, O'Donnell M, et al. Correlates of resistance and relapse during blinatumomab therapy for relapsed/refractory acute lymphoblastic leukemia. Am J Hematol. 2017;92(9):858–65.
26. Bargou R, Leo E, Zugmaier G, Klinger M, Goebeler M, Knop S, et al. Tumor regression in cancer patients by very low doses of a T cell-engaging antibody. Science. 2008;321(5891):974–7.
27. Mejstrikova E, Hrusak O, Borowitz MJ, Whitlock JA, Brethon B, Trippett TM, et al. CD19-negative relapse of pediatric B-cell precursor acute lymphoblastic leukemia following blinatumomab treatment. Blood Cancer J. 2017;7(12):659.
28. Sotillo E, Barrett DM, Black KL, Bagashev A, Oldridge D, Wu G, et al. Convergence of acquired mutations and alternative splicing of CD19 enables resistance to CART-19 immunotherapy. Cancer Discov. 2015;5(12):1282–95.
29. Braig F, Brandt A, Goebeler M, Tony HP, Kurze AK, Nollau P, et al. Resistance to anti-CD19/CD3 BiTE in acute lymphoblastic leukemia may be mediated by disrupted CD19 membrane trafficking. Blood. 2017;129(1):100–4.

30. Duffner U, Abdel-Mageed A, Younge J, Tornga C, Scott K, Staddon J, et al. The possible perils of targeted therapy. Leukemia. 2016;30(7):1619–21.
31. Gardner R, Wu D, Cherian S, Fang M, Hanafi LA, Finney O, et al. Acquisition of a CD19-negative myeloid phenotype allows immune escape of MLL-rearranged B-ALL from CD19 CAR-T-cell therapy. Blood. 2016;127(20):2406–10.
32. Zoghbi A, Zur Stadt U, Winkler B, Muller I, Escherich G. Lineage switch under blinatumomab treatment of relapsed common acute lymphoblastic leukemia without MLL rearrangement. Pediatr Blood Cancer. 2017;64(11):e26594.
33. Jacoby E, Nguyen SM, Fountaine TJ, Welp K, Gryder B, Qin H, et al. CD19 CAR immune pressure induces B-precursor acute lymphoblastic leukaemia lineage switch exposing inherent leukaemic plasticity. Nat Commun. 2016;7:12320.
34. Nagele V, Kratzer A, Zugmaier G, Holland C, Hijazi Y, Topp MS, et al. Changes in clinical laboratory parameters and pharmacodynamic markers in response to blinatumomab treatment of patients with relapsed/refractory ALL. Exp Hematol Oncol. 2017;6:14.
35. Zugmaier G, Gokbuget N, Klinger M, Viardot A, Stelljes M, Neumann S, et al. Long-term survival and T-cell kinetics in relapsed/refractory ALL patients who achieved MRD response after blinatumomab treatment. Blood. 2015;126(24):2578–84.
36. Curiel TJ, Coukos G, Zou L, Alvarez X, Cheng P, Mottram P, et al. Specific recruitment of regulatory T cells in ovarian carcinoma fosters immune privilege and predicts reduced survival. Nat Med. 2004;10(9):942–9.
37. Bates GJ, Fox SB, Han C, Leek RD, Garcia JF, Harris AL, et al. Quantification of regulatory T cells enables the identification of high-risk breast cancer patients and those at risk of late relapse. J Clin Oncol. 2006;24(34):5373–80.
38. Sasada T, Kimura M, Yoshida Y, Kanai M, Takabayashi A. CD4+CD25+ regulatory T cells in patients with gastrointestinal malignancies: possible involvement of regulatory T cells in disease progression. Cancer. 2003;98(5):1089–99.
39. Duell J, Dittrich M, Bedke T, Mueller T, Eisele F, Rosenwald A, et al. Frequency of regulatory T cells determines the outcome of the T-cell-engaging antibody blinatumomab in patients with B-precursor ALL. Leukemia. 2017;31(10):2181–90.
40. Pardoll DM. The blockade of immune checkpoints in cancer immunotherapy. Nat Rev Cancer. 2012;12(4):252–64.
41. Homet Moreno B, Ribas A. Anti-programmed cell death protein-1/ligand-1 therapy in different cancers. Br J Cancer. 2015;112(9):1421–7.
42. Kohnke T, Krupka C, Tischer J, Knosel T, Subklewe M. Increase of PD-L1 expressing B-precursor ALL cells in a patient resistant to the CD19/CD3-bispecific T cell engager antibody blinatumomab. J Hematol Oncol. 2015;8:111.
43. Feucht J, Kayser S, Gorodezki D, Hamieh M, Doring M, Blaeschke F, et al. T-cell responses against CD19+ pediatric acute lymphoblastic leukemia mediated by bispecific T-cell engager (BiTE) are regulated contrarily by PD-L1 and CD80/CD86 on leukemic blasts. Oncotarget. 2016;7(47):76902–19.
44. Qin H, Ramakrishna S, Nguyen S, Fountaine TJ, Ponduri A, Stetler-Stevenson M, et al. Preclinical development of bivalent chimeric antigen receptors targeting both CD19 and CD22. Mol Ther Oncolytics. 2018;11:127–37.

Chapter 9
Resistance to Chimeric Antigen Receptor T-Cell Therapy

Ana C. Xavier and Luciano J. Costa

Abstract Chimeric antigen receptor (CAR) T-cells are a form of adoptive immunotherapy constituted of autologous T-cells engineered with a receptors that is able to target tumor antigens. Treatment with CAR19 cells leads to rapid response in a significant proportion of patients with relapsed or refractory aggressive B-cell lymphomas. However, relapses post CAR-T cell therapy are common. In this chapter, we will discuss what is currently known about mechanisms of resistance to CAR-T cell therapy in B-cell lymphomas or leukemias.

Keywords Lymphoma · Large B-cell · Diffuse; immunotherapy · Adoptive; drug resistance · Neoplasm

Abbreviations

ALL	Acute Lymphoblastic Leukemia
AML	Acute Myeloid Leukemia
Axi-cel	Axicabtagene Ciloleucel
CAN	Copy-number Alteration
CAR	Chimeric Antigen Receptor
CARB	CAR-transduced B-cell leukemia

A. C. Xavier (✉)
Division of Hematology/Oncology, Department of Pediatrics, University of Alabama at Birmingham, Children's Hospital of Alabama, Birmingham, AL, USA
e-mail: axavier@peds.uab.edu

L. J. Costa
Division of Hematology/Oncology, Department of Medicine, University of Alabama at Birmingham, Birmingham, AL, USA
e-mail: Ljcosta@uabmc.edu

A. C. Xavier, M. S. Cairo (eds.), *Resistance to Targeted Therapies in Lymphomas*, Resistance to Targeted Anti-Cancer Therapeutics 21,
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-24424-8_9

CR	Complete Response
CRS	Cytokine Release Syndrome
DLBCL	Diffuse Large B-Cell Lymphoma
Liso-cel	Lisocabtagene Maraleucel
LOH	Loss Of Heterozygosity
MCL	Mantle Cell Lymphoma
OS	Overall Survival
PFS	Progression-Free Survival
PMBCL	Primary Mediastinal B-Cell Lymphoma
PR	Partial Response
r/r	Relapsed/refractory
RR	Response Rate
SCT	Stem Cell Transplant
TCR	T-Cell Receptor
tFL	DLBCL arising from Follicular Lymphoma
Tisa-cel	Tisagenlecleucel
WES	Whole-genome sequencing

Introduction

CD19-directed genetically modified autologous T-cell immunotherapy is comprised of autologous T-cells collected from a patient and genetically engineered to encode an anti-CD19 chimeric antigen receptor (CAR) (Fig. 9.1) [1]. The structure of the anti-CD19 CAR T cell products (CAR19) recently evaluated in B-cell lymphoma trials are displayed in Fig. 9.2 [2]. Treatment with CAR19 cells leads to rapid response in the majority of patients with relapsed or refractory (r/r) aggressive B-cell lymphomas, including complete responses (CR). Notwithstanding the rapid initial response, a significant proportion of patients will eventually face disease

Fig. 9.1 (continued) transmembrane domain to intracellular signaling domains. Pro-inflammatory cytokines or co-stimulatory ligands expressed by the CAR T cells are depicted for the 4th generation. (**C**) Overview of so-called smart CAR T cell products. Pooled CAR T cell products consist of two or more single-targeting CAR T cell types with distinct antigen specificities. Multi-CAR T cells harbor several CAR molecules with different antigen specificities. A tandem CAR T ell expresses a CAR construct harboring two ligand-binding domains with different antigen specificities. In a conditional CAR T cell activation and co-stimulation are separated on two CAR constructs recognizing different target antigens. In the split CAR construct the ligand-binding or signaling domain is physically separated allowing controlled CAR T cell activation. iCAR T cells additionally express a receptor engineered to recognize an antigen expressed on normal tissue to provide an inhibitory signal in turn. In addition CAR T cells can be equipped with suicide genes or switches (e.g. iCasp9) allowing ablation of CAR T cells. (**D**) Left, status of published CAR T cell gene therapy trials or trials registered at clinicaltrials.gov including long-term follow-up studies. The status of one trial is unknown and not listed. The total number of clinical trials (dark blue bars) is compared to published clinical trials (light blue bars). The asterisk indicate zero trials. Right, phases of CAR T cell gene therapy trials. Long-term follow-up studies are not included. For nine trials, the phase classification is unknown. The asterisk indicate zero trials [1]

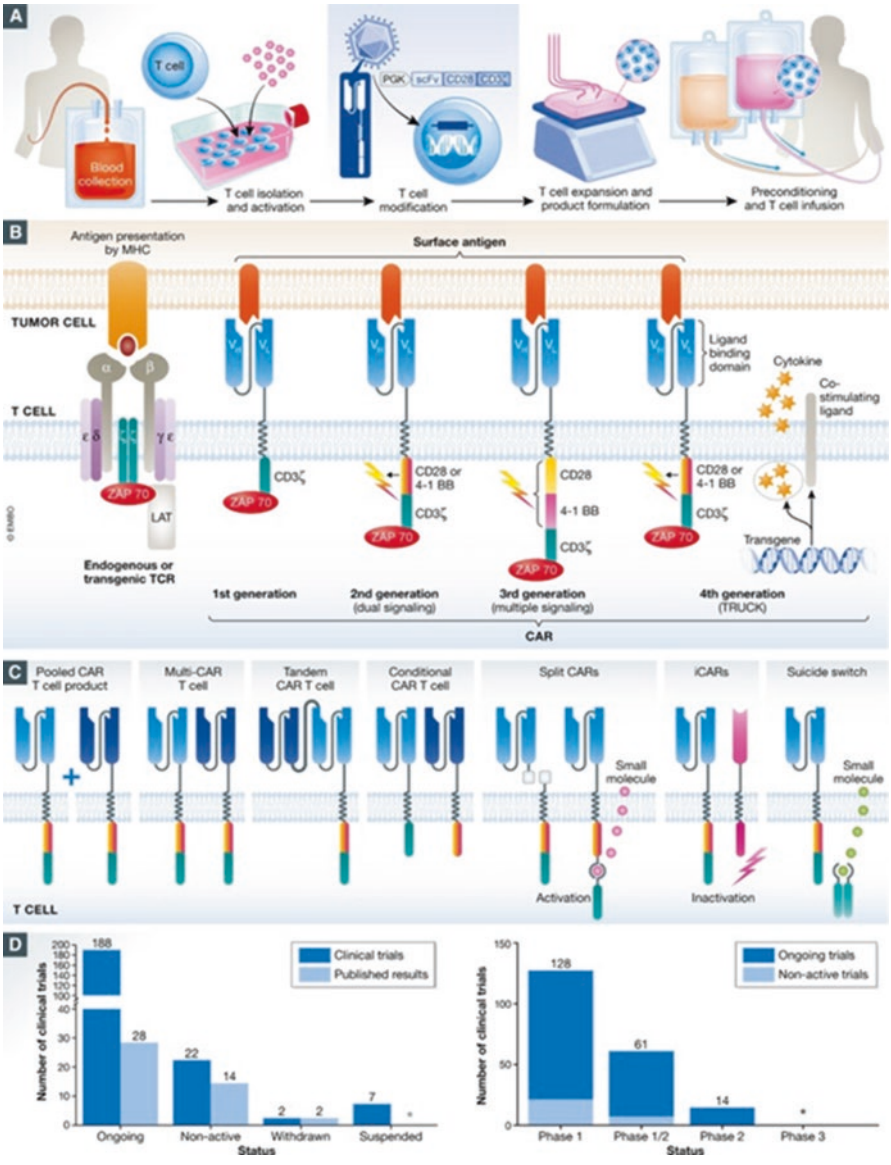


Fig. 9.1 CAR T cell therapy – principle and clinical trial overview. (**A**) The CAR T cell therapy process. T-cells are isolated from blood of the patient or a donor, activated, and then genetically engineered to express the CAR construct (an example shown in gray above the vector particle in violet). After *ex vivo* expansion of the CAR T cells, they are formulated into the final product. The patient undergoes either a conditional chemotherapy or the CAR T cell product is directly infused. (**B**) Schematic representation of a T-cell receptor (TCR) and four types of CARs being displayed on the surface of a T-cell while contacting their antigen (red) on the tumor cells. The single-chain variable fragment (scFv) as ligand-binding domain mediating tumor cell recognition in CARs is shown in light blue with the VH and VL domains being connected via a along flexible linker and

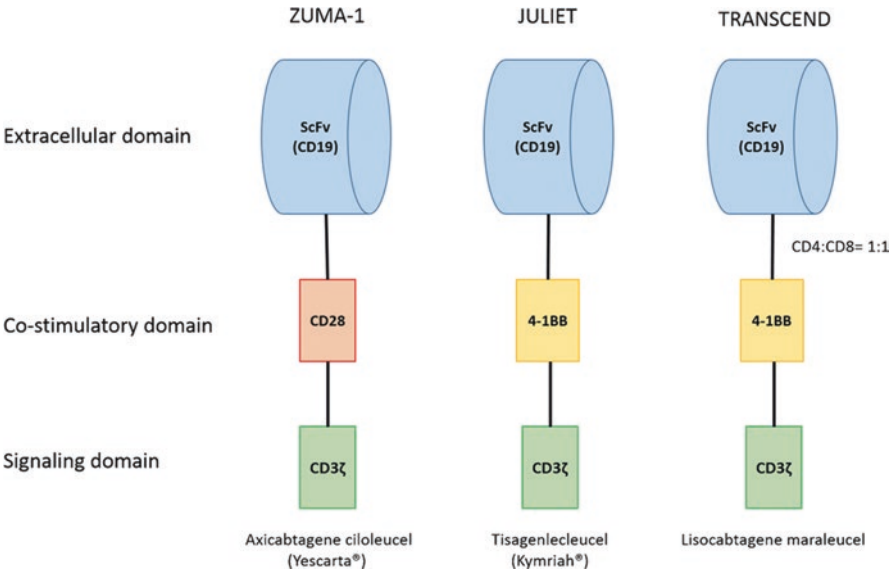


Fig. 9.2 Anti-CD19 CAR T cell products evaluated in pivotal trials in B-cell lymphomas. The intracellular domain of axicabtagene ciloleucel (ZUMA-1 trial) is composed of two signaling domains, CD3ζ and a co-stimulatory domain, CD28. Tisagenlecleucel (JULIET trial) and lisocabtagene maraleucel (TRANSCENT trial) use CD137 (4-1BB) as co-stimulatory domain. The co-stimulatory domain promotes the T-cell activation and persistence of CAR T cells [2]

relapses or progression, making crucial to understand mechanisms of treatment failure to CAR T cell therapy. Currently, CAR T cells with novel target antigens, such as CD22, CD20, κ-light chain for B-cell lymphomas, and CD30 for Hodgkin lymphoma and T-cell lymphomas are being investigated in several clinical trials (Fig. 9.1). While the era of CAR T cell therapy is in its infancy and there are large gaps in our understanding of the reasons cellular immunotherapy fails, a few mechanisms have become evident and will be the focus of our discussion in this chapter.

Anti-CD19 CAR T Cell Therapy in Lymphoma

Axicabtagene ciloleucel (axi-cel) was granted the US Food and Drug Administration (FDA) regular approval in 2017 for the treatment of patients with r/r large B-cell lymphoma after two or more lines of systemic therapy, including diffuse large B-cell lymphoma (DLBCL), high-grade B-cell lymphomas, and DLBCL arising from follicular lymphoma (tFL). The approval was based on the results of a seminal Phase 2 study published by Neelapu et al. [3]. In this multicenter study (ZUMA-1 trial), 111 patients with r/r DLBCL, primary mediastinal B-cell lymphoma

(PMBCL), or tFL were included. Patients received a target dose of 2×10^6 CAR19 cells per kilogram of body weight after conditioning regimen of low-dose cyclophosphamide and fludarabine. Axi-cel was administered to 101 patients, with objective response rate (RR) of 82%, and CR rate of 54%. Most CRs were durable, the overall rate of survival at 18 months was 52% [3]. At 27.1 months, the median overall survival (OS) was not reached, and the median progression-free survival (PFS) was 5.9 months [4]. Interestingly, CAR T cell levels during the first month of therapy seem to be associated with efficacy of the product [3, 5].

Tisagenlecleucel (tisa-cel) was approved by the US FDA in 2018 for adult patients with r/r DLBCL and tFL after at least two prior lines of therapy, including anthracycline and rituximab, or relapsing after an autologous stem cell transplant (SCT). Tisa-cel was tested in a Phase 2 multicenter study (JULIET trial) involving adult patients with r/r DLBCL [6]. A total of 93 patients received tisa-cel infusions and were included in the efficacy analysis of JULIET trial. The best overall response rate was 52%, including 40% of patients achieving CR and 12% achieving partial response (PR). At 12 months after the initial response, the rate of relapse-free survival was estimated to be 65% (79% among patients in CR) [6].

In addition to axi-cell and tisa-cel, lisocabtagene maraleucel (liso-cel) has also been studied in a Phase 1 multicenter study (TRANSCEND trial) [7]. The difference between liso-cell and tisa-cell or axi-cel is that liso-cel is a CAR T cell product administered in defined composition at a precise dose of CD8 and CD4 CAR T cells (Fig. 9.1). Adult patients with r/r DLBCL, PMBCL, tFL, or mantle cell lymphoma (MCL) were included and an interim analysis of the Phase 1 of the trial. Results showed that, with a median follow-up of 8 months, 80% of 73 patients treated achieved an objective response, and duration of response was not reached. The frequency of objective response at 6 months was 47% [7]. Main toxicity associated to CAR-T cell therapy includes development of cytokine release syndrome (CRS), neurotoxicity and B-cell aplasia (Table 9.1). For patients experiencing a relapse after an autologous or allogeneic stem cell transplant (SCT), administration of CAR T cell therapy seems to be safe and efficacious [8–10].

There is very limited experience with the use of CAR T therapy to treat lymphoma in pediatric and adolescent patients. Recently, Rivers et al. reported 5 pediatric patients (range 12–18 years) with r/r $CD19^+$ NHL (DLBCL, PMBCL, or gray zone B-cell) treated in an ongoing Phase 2 trial [11]. Patients received 1×10^6/Kg CAR19 cells as a 1:1 ratio of CD4 and CD8 cells, following lymphodepletion with fludarabine and cytarabine. One patients had history of auto/allo-SCT (PMBCL), 3 had had received immunotherapy (nivolumab or brentuximab vedotin). Similar to adult patients, the most common side effects were (mild) CRS (n = 4) and (mild) neurotoxicity (N = 2). At 3 weeks, anti-tumor response was observed in 4/5 patients, and 2/3 evaluable subjects were in CR at week 9. One subject had a $CD19^-$ progression at week 9, after initial response. One subject obtained CR, but eventually recurred with $CD19^+$ disease despite ongoing CAR-T cell persistence [11].

Table 9.1 Toxicity associated to anti-CD19 CAR T cell therapy described in pivotal lymphoma trials

≥ Grade 3 toxicity	Axicabtagene ciloleucel (%) [3]	Tisagenlecleucel (%) [6]	Lisocabtagene maraleucel (%) [7]
Any	95	89	NR
Pyrexia	14	5	NR
Neutropenia	78	32	NR
Anemia	43	39	NR
Hypotension	14	9	NR
Thrombocytopenia	38	12	NR
Nausea	–	1	NR
Fatigue	2	6	NR
Decreased appetite	2	4	NR
Headache	1	1	NR
Diarrhea	4	1	NR
Hypoalbuminemia	1	–	NR
Hypocalcemia	6	–	NR
Chills	–	0	NR
Tachycardia	2	3	NR
Febrile neutropenia	31	16	NR
Vomiting	1	–	NR
Hypokalemia	3	8	NR
Hyponatremia	10	–	NR
Constipation	–	1	NR
White-cell count decrease	29	31	NR
Hypophosphatemia		14	NR
Cytokine release syndrome	13	22.5	1
Neurologic event	28	12	13

NR, not reported

Mechanisms of CAR T Cell Resistance

Immune Scape from Antigen Loss

A significant proportion of relapses post CAR T cell therapy seem to be associated with immune scape from antigen loss of CD19, but the exact mechanisms of antigen loss in lymphoma therapy have yet to be understood. However, insights into possible mechanisms of antigen loss are being revealed by several studies done in pediatric and adult patients with B-acute lymphoblastic leukemia (ALL) suffering CD19 negative ($CD19^{-}$) B-ALL relapse after treatment with CAR19 cell therapy. Lack of CD19 expression has been shown to occur due to either mutations, alternative splicing in CD19, or by mutations in the B-cell receptor protein CD81. Those mechanisms are further discussed below.

CD19 Mutation and CD19 Alternative Splicing (exon 2 skipping)

The most known mechanism of CAR19 resistance is the emerging dominance of leukemic cells harboring isoforms of CD19 lacking the transmembrane domain or the targeted exon, under the selective pressure of CAR T cells. Sotillo et al. detected hemizygous deletions within chromosome 16 spanning the *CD19* locus and *de novo* frameshift and missense mutations in exon 2 of *CD19* in some relapse samples [12]. The investigators also described alternatively spliced *CD19* mRNA species, including one lacking exon 2, and demonstrated that exon 2 skipping bypasses exon 2 mutations in B-ALL cells and allows expression of the N-terminally truncated CD19 variant, which fails to trigger killing by CAR19 [12]. More recently, Fisher et al. analyzed the expression of CD19 isoforms in a cohort of subjects with $CD19^+$ B-ALL [13]. They demonstrated that an alternatively spliced *CD19* mRNA isoform lacking exon 2, and therefore the CAR19 epitope, but not isoforms lacking the transmembrane and cytosolic domains were expressed in the leukemia blasts at diagnosis and in the bone marrow of nonleukemia donors, suggesting that some of the CD19 isoforms contributing to CAR19 escape already preexist at diagnosis and could evolve as a dominant clone during CAR19 therapy [13].

Another mechanism of CD19 loss can be due to mutations in other genes that express other proteins of the B-cell receptor complex. To signal with the B-cell receptor, CD19 complexes with CD21, CD81, and CD225. Homozygous mutations in the *CD81* gene have been demonstrated to cause congenital immunodeficiency in humans [14]. Braig et al. demonstrated resistance to anti-CD19/CD3 BiTE therapy (blinatumomab) in patients with B-ALL via disrupted CD19 membrane trafficking [15]. At relapse post blinatumomab, patient's $CD19^-$ blasts were surface $CD81^-$, which led to non-CD19 processing and maturation in the Golgi complex [15]. Although not yet demonstrated, it is highly plausible that the similar mechanism play a role in antigen scaping in B-cell lymphomas.

Myeloid Switch

MLL-rearranged $CD19^+$ B-cell ALL are responsive to CAR19 therapy as demonstrated in a cohort of 7 patients who achieved CR after CAR T-cell therapy [16]. However, 2 patients relapsed, both with a myeloid phenotype leukemia approximately 1 months after CAR T cell infusion. One patient had no evidence of disease in the bone marrow after therapy on day 22 by flow cytometry, but karyotyping and FISH studies revealed persistent MLL rearrangement. On day 35, circulating blasts were present and expressed myeloperoxidase, CD4, and CD64 without CD19 or other B-cell lineage antigens, consistent with acute myeloid leukemia (AML). FISH for MLL rearrangement and IGH deep sequencing demonstrated that both B-ALL and AML were clonally related. Second patient was a young child with MLL-rearranged $CD19^+$ B-ALL who relapsed after 30 days of receiving CAR19 therapy with an abnormal myeloid population without B-lineage antigens but persistent

presence of MLL rearrangement [16]. CAR19 was detected in blood, and there was B-cell aplasia at the time of AML diagnosis. Deep sequencing of the *IGH* gene was negative for the rearrangement previously noted in the lymphoid blasts, suggesting myeloid relapse occurred form an immature stem cell clone [16]. Those two cases illustrate that myeloid switch is a mechanism of CAR T-cell resistance, likely due to presence of rearranged MLL, reprogramming or de-differentiation of previously committed B-cell lymphoid blasts (case 1) or myeloid differentiation of a noncommitted precursor or selection of a preexisting myeloid clone after CAR19 therapy (case 2).

Senescence and Exhaustion of CAR-T Cell Population

Yang et al. demonstrated that the presence of T-cell receptor (TCR) antigen can provoke loss in CD8+ CAR T cell efficacy associated with T-cell exhaustion and apoptosis [17]. Using an immunocompetent, syngeneic murine model of CD19-targeted CAR T cell therapy for B-ALL in which the CAR is introduced into T-cells with known TCR specificity, they demonstrated that loss of CD8 CAR T-cell efficacy associated with T-cell exhaustion and apoptosis when TCR antigen is present [17]. Long *et at.* also demonstrated that tonic CAR CD3-ζ phosphorylation, triggered by antigen-independent clustering of CAR single-chain variable fragments can induce early exhaustion of CAR T-cells that limit antitumor efficacy [18]. Interestingly, CD28 co-stimulation augments, whereas 4-1BB co-stimulation reduces, exhaustion induced by persistent CAR signaling [18].

Accidental Transfection of Tumor Cells and CD19 "Masking"

The manufacturing process of CAR-T cell requires collection of mononuclear cells from peripheral blood by apheresis and several steps to T-cell purification, expansion, and transfection of viral vector carrying the CAR. Absence of circulating tumor cells has not been considered a critical requirement for such therapy given that occasional malignant B-cells collected during apheresis would be selected out, not expanded and/or not transduced during the manufacturing process.

However, Ruella et al. recently described a B-ALL patient treated with CAR19 cell therapy who experienced a $CD10^{+}CD19^{-}$ ALL relapse caused by accidental transfection of tumor cells with CD19 "masking" [19]. Evaluation of the leukemia cells revealed that the B-leukemia cells were CAR-transduced B-cell blasts (CARB) by immunophenotyping, suggesting that malignant B-cells can survive the manufacturing process and be transfected with the lentivirus containing the CAR [19]. Such transfection was not inconsequential and the lack of CD19 expression was not caused by any known mechanism of antigen loss. In fact, CD19 mRNA transcripts were identified at the baseline and at relapse, and CD19 protein expression was also

detected by immunohistochemistry. Confocal microscopy demonstrated that colocalization of CAR19 and CD19 on the cell surface of the relapsed leukemia, leading to the hypothesis that the lack of detection of CD19 by flow cytometry was due to CAR10 binding *in cis* to CD19 on the cell surface and "masking" the epitope detection by flow cytometry. Antigen masking by transduction of B-ALL with CAR was demonstrated *in vitro* to be also possible during the manufacturing process of anti-CD22 CAR-T cell products [19]. CARB would initially be a minute fraction of the disease burden and not interfere with response at first. Over time, however, it gives rise to a resistant subclone manifesting clinically as leukemia relapse. So far, this mechanism of resistance has only been described in B-ALL and it seems to be a rare phenomenon, but it remains at least hypothetically possible in aggressive lymphomas as well.

Future Directions

One possible approach to overcome immune scape from antigen loss is the simultaneous or sequential targeting of more than one B-cell specific antigen. In fact, CD22-targeting CAR T cells are effective in r/r B-ALL and have recently been proven active in patients with relapse after anti-CD19 CAR T cell therapy [20]. Failure to anti-CD22 CAR T appears linked to the decrease in antigen density, rather than modification of the CD22 molecule [20]. The concomitant targeting of both CD19 and CD22 can potentially reduce the risk of relapse given that it would be unlikely that a single cell would develop simultaneous mechanisms of scape for both targets. Clinical trials are currently being performed with CAR T cell products targeting both CD19 and CD22.

Another possible way to overcome resistance to CAR T cell therapy would be trying to revert tumor-induced immunosuppression and immune exhaustion using immune checkpoint inhibitors. Chong et al. recently reported a case of a patient with DLBCL treated with PD-1 blocking antibody after progression post CAR19 therapy [21]. Overexpression of PD-L1 has been demonstrated in relapsed DLBCL samples post CAR19. Following PD-1 blockade with pembrolizumab, the patient had a clinically significant response and expansion of CART19 cells. Currently the use of pembrolizumab is being tested in a clinical trial setting in patients with $CD19^{+}$ lymphomas who failed post CAR19 therapy.

Acknowledgements The authors would like to thank Erin Morris, RN in her assistance in the preparation of this manuscript.

Disclosure of Conflict of Interest L.J.M has received research support from Celgene, Janssen, Amgen, and GlaxoSmithKline; honorarium from Celgene, Amgen, Karyopharm, GlaxoSmithKline, and Kite; and speaker fees from Amgen and Sanofi. A.C.X has no conflict of interest to disclose.

References

1. Hartmann J, Schussler-Lenz M, Bondanza A, Buchholz CJ. Clinical development of CAR T cells-challenges and opportunities in translating innovative treatment concepts. EMBO Mol Med. 2017;9(9):1183–97.
2. Strati P, Neelapu SS. Chimeric antigen receptor-engineered T cell therapy in lymphoma. Curr Oncol Rep. 2019;21(5):38.
3. Neelapu SS, Locke FL, Bartlett NL, Lekakis LJ, Miklos DB, Jacobson CA, et al. Axicabtagene Ciloleucel CAR T-cell therapy in refractory large B-cell lymphoma. N Engl J Med. 2017;377(26):2531–44.
4. Locke FL, Ghobadi A, Jacobson CA, Miklos DB, Lekakis LJ, Oluwole OO, et al. Long-term safety and activity of axicabtagene ciloleucel in refractory large B-cell lymphoma (ZUMA-1): a single-arm, multicentre, phase 1-2 trial. Lancet Oncol. 2019;20(1):31–42.
5. Turtle CJ, Hanafi LA, Berger C, Hudecek M, Pender B, Robinson E, et al. Immunotherapy of non-Hodgkin's lymphoma with a defined ratio of CD8+ and CD4+ CD19-specific chimeric antigen receptor-modified T cells. Sci Transl Med. 2016;8(355):355ra116.
6. Schuster SJ, Bishop MR, Tam CS, Waller EK, Borchmann P, McGuirk JP, et al. Tisagenlecleucel in adult relapsed or refractory diffuse large B-cell lymphoma. N Engl J Med. 2019;380(1):45–56.
7. Abramson JS, Gordon LI, Palomba ML, Lunning MA, Arnason JE, Forero-Torres A, et al. Updated safety and long term clinical outcomes in TRANSCEND NHL 001, pivotal trial of lisocabtagene maraleucel (JCAR017) in R/R aggressive NHL. J Clin Oncol. 2018;36(15_suppl):7505.
8. Wang X, Popplewell LL, Wagner JR, Naranjo A, Blanchard MS, Mott MR, et al. Phase 1 studies of central memory-derived CD19 CAR T-cell therapy following autologous HSCT in patients with B-cell NHL. Blood. 2016;127(24):2980–90.
9. Kochenderfer JN, Dudley ME, Carpenter RO, Kassim SH, Rose JJ, Telford WG, et al. Donor-derived CD19-targeted T cells cause regression of malignancy persisting after allogeneic hematopoietic stem cell transplantation. Blood. 2013;122(25):4129–39.
10. Ghosh A, Smith M, James SE, Davila ML, Velardi E, Argyropoulos KV, et al. Donor CD19 CAR T cells exert potent graft-versus-lymphoma activity with diminished graft-versus-host activity. Nat Med. 2017;23(2):242–9.
11. Rivers J, Annesley C, Summers C, Finney O, Pulsipher M, Wayne A, et al. Early response data for pediatric patients wiht non-Hodgkin lymphoma treated with CD19 chimeric antigen receptor (CAR) T-cells. Br J Haematol. 2018;182(Suppl. 1). (23):Abstract 29
12. Sotillo E, Barrett DM, Black KL, Bagashev A, Oldridge D, Wu G, et al. Convergence of acquired mutations and alternative splicing of CD19 enables resistance to CART-19 immunotherapy. Cancer Discov. 2015;5(12):1282–95.
13. Fischer J, Paret C, El Malki K, Alt F, Wingerter A, Neu MA, et al. CD19 isoforms enabling resistance to CART-19 immunotherapy are expressed in B-ALL patients at initial diagnosis. J Immunother. 2017;40(5):187–95.
14. van Zelm MC, Smet J, Adams B, Mascart F, Schandene L, Janssen F, et al. CD81 gene defect in humans disrupts CD19 complex formation and leads to antibody deficiency. J Clin Invest. 2010;120(4):1265–74.
15. Braig F, Brandt A, Goebeler M, Tony HP, Kurze AK, Nollau P, et al. Resistance to anti-CD19/CD3 BiTE in acute lymphoblastic leukemia may be mediated by disrupted CD19 membrane trafficking. Blood. 2017;129(1):100–4.
16. Gardner R, Wu D, Cherian S, Fang M, Hanafi LA, Finney O, et al. Acquisition of a CD19-negative myeloid phenotype allows immune escape of MLL-rearranged B-ALL from CD19 CAR-T-cell therapy. Blood. 2016;127(20):2406–10.
17. Yang Y, Kohler ME, Chien CD, Sauter CT, Jacoby E, Yan C, et al. TCR engagement negatively affects CD8 but not CD4 CAR T cell expansion and leukemic clearance. Sci Transl Med. 2017;9(417):eaag1209.

18. Long AH, Haso WM, Shern JF, Wanhainen KM, Murgai M, Ingaramo M, et al. 4-1BB costimulation ameliorates T cell exhaustion induced by tonic signaling of chimeric antigen receptors. Nat Med. 2015;21(6):581–90.
19. Ruella M, Xu J, Barrett DM, Fraietta JA, Reich TJ, Ambrose DE, et al. Induction of resistance to chimeric antigen receptor T cell therapy by transduction of a single leukemic B cell. Nat Med. 2018;24(10):1499–503.
20. Fry TJ, Shah NN, Orentas RJ, Stetler-Stevenson M, Yuan CM, Ramakrishna S, et al. CD22-targeted CAR T cells induce remission in B-ALL that is naive or resistant to CD19-targeted CAR immunotherapy. Nat Med. 2018;24(1):20–8.
21. Chong EA, Melenhorst JJ, Lacey SF, Ambrose DE, Gonzalez V, Levine BL, et al. PD-1 blockade modulates chimeric antigen receptor (CAR)-modified T cells: refueling the CAR. Blood. 2017;129(8):1039–41.

Index

A. C. Xavier, M. S. Cairo (eds.), *Resistance to Targeted Therapies in Lymphomas*, Resistance to Targeted Anti-Cancer Therapeutics 21,
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-24424-8